

Contents .

Module 3 The environment Unit 8 Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 8 91 Review Module 4 The modern world Unit 10 Unit 11 Unit 12

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثالث الإعدادي للعام الدراسي 2024-2023 الفصل الدراسي الثاني

Month	New Hello! English for preparatory schools Year Three (SB + WB)			
February	Unit 7			
March	Units 8 + Unit 9 + Review C + Unit 10			
April	Units 10 Cont. + Unit 11 + Unit 12			
May	Review D + General Revision			



Our world

Objectives of the unit

Reading A fact file about natural wonders of Egypt; a project about Wadi al-Hitan; Black Beauty by Anna

Sewell; an information text about mongooses

Writing A fact file about a natural wonder; a short article about an animal

Listening A talk about habitats; a description of a natural wonder; a discussion about

a story; conversations asking for clarification

Speaking Talking about animals, animal habitats and natural wonders; expressing lack of understanding

and asking for clarification

Language The past simple passive with and without by

Life Skills Respect for diversity in nature

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات (SB) تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب (Longman) تشير لأسئلة لونجمان





Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 2 - 5 WB pages 70 & 71

Vocabulary

- 🥏 قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- 🏮 قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الائتسية

key vocabulary			مالسردات الركيسية
contain (ed) (v)	يحتوى على	ocean (n)	محيط
describe (d) (v)	يصف	shooting star (n)	نیزگ/شماب
entire (adj)	ڪامل	springs (n)	ينابيع مياه
fence (n)	سور/سياج	surround (ed) (v)	يحيط
locals (n)	السكان المحليون	temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة
meteorite (n)	نيزك	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية
oasis/oases (n)	واحة/واحات	wonders (n)	عجائب
	Habitats d	بيئات طبيعية	
coastal (adj)	ساحلى	mountain (n)	جبل
desert (n)	صحراء	polar (adj)	قطبہ
forest (n)	غابة	rainforest (n)	غابة مطيرة
grassland (n)	أرض عشبية	wetland (n)	أرض رطبة

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

area (n)	منطقة	furniture (n)	أثاث
Bedouin (n)	البدو	frog (n)	ضفدع
caracal (n)	کاراکال (قط بری)	location (n)	<u>موقع</u>
cause (d) (v)	يسبب	orangutan (n)	قرد (إنسان الغاب)
cover (ed) (v)	يغطى	pollute (d) (v)	يلوث
date palm trees	أشجار النخيل	polar bear (n)	الدب القطبى
except (prep)	باستثناء/ما عدا	volunteer (ed) (n/v)	متطوع/يتطوع

Choose and complete:

cause - ocean - locals - furniture

1 My room has a sofa, three chairs and a table. This has a classical style.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فممك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

- 2 Floods can _____ a lot of damage to the area near the river.
- 3 I went to Siwa and the were very friendly.

(v) = verb

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (adv) = adverb

(prep) = preposition

(conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الأتية:

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

الكلمة Word	ارادفها (Meaning) الرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)
beautiful (adj) جميل	cute/lovely جميل	ugly قبیح
bright (adj) مشرق/لامع	shiny دمع	dark مظلم/داکن
coastal (adj) ساحلب	seaside ساحلت	inland البر/اليابسة
destroy (v) يدمر/يخرب	damage يتلف	fix/repair يطلح
aام (important (adj)	ساسہ/جوھری essential	غير هام unimportant ا
large/huge (adj) ضخم	ebig عبير	tiny/small صغیر جدًا
local (adj) محلب	national مومى	global ज्वाद
protect (v) يحمه	save/keep جفظ	damage يدمر
wet (adj) رطب/مبلل	rainy عصطر	طاف dry

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

No. of the control of			No. 110402 200200 - 10020
make > a list of	يعد قائمة لـ	show > respect for	يظهر الاحترام لـ

Prepositions حروف الجر

fill with	يملأ بـ	locate on	تقع فہ/علہ
home to	موطن لـ	surrounded by	محاط بـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Pr	esent	Past simple	Past participle
fall	يقع	fell	fallen
hide	يختبئ	hid	hidden
lay	تضع البيض	laid	laid

Check Point

Choose and complete:

for - with - make - seaside

- 1 The coastal area is the area near the sea. The word "coastal"
- 2 The teacher asked us to _____ a list of the natural wonders in Egypt.
- 3 They filled the bottle water to take it in the trip.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للكلمات ومرادفها وعكسها والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.





التعريفات

The state of the s
a wild cat with long legs and big ears that lives in Africa and Asia
a habitat which is next to the sea. You often find rocks there
a large area of land where there is almost no water, rain, trees, or plants
a large area where trees grow close together
a habitat which usually has large green areas and no mountains
the natural home of an animal or plant
a very high area of land with steep sides
an area in the desert where you can find water
a large animal with long red hair and long arms, which lives in the trees of Indonesia
a habitat which is always cold and is often covered by ice
a large, white bear which lives on the ice of the arctic
a habitat which has a lot of trees. It is usually very hot and rains a lot
there is not always rain in these habitats, but there is always a lot of water
something that makes you feel it is beautiful or amazing

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	اللاحقة Suffix	الوظيفة Function	ديدة The new word	الكلمة الج
appear (v)	يظهر	-ance	تحويل الفعل لاسم	appearance (n)	مظمر
coast (n)	ساحل				ساحلی
globe (n)	الكون			global (adj)	عالمي
nation (n)	أمة	al	تحويل الاسم لصفة	national (adj)	قومى
nature (n)	طبيعة	طبيعة	natural (adj)	طبتعب	
locate (v)	يحدد موقع	-ion	تحويل الفعل لاسم	location (n)	موقع

البادئة Prefix

Prefix البادئة	Word	الكلمة	الوظيفة Function	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
	natural (adj)	طبيعى		unnatural (adj) غير طبيعه
un-	usual (adj)	معتاد	تعطم عكس المعنم	unusual (adj) غير معتاد

Language Notes

- على بعد ثلاث ساعات قيادة على المعدث لاث ساعات قيادة (drive) والصفة لا يتم جمعها. لاحظ عدم جمع كلمة (hour) لأنها هنا تستخدم كصفة لكلمة (drive) والصفة لا يتم جمعها. • This natural lake is a three-hour drive from Hurghada.
- nature (n) طبيعه (natural (adj) طبيعه ا l love nature.
 - Al Nayzak Lake is a natural wonder.
- ومع ذلك (تعبر عن التناقض) However It's late. However, Tamer wants to go for a walk.
- help + (to + inf./inf.)

 Gebel Elba location should help to protect/protect the wildlife there.
- locals (n) = local people

 The lake is called the Shooting Star by locals.
 local (adj)
 - He's well-known in the local community.

Natural wonders of E	gypt		عجائب مصر الطبيعية
Al Nayzak Lake	بحيرة النيزك	The Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى
Gebel Elba	جبل علبة	Wadi al-Weshwashy	وادى الوشواشى
The Kharga Oasis	واحة الخارجة	White Desert National	Park
the Nile Delta	دلتا النيل	الوطنية	حديقة الصحراء البيضاء

B Reading & Listening Skills

0

Match the habitats with the animals. Listen and check.

SB page 2

- 1. Orangutans⁽¹⁾ live in rainforests and spend nearly their entire⁽²⁾ lives in trees.
- 2. Sea turtles(3) rarely leave the ocean(4), except to lay eggs in the sand.
- 3. The polar bear⁽⁵⁾ is one of the few animals that can live in a polar habitat⁽⁶⁾.
- 4. Caracals⁽⁷⁾ live in grasslands⁽⁸⁾ because they like to hide in the long grass.
- 5. Frogs are wetland⁽⁹⁾ animals that are able to live on land as well as in water.

Lesson 1

- إنسان الغاب (1)
- كامل (2)
- السلاحف البحرية (3)
- (4) buse
- الدب القطيم (5)
- بيئة (6)
- قط الكاراكال (7)
- الأراضى العشبية (8)
- أرض رطبة (9)

Pre-listening question: - What's the largest wildcat on Earth?

Listen to a talk about habitats. Which of the habitats from page 2 does the speaker talk about?

There are many different habitats around the world. Coastal habitats⁽¹⁾ are along the coast of the sea. Some animals that live in the sea, such as the sea turtle, will visit land for egg laying⁽²⁾.

Grasslands are usually found in the centre of large areas of land, between mountains and deserts. This is the natural⁽³⁾ habitat of animals such as the caracal, which like to hide⁽⁴⁾ in the long grass. Grasslands are found all over the world.

Warm, wet habitats that get the most rain, are called rainforests⁽⁵⁾. Trees grow very tall here, so that they can

rainforests⁽⁵⁾. Trees grow very tall here, so that they can get sunlight⁽⁶⁾. More than half of the world's animals live in the rainforest, including the orangutan.

A wetland is a place where the land is often covered by water, for example the Nile Delta. Wetland animals like frogs are able to live on land as well as in water.

The top and bottom of the Earth are covered by ice. These areas are known as polar habitats. The polar bear is one of the few animals that can live in the cold temperatures⁽⁷⁾ there.

Post-listening question: - Why do you think that only a few animals can live in polar habitats?

SB page 3



درجات الحرارة (7)

Pre-reading question: - Why do you think tourists like to visit Egypt?

Lesson 2



Read the online article quickly and discuss the questions in pairs.

SB page 4

Natural wonders of Egypt

Egypt is visited by more than 14 million tourists every year. We have made a list of the natural wonders of Egypt that we think visitors should know about.

	1. White Desert National Park	2. Al Nayzak Lake	3. Gebel Elba
	es and		
Where?	This huge desert ⁽¹⁾ starts on the western side of the River Nile and continues into Libya.	This natural lake is a three-hour drive from Hurghada.	This national park is surrounded by ⁽⁷⁾ grasslands, between the Red Sea coast and the mountains.
What?	It contains ⁽²⁾ five oases ⁽³⁾ , with rocks that the wind has made into strange shapes.	The lake is called the Shooting Star ⁽⁴⁾ by locals ⁽⁵⁾ , because it is believed that a piece of a star (a meteorite ⁽⁶⁾) fell into it. The lake is cut out of the rock in the shape of an eye and is filled with the bright blue water of the Red Sea.	This national park takes its name from the mountain in the middle of it.
hy is it a 'wonder'?	The colours change at different times of day, and make them beautiful to look at.	It is described by visitors as one of the best places to dive and swim.	It is unusually green and home to many animals and birds. However, as it isn't easy to reach, it isn't visited often. Its location should help to protect the wildlife ⁽⁸⁾ there.



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: meteorite / mi:tiəraIt/

oases /əʊˈeɪsiːz/

Post-reading question:

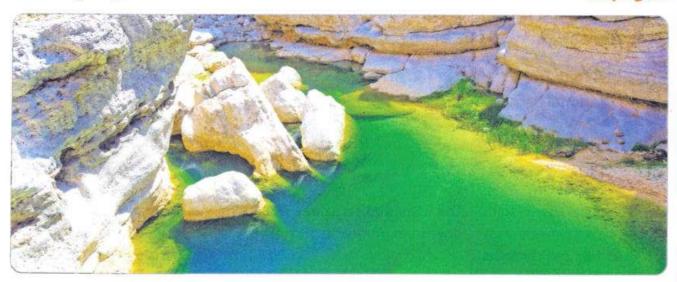
- Which other natural wonders of Egypt would you add to the list?

(1) محراء محراء	تحتوی علی (2)
واحات (3)	نيزك/شماب (4)
السكان المحليون (5)	نيزه (6)
محاطة بـ (7)	حياة برية (8)

Pre-listening question: - What was the best trip you had?

Lesson 2

Listen to Randa and Nihal discussing a natural wonder of Egypt. Why is it a good idea to ask local people to take you to Wadi al-Weshwashy on a day-trip?



Randa Which place do you think should be on the list of Egypt's natural wonders⁽¹⁾, Nihal?

Nihal I would choose Wadi al-Weshwashy.

Randa Wadi al-Weshwashy? Where's that?

Nihal It's on the way to South Sinai, just 15 kilometres away from Nuweiba. It's in the mountains of South Sinai.

Randa I see. That's a long way away. What kind of place is it?

Nihal There are areas of water called springs⁽²⁾ there. They make small lakes high in the mountains. They are known as the Green Springs.

Randa I've never heard of this amazing place! Can you swim there?

Oh yes, Randa, it's a wonderful place for swimming. It's mostly visited by the local Bedouin people who live near there. In fact, Wadi al-Weshwashy is looked after by them. You can ask local tour guides⁽³⁾ to take you there on a day trip – otherwise, it's really difficult to get to. But I think that's why it's such a special place.

ينابيع مياه (2)

مرشدین سیاحیین (3)



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

wonder /wʌndər/ Bedouin /bedʊɪn/

Post-listening question:

- What did you like most about Wadi al-Weshwashy?

Pre-reading question: - What do you know about the Kharga Oasis?

Lesson 2

Complete the text with the correct passive form of the verb in brackets.

WB page 71

واحة الخارجة (1)

عجائب طبيعية (3)

نخيل (2)



The Kharga Oasis⁽¹⁾ is surrounded by desert, far from the River Nile. It is visited by more and more tourists every year. Hundreds of date palm(2) trees are grown here.

The dates are sold in many shops in the area. You can also fill your bags with the baskets, shoes and furniture

that are also made from the date palm trees. The Kharga Oasis is one of Egypt's natural wonders(3)!

Post-reading questions:

- 1. Why do you think a lot of tourists visit the Kharga Oasis every year?
- 2. What is the Kharga Oasis famous for?

Life Skills

How do we show respect for nature? Tick.)
I think about how much water I use.		
I don't destroy plants or trees.		
I take nothing from nature – only photos.		
I put litter in the bin.		
I try not to pollute the environment.		



Vocabulary Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding. Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Read and complete t	he text with word	s from the following	list: (Longman)
amazing -	on – from – sprin	gs – swimming – ter	rible
Description of the Control of the Co	1791 (9) (2) (2)	oe on the list of Egypt	
		hich is located (1)	
) that for	105
		ally, it's an (4)	
2 Choose the correct a			F
1. We should protect o			ns" " s.swaled
a) damage			d) save
2. We add the suffix			and the second s
a) -tion	b) -ment	c) -ance	
3 habitat is n		20 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	
a) Mountain		c) Polar	
4. Strong wind destroy	100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100		
a) caused		c) repaired	
5. Egypt has lots of nat		A STATE OF THE STA	
prefix "".		eren areas i de Compositorios especial vena	
a) im-	b) dis-	c) in-	d) un-
6. A/An is an	area in the desert w	here you can find wa	ter.
a) oasis	b) wonder	c) mountain	d) habitat
7. Throwing rubbish int	to the river can mak	ce water dirty. This car	n water.
a) cause	b) pollute	c) volunteer	d) keep
8. The is a lar	ge area of land wh	ere there is almost no	o water, rain, trees,
or plants.			
a) habitat	b) caracal	c) forest	d) desert
I saw many large stat	ues in the new mus	seum. The antonym o	f "large" is "".
a) dark	b) huge		d) big
10. We visited many oase	es and saw lots of	full of hot wa	iter.
a) locals	b) springs	c) oceans	d) bears
11. Gebel Elba is unusua	lly green and	to many animals	and birds. Longman
a) home	b) delta	c) valley	d) well
12. It's wet outside. It's	on the road	ds.	
a) sunny	b) tiny	c) rainy	d) dry

Language

المبنى للمجهول مع زمن المضارع البسيط The Present Simple Passive (with by)

Use the verb am/is/are + past participle (the present simple passive) when the action is more important than who does it, or when we do not know (or it is not important) who did something.

تستخدم صيغة المبنى للمجهول عندما نريد التركيز على الشخص أو الشيء الذي يقع عليه الفعل وليس من يقوم بالفعل، أو عند عدم معرفة من قام بالفعل.

- More than 14 million tourists visit Egypt every year.

(Active)

- Egypt is visited by more than 14 million tourists every year.

(Passive)

الإثبات Affirmative

Active

المينى للمعلوم

I-You-We-They اسم جمع) inf.

inf. + (s, es, ies) اسم مفرد-He-She-It

- They build new schools every year.
- My mum does the shopping.

Passive

المينى للمحمول

+ am/is/are + P.P. + (by + الفاعل)

- New schools are built every year.
- The shopping is done by my mum.

Negative

النفء

I-You-We-They-اسم جمع **don't + inf.** He-She-lt-اسم مفرد doesn't + inf.

- They don't make sandwiches here.
- Ali doesn't feed the cat.

/am not/isn't + مفعول aren't + P.P. + (by + الفاعل)

- Sandwiches aren't made here.
- The cat isn't fed by Ali.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 My watch (doesn't make) of plastic. It's metal.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (isn't made) لأن الجملة مبنية للمجهول (تبدأ بمفعول مفرد) وفي زمن المضارع البسيط.
- 2 The flowers (water) by the gardener every evening.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (are watered) لأن الجملة مبنية للمجمول (تبدأ بمفعول جمع) وفي زمن المضارع البسيط.

Yes/No question

السؤال بهل

Po + (I-you-we-they-اسم جمع) + inf. ...?

Poes + (he-she-it-اسم مفرد) + inf. ...?

- Do they make windows of good wood?
- Does Hany wash the car every day?

Am/Is/Are + مفعول + P.P. + ...?

- Are windows made of good wood?
- Is the car washed by Hany every day?

Wh-question

السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. word + do + (I-you-we-they-اسم جمع) + inf. ...?

Q. word + does + (he-she-it-اسم مفرد-) + inf. ...?

- How do they make cookies?
- Who cooks dinner?

Q. word + am/is/are + عفعول + P.P. + ...?

- How are cookies made?
- Who is dinner cooked by?

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Where is this kind of bag (sell)?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (sold) لأننا نستخدم التصريف الثالث للفعل فى السؤال المبنى للمجمول.

2 Is the house(clean) by Nancy every Friday?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (cleaned) لأن السؤال فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول فنضع التصريف الثالث للفعل.

3 When do schools (started) in Egypt?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (start) لأن السؤال فب صيغة المبنب للمعلوم فنستخدم مصدر الفعل.





Language Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The park(surrounds) by grasslands.
2. The land is(cover) with ice in polar habitat.
3. Fewer magazines(sell) today by newsagents because of the
internet.
4. I saw a website which is designed (with) an expert programmer.
5. As a popular game, football(play) by millions of people every day.
6. Television is (watch) by my family every evening.
7. Many houses in coastal areas (build) by local people.
8(Do) the dishes washed after every meal?
9. It's(know) that some turtles live for 100 years.
10. Many new cars (make) by robots in factories.
11. Which kinds of habitats (find) at Gebel Elba?
12. These pictures are (take) by my sister.
13. Egypt (visits) by more than 14 million tourists every year. د المعال سيناء على المعال العالم المعالم المعا
14. Who is the message(deliver) to?
15. Great artists usually (are painted) beautiful pictures.
16. This restaurant is nice. Its food (cooks) by a great chef.
17. Many trees(is) planted to stop pollution.
18. My mother usually (tell) me a story before I sleep.
19. Mobile phones are widely (using) everywhere.
20. How often (your clothes/wash) a week?



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write a review of one of the natural wonders in Egypt

كيفية كتابة نقد عن أحد العجائب الطبيعية فب مصر

- Egypt has a lot of attractive places like (الأصاكن)
- I visited (المكان) last summer.
- It's amazing/wonderful/terrible.
- It's in (موقعه)
- I give it ... stars.
- It's famous for (ما يشتمر به) (ما
- (وصف المكان) lt's -
- I recommend/don't recommend visiting it.

Writing tips

Discuss what you like or dislike about the topic. Give reasons to support your opinion.

ناقش ما أعجبت به وما لم تعجب به فم الموضوع. قم بإعطاء أسباب لدعم رأيك.

·Example

"A review of natural wonders in Egypt"

Egypt has a lot of attractive natural places like deserts, green lands, and natural pools. I visited Al Nayzak Beach and Gebel Elba last summer. Al Nayzak Beach is an amazing natural wonder. I give it five stars. It is called the Shooting Star by the locals, with a total area of over 5,000 metres. Al-Nayzak Lake is famous for its pure water. The lake attracts hundreds of tourists from all over the world, where they are able to dive and swim because of its safe, clean water. Gebel Elba, which is surrounded only by green fields, is one of Egypt's most wonderful places. The Gebel Elba National Park is in the south-east of the country. Although the Gebel Elba National Park has a lot to offer, it is not visited very often. I highly recommend visiting it.

tu	Write a review of a natural Egyptian wonder you visited.
8	
ec.	
ថ	

TEST YOURSELF



Lessons (1 & 2) Unit 7



	Finish the following dialogue:
	Ayman is talking to his friend Ramy about Gebel Elba.
	Ayman: Today, I have read an interesting article.
	Ramy: What is it about?
	Ayman: (1)
	Ramy : (2)?
	Ayman: It takes its name from the mountain in the middle of it.
	Ramy : Can you give me some more information about it?
	Ayman: (3)
	surrounded by grassland.
	Ramy: Is it visited by many people every year?
	Ayman: (4)
	Ramy : (5)?
	Ayman: Because it isn't easy to reach. Its location is remote.
2	Read and complete the text with words from the following list:
	surrounded – wanders – wonders – is filled – fills – contains
	Egypt has many natural (1) that visitors like to see. The White
	Desert National Park (2) five oases with rocks that are shaped by
	wind. Al Nayzak Lake takes the shape of an eye. It (3) with water
	from the Red Sea. Gebel Elba Park is (4) by grasslands. It takes its
_	name from the mountain in the middle.
3	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
	1. It's important to eat healthy food. "" is similar in meaning to important.
	a) Bright b) National c) Essential d) Unimportant
	2. To get the noun of the verb "locate", we add the suffix "".
	a) -al b) -ion c) -ist d) -or
	3. A is the natural home or environment of an animal, plant or other
	organisms. (Longman)
	a) habit b) habitat c) hobby d) health

4. The government tak them.	es steps to save	our natural wonders.	We should help to
	b) contain	c) cause	d) protect
5. A is a large			The Court of the C
a) turtle	b) frog	c) caracal	d) polar bear
6. Alexandria is a big		The second control of	TO:
25	b) farm	c) coastal	d) desert
Complete the senten	ces with the co	orrect form of the wo	d(s) in brackets:
1. Our beaches are 2. My father usually 3. Our problems are usually (Does) the	uallye email sent by	he newspaper in the none of th	norning. ng.
5. We like the café whe	re the meals	(serve) by the	friendly waiters.
Write ONE HUNDRED	and TEN (110)	words on:	
"A re	view of natura	l wonders in Egypt"	
	******************************	***************************************	***************************************

	************		***************************************
***************************************	**********	*****************	**************
***************************************	*************	***************************************	

Challenging Questions			
1 Choose the correc	t answer from	a, b, c or d:	بجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب
1. A/Ani	s a fertile spot a	in a desert who بقعة خصب	ere water
is found.	for the second		(Longman
			Control of the Contro
	b) valley	c) oasis	d) oases
a) delta		c) oasis	d) oases
		o. It was fantastic.	207.70
a) delta2. We went on a fivea) days'	b) day's	c) days	d) day
 a) delta 2. We went on a five a) days' Complete the sente 	b) day's ences with the	o. It was fantastic. c) days correct form of the wo	d) day
a) delta 2. We went on a five a) days' 2 Complete the sente 1. Lots of research	b) day's ences with the (do) b	o. It was fantastic. c) days correct form of the wo	d) day ord(s) in brackets





Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 6 - 8 | WB pages 72 & 73

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary			المفردات الرئيسية
carriage (n)	عربة	publish (ed) (v)	ینشر (کتابـًا)
depression (n)	منخفض	preserved (adj)	محمہ/محفوظ
fossils (n)	حفريات	problems (n)	مشاكل
heritage (n)	تراث	researcher (n)	باحث
length (n)	الطول	species (n)	فصیلة/فصائل
monuments (n)	آثار	stable (n)	إصطبل
owner (n)	مالك/صاحب الشىء	treat (ed) (v)	يعامل

Additional Vocabulary

المغردات الإضافية

	Market Control of the		
emperor (n)	إمبراطور	lighthouse (n)	منارة/فنار
builder (n)	عامل البناء	pipe (n)	أنبوبة
Greek (n/adj)	يونانى	result (n)	نتيجة
including (prep)	متضمنـًا/مشتملًا	statue (n)	تمثال
ingredients (n)	مكونات/مقادير	scientist (n)	عالم

Check Point

Choose and complete:

treat - stable - emperor - result

- 1 Horses live in a
- 2 We shouldeach other kindly.
- 3 The for ten years.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للعفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
amazing (adj)	مذهل	fantastic/wonderful	رائع	terrible	فظيع
ancient (adj) يم	أثرى/قدر	old	قديم	ری _ modern/new	حدیث/عص
cruel (adj)	قاسِ	unkind ف	غير عطوا	kind	عطوف
discover (v)	يكتشف	find out	يكتشف	hide	يخفى
hard (adj)	מפי	difficult	طعن	easy	سمل
lucky (adj)	محظوظ	fortunate	محظوظ	unlucky ь	غير محظو
popular (adj)	محبوب	famous	مشمور	unpopular ,	غير محبو
remote (adj)	بعتد	far	نعتد	near	قريب
save (v)	ينقذ	rescue	ينقذ	harm	يضر
برعب(terrible (adj	فظیع/ه	horrible	فظيع	lovely	جميل
warm (adj)	دافئ	sunny	مشمس	دة cool	مائل للبرو

حروف الجر

belong to	تخص/ تنتمہ لـ	kind/unkind to	طیب/غیر طیب مع
good/bad for	مفید لـ/ضار بـ	on land	قسالياا ملد
in danger	فہ خطر	wait for	ينتظر من أجل

eck Point

Choose and complete:

in – near – to – rescue

- 1 We should save our planet. We should _____it.
- 3 Some animals are danger.

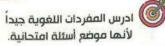
يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للكلمات، ومرادفها وعكسما وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Presen	it	Past simple	Past participle
burn	يحرق	burnt	burnt
take away	يبعرد	took away	taken away

ocabulary Builder





التعريفات

something that people travel in, that is pulled by a horse
the land that is below the area around it
the remains of animals or plants that lived in the past
how long something is
a person who owns, or has, something
kept safe from being damaged
very far from somewhere
a group of animals or plants of the same kind
a building/place where a horse sleeps

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	اللاحقة Suffix	الوظيفة Function	The new word a	الكلمة الجديا
bad (adj)	شيئ	-ly	تحويل الصفة لحال	badly (adv)	بشكل سيئ
differ (v)	يختلف	-ent	تحويل الفعل لصفة	different (adj)	مختلف
pollute (v)	يلوث	-ion	تحويل الفعل لاسم	pollution (n)	تلوث
preserve (v	یحفظ (۲	-d	تحويل الفعل لصفة	preserved (adj)	محفوظ

البادئة Prefix

البادئة Prefix	Word الكلمة	الوظيفة Function	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
	happy (adj) سعيد		unhappy (adj) غير سعيد
un-	kind (adj) طیب	تعطب عكس المعنب	unkind (adj) غير طيب
	popular (adj) محبوب/شعبہ		unpopular (adj) غیر محبوب

discover invent

يكتشف (شيئًا موجودًا بالفعل ولكن غير معروف للناس) يخترع (يصنع ويبتكر شيئًا لم يكن موجودًا من قبل)

- They discovered 52 new species of plants and animals in Borneo.
- Who invented the telephone?
- 2 use for + (v + ing/n.)

يئستخدم لـ

Wheat is used for making cake.

3 Study these words

قم بدراسة هذه الكلمات

	25pumah anim	als حيوانات	
crocodile	تمساح	white rhino	وحيد القرن الأبيض
	ozamla v Pla	ces أماكن	
Pantheon	معبد بانثيون	the Great Wall of China	سور الصين العظيم
Taj Mahal	تاج محل	the Sphinx	أبو الهول
the City of Petra	مدينة البتراء	Wadi al-Hitan	وادى الحيتان

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Thomas Edison the phonograph.
 - a) discovered

b) found out

c) invited

- d) invented
- 2 live in rivers and eat meat.
 - a) Lions

b) White rhinos

c) Crocodiles

- d) Turtles
- 3 This machine is used forcoffee.
 - a) making

b) to making

c) make

d) makes

Reading & Listening Skills

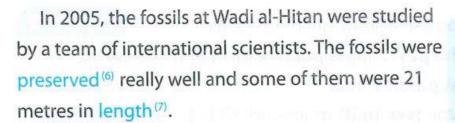
Pre-reading question: - What do you think a fossil is?

Lesson 3

Look quickly at the title of Huda's project and the photos. Discuss the SB page 6 questions in pairs.

Fossils® of the desert

The Fayum Depression (2) is an area of desert, southwest of Cairo. Many ancient fossils are often found here, but the species (3) of animal fossil might surprise you: crocodiles, turtles and whales. The most amazing fossils are the whale fossils. At Wadi al-Hitan, 'The Valley of the Whales', hundreds of fossils of ancient whales were found by scientists (4) in 1902. The scientists were surprised to find out (5) that these whales had legs, so they once walked on land.



It was discovered that these whales belong to the same family of animals as camels and giraffes. The fossils are so important that Wadi al-Hitan was called a UNESCO World Heritage Site (8) in 2005. However, it is very remote. As a result, it is only visited by about 1,000 people a year.

Today, Egyptian scientists are studying some of the fossils at Mansoura University using some of the latest technology, and they hope to learn more about these amazing whales of the desert.

Post-reading question:

- In your opinion, how can we encourage people to visit Wadi al-Hitan?





حفريات (1)	منخفض (2)
فصائل (3)	(4) elaic
يكتشف (5)	محقوظة (6)
الطول (7)	موقع التراث العالمہ لليونسكو (8)

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: species / spi:[i:z/ length /leηθ/ heritage / herətid3/

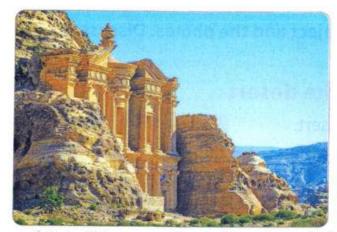
Pre-listening question: - Can you name any of the ancient wonders?

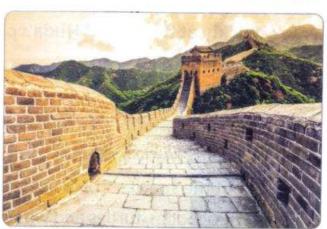
Lesson 3

0

Listen and choose the correct answer.

SB page 7





A list of the new Seven Wonders of the World was made in 2007. The city of Petra in Jordan was named as one of them. The Taj Mahal in India is also in the list. This beautiful monument⁽¹⁾ was built by Shah Jahan, to remember his wife, Mumtaz Mahal. Another new wonder of the world is the Great Wall of China.

اثر (1)

مكون (2)

Not many people know that the wall was built with an unusual ingredient (2) - rice!

Pre-reading question: - Do you like historic buildings? Why?

Lesson 3

Complete the text with the past simple passive form of these verbs.

You will need one present passive, too!

WB Page 72

The first Pantheon⁽¹⁾ in Rome was built in around 27 BCE. However, it was burnt (burned) down by a fire in around 80 CE. The building that we know today was built by Emperor Hadrian in around 120 CE. It was designed with the help of a famous Greek builder⁽²⁾, who was called Apollodorus of Damascus.



Perhaps the most amazing part of the building is a large hole in the roof. The hole was used to give the building light. Sometimes, rain falls through the hole, too. However, today, water is taken away by special pipes (3) in the floor.



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية: Damascus /dəˈmɑːskəs/ بانثيون (1)

بناء یونانی (2)

(3) انابیب

Post-reading question: - What's the main idea of the text?

Lesson 4

Pre-reading question:

- Do you think horses enjoy their work? Why?

Look at the photo of horses and carriages and discuss the questions SB Page 8 in pairs.

Black Beauty

The next winter was very hard for all the horses. The weather was terrible (2). There was rain every day and it was often windy (3). Some of the drivers were very poor, so their horses worked all night. Other horses did not have stables (4). They stayed out all night and got wet and cold. I was lucky (5) because Jerry was a kind owner and I was always put in a warm stable.

One day Jerry and I waited for work next to a park. I watched as an old carriage (6) drove up next to us. It was pulled by a horse who was

By Anna Sewell

فظیم/مرعب (2) الجمال الأسود (اسم قصة) (1) إصطبل للخيول (4) كثير الرياح (3) محظوظ (5) عربة (6) يعامل (8) (7) ملاك

thin and looked tired. I looked again and saw that it was my old friend, Ginger. She looked terrible.

We talked for a short time. Ginger was very unhappy. She had had many different homes and worked very hard. All her owners (7) were unkind to her and treated (8) her badly. 'You're my only friend; Ginger told me before her owner drove her away. I understood that I had a much better life than many other horses.



stable / steibal/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: carriage / kærıdʒ/

Post-reading question:

- What do you think of the drivers who treat their horses badly?



Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



Read and complete	te the text with wor	ds from the followir	ng list:
on -	at – found – were f	ound – length – foss	sils
There are many	fossils in the Fayum	Depression. The mo	ost amazing ones are
the whale (1)	. Hundreds of	fossils of ancient wha	ales (2) by
scientists at Wadi a	l-Hitan in 1902. Scien	tists found out that th	nese whales had legs
so they once walke	d (3) land	. The fossils were pres	served really well and
	21 metres in (4)		
2 Choose the correc	t answer from a, b,	c or d:	
		animals are discovere	d. "Discover" here is
the same as "			Longman
a) look out	b) watch out	c) find out	d) come out
2. The antonym of the			أيناؤنا فم الخارج ٢٠٢٣
a) remote	b) close	c) closed	d) hereabout
3. We add the prefix	"" to get the	e opposite of the wor	rd "popular". روزه والم
a) in-	b) un-	c) en-	d) im-
4. Ancient and old a	re		الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٣
a) antonyms	b) synonyms	c) opposite	d) different
5. Nahdet Misr is a b	ig company that	many books.	111000
a) discovers	b) covers	c) publishes	d) spreads
6. A/An is a	person who owns, o	or has, something.	THE PARTY OF THE P
a) owner	b) builder	c) tourist	d) waiter
7. My father is so kind	d. The antonym of "k	ind" is "	حمياط ٢٠٢٣
	b) clean	c) clever	d) cruel
8. The pharaohs pres	erved their dead boo	dies well. This means	they
them well.			البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
a) discovered	b) sold	c) kept	d) served
9. A is a bui	lding or a place whe	re a horse sleeps.	
a) depression	b) stable	c) carriage	d) fossil
10. To get the noun of	the verb "pollute", ac	dd the suffix	
a) -ly	b) -er	c) -ion	d) -ent
11. A group of animals			سوماج ۲۰۲۲
a) spaces	b) species	c) faces	d) cases

12. Egypt has many that attract lots of tourists.

b) monuments

c) researchers

d) species

a) fossils

Language

The Past Simple Passive

المبنى للمجهول مع زمن الماضى البسيط

Use was/were + past participle (the past simple passive) when a past action is more important than who did it, or when we do not know (or it is not important) who did something.

تستخدم صيغة المبنى للمجهول فى الماضى البسيط عندما نريد التركيز على الشخص أو الشيء الذي وقع عليه الفعل وليس من قام بالفعل، أو عند عدم معرفة من قام بالفعل.

Example

- Scientists found hundreds of fossils of ancient whales in 1902.

(Active)

- Hundreds of fossils of ancient whales were found in 1902.

(Passive)

الإثبات Affirmative

Active

المبنى للمعلوم

. ... التصريف الثانب للفعل + الفاعل

- I bought a mobile yesterday.
- Manal cooked eggs in a big pan.

Passive

المينى للمحمول

+ was/were + P.P. + (by + الفاعل).

- A mobile was bought yesterday.
- Eggs were cooked in a big pan.

Negative

النفى

. + didn't + **inf.** الفاعل

- I didn't send the email.
- My mother didn't make cookies.

+ wasn't/weren't + مفعول P.P. + (by + الفاعل).

- The email wasn't sent.
- Cookies weren't made.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1) My room (didn't clean) because I was busy.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (wasn't cleaned) لأن الجملة فب صيغة المبنب للمجهول (تبدأ بمفعول) فب زمن الماضب.
- 2 A lot of researches (did) about eagles by many scientists. - الإجابة الصحيحة (were done) لأن الجملة فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول (حيث إنها تبدأ بالمفعول، ولوجود by) فى زمن الماضى.

Yes/No question

السؤال بهل

?... + inf + الفاعل + Did

- Was/Were + مفعول + P.P. + ...?
- Did you write this letter?
- Did Egyptians invent stamps?
- Was this letter written?
- Were stamps invented by Egyptians?

Wh-question

السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. word + did + الفاعل + inf. ...?

- When did the Chinese invent paper?
- Who made the first pizza?

- Q. word + was/were + مفعول + P.P. + ...?
 - When was paper invented?
 - Who was the first pizza made by?



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 When(did) the factory built?
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (Was) لأنه سؤال في صيغة المبنى للمجهول في زمن الماضي.
- 2 Were you (invite) to your friend's party?
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (invited) لأنه سؤال في صيغة المبنى للمجهول في زمن الماضي.
- 3 When did the ancient Egyptians(built) the Pyramids?
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (build) لأن السؤال في صيغة المبنى للمعلوم في زمن الماضي فنستخدم مصدر الفعل.





Language Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the	sentences with	the correct fo	orm of the	e word(s) i	n brackets:
--------------	----------------	----------------	------------	-------------	-------------

1. This house (build) years ago by a famous engineer. ابناؤنا فما الخارم ٢٠٢٣
2. That picture was drawn (with) my sister.
3. When was Petra (name) as one of the new Seven Wonders
of the World?
4. This job(did) by a good worker. It was perfect.
5. A list of the new seven wonders (is) made in 2007.
6. Two goals (are scored) by Mo Salah in the last match.
7. Were all the questions (answer) correctly?
8. The novel I read yesterday (written) by the best writer.
9. The lesson (explained) well. We all understood it.
10. When(did) the message sent?
11. These trees(plant) by clever school boys last summer.
12. Your room is messy. It(not/tidy) yesterday.
13. The order (delivered) three days ago.
14. That photo (took) by my uncle when we were in Alex.
15. The earthquake (was caused) the disappearance of old houses
in Syria. (Longman)
16. How (did) the building damaged?
17. The vase(is) broken on the day we went out.
18. When was your mobile phone (losing)?
19. Who (break) the glass of this window?
20. Our car didn't start again because it (didn't) repaired well.



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write a short story

كيفية كتابة قصة قصيرة

- What's the story title?
- What kind of story is it?
- Who is the author?
- Who are the main characters?
- What are the main events?
- What did you learn from it?
- When was it published?

ما هو عنوان القصة؟ ما نوعها؟ من هو مؤلفها؟ من هم الشخصيات الرئيسية؟ ما هى أهم الأحداث؟ ماذا تعلمت منها؟ متی تم نشرها؟

Writing tips

Provide essential information. Tell readers the complete title of the work and the name of its creator. The details must be accurate.

قدم معلومات أساسية. أخبر القراء بالعنوان الكامل للعمل واسم مؤسسه. التفاصيل يجب أن تكون دقيقة.

Example

"Black Beauty"

"Black Beauty" is a children's book by Anna Sewell. A horse named Black Beauty is the main character of the book. In this book, the horse tells a story about his own life and experiences. The story begins with Black Beauty living in a comfortable stable of a kind master called Farmer Grey with his mother who always teaches him to be kind and gentle. When Beauty is four years old, Farmer Grey trains him to carry people on his back and pull carriages. When he gets older, he is sold to Squire Gordon at Birtwick Park. This is where he gets his name "Black Beauty" because he is a beautiful black horse with a white star on his head. After that, Beauty is sold from farm to farm and owned by different people. Black Beauty meets many people - the kind and the cruel. He also makes new friends and experiences many difficulties. We learn from this story to treat animals well because they have feelings like us. The book was published in 1877.

story you like"

ŧ	Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:
0	"A short story you l
Jeck K	

٠		
С		
	ш	
	_	
	63	
	_	
	_	
r	-	
7	*	
٠	• 1	
	_	

TEST YOURSEL



Unit 7



1	Read and	complete	the	text with	words from	the f	following	list:
---	----------	----------	-----	-----------	------------	-------	-----------	-------

owners – was written – wrote – carriage – luck – lucky

"Black Beauty" is a story which (1) by Anna Sewell in 1877. Black Beauty had a friend called Ginger. All her (2) were unkind to her and treated her badly. Black Beauty was (3) because his owner, Jerry, was kind. He used to pull a (4) for Jerry. He had a much better life than many other horses.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

There is a special list of the new Seven Wonders of the World, made in 2007. The first wonder is the Great Wall of China. It was built a long time ago to protect China. It's over 13,000 miles long! The second wonder is the ancient City of Petra in Jordan. It was built into the rock thousands of years ago. The third is the famous statue of Christ the Redeemer in Brazil. It's enormous and stands high up on a mountain overlooking the city of Rio de Janeiro. The fourth wonder is the ancient ruins of Machu Picchu in Peru. It was built by the Incas a long time ago. The fifth is the Roman Colosseum in Italy. It's a big stadium. The sixth is the Taj Mahal in India. It's a beautiful palace built by a king for his wife. The final wonder is Chichen Itza in Mexico. It's an ancient city that was built by the Mayans.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. In India, the king built a palace for his
 - a) sister
- b) mother
- c) wife
- d) girlfriend
- 2. This list of the new wonders was made ______ years ago.
 - a) fifteen
- b) seventeen
- c) nineteen
- d) twenty

- 3. The word "enormous" means
 - a) big
- b) tiny
- c) small
- d) luck

B) Answer the following questions:

- 4. What is the main idea of the passage?
- 5. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?
- 6. What other wonders do you want to add to this list?

	Choose the corr	ect answer from a, b	, c or d:	
	1. A is som	ething that people ti	ravel in and it's pulle	ed by a horse.
	a) car	b) boat	c) plane	d) carriage
	2. A is th	ne remains of animals	or plants that lived	اسوان ۱ in the past. ۲۰۲۳
١	a) rock	b) fossil		d) citadel
١	1270 A3132	osite of "happy", add t		
١	a) re-	b) un-		d) dis-
1		hat destroyed village		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Ì	a) in peace	2.00	c) in fact	d) in short
		wn worldwide. He is	(40)	
l	a) popular	b) terrible		d) amazed
l	a) far	warm today. The anto	KS.	
		b) sunny		d) hot
ŀ	Complete the ser	ntences with the cor	rrect form of the w	ord(s) in brackets:
	1. The statue of th	e Sphinx(w	as making) like a lic	on with a person's
l	head.			WE
		j Mahal(bui		SB
		eal(was) m		
		(is) discovered in		
	5. The first Panthe	on in Rome	(burned) down by	a fire in around 80 CE
E	Mrite ONE HUND	RED and TEN (110) v	words on:	
		"A story you l	like to read"	

	***************************************		***************************************	***************************************
			***************************************	***************************************
6		TOTAL CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY O		
Y	Challenging Question	ns		
		rrect answer from a		مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.
		m Depression, the sp	ecies of animal foss	ils might
	William Committee of the Committee of th	ht be amazed.		
	21 CHIRDICA			
	a) surprise	b) surprises	s c) surprised	d) surprising
	Some fossils	of whales belong to t	s c) surprised he same species of o	d) surprising camels. They are the
	2. Some fossils same	of whales belong to t	he same species of o	camels. They are the
	2. Some fossils same	of whales belong to t 	he same species of o	d) member
	2. Some fossils same	of whales belong to t 	he same species of o c) family orrect form of the v	d) member
	2. Some fossils same a) character 2 Complete the same same same	of whales belong to t 	c) family orrect form of the v (clean) yesterday	d) member





Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 9 - 11 WB pages 74 - 76

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary			المفردات الرئيسية
avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب	mongoose (n)	النمس (حيوان)
clarification (n)	توضيح	personification (n)	تجسيد
control (led) (v)	يتحكم فى	population (n)	عدد السكان
deforestation (n)	إزالة الغابات	roundabout (n)	حوران
endangered (adj)	عهدد بالانقراض	seeds (n)	بذور
fur (n)	الفراء/الفرو	skill (n)	م هارة
gold-coloured (adj)	ذهبب اللون	tongue-twister (n)	صعوبة فى النطق
lifestyle (n)	أسلوب/نمط الحياة	volcano (n)	بركان
loss (n)	فقدان/خسارة	volcano (n)	بركان

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

aim (ed) (v/n)	يهدف/هدف	label (n)	ملصق/علامة
flood (n)	فيضان	level (n)	مستوى
habit (n)	عادة	mainly (adv)	بشكل أساسى
hole (n)	حفرة/ثقب	sea shells (n)	أصداف البحر
humans (n)	البشر	turning (n)	منعطف
hunt (ed) (v)	تصطاد	wild (adj)	بری

Choose and complete:

control - habit - level - fur

- 1 Expensive coats are made of animals'
- 2 It's my mother's to have a cup of coffee every morning.
- 3 Governments build dams to floods.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite) בكسما
active (adj) نشيط	energetic	نشيط	lazy کسول
confused (adj) مرتبك/مشوش	puzzled	مرتبك	organised مرتب
explain (v) يشرح/يفسر	clarify/clear up	يوضح	confuse یشوش/یربګ
introduction (n) مقدمة	beginning	البداية	conclusion الخاتمة
organise (v) ينظم	arrange	يرتب	disarrange لا يرتب
several (adj) عديد	many	ڪثير	none لا أحد/لا شمء
thick (adj) سمیك/كثیف	dense	ڪثيف	thin رفیع

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

cross	> the road	يعبر الطريق	have > a role	لديه دور
do	> research	يقوم بعمل بحث	play > a role	يقوم بدور/يلعب دورًا

Prepositions

حروف الجر

ask for	يطلب	get from to	يصل من إلى
because of	بسبب	look after	تعیبی ن
famous for	مشمور بـ	mean by	یعنی بذلك

heck Point

Choose and complete:

energetic - lazy - of - for

1 Why don't you ask your sister some advice?
She knows all about fashion.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للكلمات ومرادفها وعكسها والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

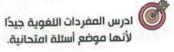
- 2 We can't go out because _____ the heavy rain.
- 3 You should be active. Don't be

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

P	resent	Past simple	Past participle
bite	يعض	bit	bitten
catch	يمسك/يلحق بـ/يصطاد	caught	caught
fight	يعارك/يقاتل/يحارب	fought	fought
understand	يفهم	understood	understood





التعريفات **Definitions**

active (adj) نشيط	someone who is active can move and do things easily
confused (adj) مرتبك	unable to understand something clearly
fill (v) يملأ	make something full, so there is no space for any more of something
fur (n) فرو	the thick hair that covers the body of an animal
label (n) ملصق/علامة	a word or phrase to explain things in a picture, diagram, etc.
mongoose (n) النمس	a small animal with a long body and tail, which lives in Africa and Asia

اللاحقة Suffix

الكلمة الج	حيدة The new word	الوظيفة Function	اللاحقة Suffix	Word الكلمة
اختلاف	difference (n)	تحويل الفعل لاسم	-ence	یختلف/یتباین (differ (v
اتجاه	direction (n)			یوجه (v) direct
تعبير	expression (n)	تحويل الفعل لاسم	-ion	يعبر express (v)
مقدمة	introduction (n)	تحويل الفعل لاسم	-tion	ntroduce (v) يقدم
مناسب	suitable (adj)	تحويل الفعل لصفة	-able	suit (v)

البادئة Prefix

البادئة Prefix	Word	الكلمة	Function	الوظيفة	يدة The new word	الكلمة الجد
dis-	appear (v)	يظمر	تعطى عكس المعنى	disappear (v)	يختفى	
un-	suitable (adj	مناسب (unsuitable (adj)	غير مناسب	

Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question: - What kind of stories do you like reading?

Lesson 5

Listen to Samir and Taha discussing the story of Black Beauty. Choose the correct answers.

SB page 9

I like the way the writer uses personification (1) to describe the horses. Taha

Samir Personification? I'm sorry, but I'm not sure I understand what you mean by that.

I mean that she makes the horses sound like Taha people.

Samir Could you give me an example?

Yes, for example, the writer calls the horses Taha 'I' or 'she' not 'it', and she talks about the horses' feelings (2). I think the writer is trying to make you feel that you and the horses are not very different species (3).

When you say 'not very different species', do Samir you mean the writer thinks that people and horses are the same?

Yes. Humans (4) and horses are on the same Taha level (5). Do you see what I mean?

Samir No, I'm still confused. Could you say that another way?

Taha OK. I feel that personification makes us understand the horses better. We can all feel happy or sad.

Samir Ah, I see. I understand that now.



personification /pərsonifikeIʃən/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

species /spi:ʃiz/

Post-listening question:

- Do you agree with Taha that horses have feelings like humans? How?



التجسيد (1)	مشاعر (2)
فصائل (3)	البشر (4)
(5) .saima	1981,7444,0444,044,0444,0444,0444,0444

Pre-listening question:

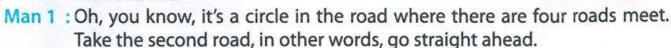
Lesson 5 - Who do you ask for help when you don't understand something?

Listen to three more conversations and match them with the topics they talk about a-c. SB page 9

Narrator: Conversation 1

Man 1: So, cross the road at the traffic lights, and then, just before the bridge, you'll get to a roundabout (1).

Man 2: I'm sorry, but I'm not sure what you mean by roundabout?



Man 2: Sorry. I'm still confused (2). Could you say that in another way? Do I take the second road, or go straight ahead?

Man 1 : Sorry, what I mean is, don't take the first turning, take the second one, which is also the road straight ahead of you.

Narrator: Conversation 2

Randa: This is an amazing app (3)! It can name any plant you want to find out about. You just need to take a photo of it.

Nihal: I'm sorry, but I'm not sure I understand what you mean. Could you say it another way?

Randa: OK, let's say you see a plant that you want to know the name of. You just take a photo of it on your phone, and then choose Find, and the app will tell you the name of the plant.

Narrator: Conversation 3

Boy 1: The problem isn't just that animals' habitats are disappearing (4). The problem is they are disappearing because of our bad habits!

Boy 2: When you say our bad habits, do you mean what we are doing?

Boy 1: Yes. I mean that it's because we want certain products so badly, we are prepared to destroy (5) our environment to get them.

Boy 2 : Can you give me an example?

Boy 1: We are destroying forests to build more roads, for example.



roundabout / raundabaut/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: straight /streit/

Post-listening question:

- Give other examples of how we destroy our environment.



دوران (1)

مرتبك (2)

تطبيق (3)

بختفی (4)

يدمر (5)

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 6

- If you are doing a research, how can you get the information?



Read the article quickly and answer the questions in pairs.

SB page 10

Introduction

There are about 30 different species of mongooses in the world.

Appearance

A mongoose (1) has a long body, with short legs and a long tail. Their bodies are covered by (2) thick fur.

Skills

Mongooses can see and hear very well, which helps them to find food and avoid (3) danger. Mongooses are famous for (4) fighting snakes. They are able to kill snakes by biting them.



حيوان النمس (1)	مغطہ بـ (2)
يتجنب (3)	مشمور بـ (4)
جزر (5)	مهدد بالانقراض (6)
إزالة الغابات (7)	نشيط (8)

Habitat

The mongoose is found in Africa, Asia and parts of Europe. It lives in forests, wetlands or grasslands, under the ground or rocks. In the 1800s, mongooses were taken to live in several islands (5) in Hawaii and the Caribbean to control the rat populations there. However, they are endangered (6), mainly because of deforestation (7) and loss of habitat.

Food

Mongooses eat small animals such as rats, birds, frogs and lizards, and also seeds, eggs and nuts.

Lifestyle

Mongooses are active (8) during the day and sleep at night. Although some live alone, many live in large groups of up to 50, where each one has a role to play: some hunt and others look after the young. They can live for up to ten years in the wild.



Mongoose / mpn gu:s/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: deforestation /di: fpri steIf(ə)n/

Post-reading question: - Think of a suitable title for this article.

Pre-reading question:

- What do you think a tongue twister means?



Read and correct the underlined words.

WB page 74

قصدة (1)

صعوبة في النطق (2)

شاطئ البحر (3)

مرتبك (4)



The sentence in this poem(1) is a tongue-twister(2). Hania

Tongue-twister? I'm sorry, but I'm not sure I Malak

understand what you mean by that.

Hania I mean that it is very difficult to say.

Could you give me an example? Malak

Yes, I'll read it: She sells sea shells on the sea shore(3). Hania

So when you say it's a tongue-twister, do you mean the letters in the Malak

words are all the same?

Hania They aren't all the same, but they are hard to read.

No, I'm still confused(4). Could you say that another way? Malak

OK. In a tongue-twister, the words are hard to say together quickly. Hania

Ah, I see. I understand that now. Malak



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

tongue /tʌŋ/

poem / paoim/

Post-reading question: - Give an example of a tongue-twister.

Pre-reading question: - What should we include in a fact file?

Lesson 6

بری (2)

Match the paragraphs in the Caracals fact file with the headings in the box.

WB Page 75

Appearance

The caracal⁽¹⁾ is a beautiful gold-coloured wild⁽²⁾ cat with large ears. Caracals are not very big – they grow to about 90 centimetres long.

Skills

Caracals' large ears help them to hear very well. They also have a lot of fur on their feet, which makes it difficult for other animals to hear them when they are trying to catch them. Caracals can also jump very high and are able to climb trees.



- قط الكاراكال (1)
- صحار (4) الشرق الأوسط (3)
- غابات (5)

Habitat

Caracals are found in many places in Africa and the Middle East⁽³⁾. They live in deserts⁽⁴⁾, but also in grasslands and forests⁽⁵⁾.

Food

Caracals catch and eat many animals, including mongooses, birds and rabbits.

Lifestyle

Caracals are usually active during the night and most live alone. Mother caracals often live in holes that are made by other animals. Caracals usually have between three and six babies (called kittens), who stay with their mother for about ten months. Caracals can live for up to 12 years in the wild.

Post-reading question: - Which information about the caracal surprised you?

Complete the text with the words in the box. SB Page 11

Much of the south of England is a **coastal** habitat next to the sea. Today, sheep and cows enjoy the green **grasslands** where they can eat. However, 250 million years ago, part of this coast⁽¹⁾ was very different. It was then a hot, **wetland** habitat where animals like **crocodiles**⁽²⁾ lived in the wet land. We know this because hundreds of **fossils** are often found here. Many of them are very well **preserved**⁽³⁾, so scientists can study many **species** of animals from long ago.

Post-reading question: - Write a summary for the passage.

Lesson 7



- ساحل (1)
- تماسيم (2)
- محفوظة (3)



Vocabulary Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

bites -	weighs – is fough	t – wild – fights – a	ims			
The caracal is a (1) cat with long legs, a short face, long ears and long teeth. It's found in Africa, the Middle East, Central Asia, Pakistan and India. It can grow to about 90 centimetres long. It (2) 8–19 kg and lives mainly alone or in pairs. The caracal (3) many animals and (4) them. It can jump very high.						
2 Choose the correct	answer from a, b, o	or d:				
1. You should	making bad frien	ds.	سوهاج ۲۰۲۳			
a) set up	b) avoid	c) retire	d) keep			
2. The ability to do so	mething well is a	***************************************	الحقملية ٢٠٢٣			
a) lifestyle	b) research	c) skill	d) race			
3. There are more flo	ods in many countri	es because of rising	الفيوم ٣٠٠٣الفيوم			
a) leaves	b) reefs	c) levels	d) rocks			
4. We add the suffix	to change	the verb "suit" into a	an adjective.			
a) -tion	b) -ment	c) -ance	d) -able			
5. We socia	l events and often g	o out together. We	arrange them.			
a) aim	b) explain	c) organise	d) hunt			
To form the oppos	ite of "appear", add t	the prefix				
a) dis-	b) en-	c) im-	d) un-			
7. Someone who is	can move a	nd do things easily.				
a) plain	b) suitable	c) confused	d) active			
8. I'm totally confuse	d. Could you explair	n that again? The sy	nonym of "confused"			
is"".						
a) puzzled	4. A.	c) clear				
9. "" is the tl			PARTIE OF THE PARTIE OF THE PARTIE OF THE PARTIE OF THE PARTIES OF			
a) Feather	The state of the s	c) Skin	A CONTRACT CARRY			
10. Many children are		ecause of illness. "	" is the			
synonym to "many						
	b) Active		d) Thick			
11. In which direct	Applicated to	155 CO.	AC OF THEM			
a) -ment	b) -ion		d) -ly			
12. They enjoy a very		the same of the sa				
al litestyle	1000	c) skill	di volcano			





Expressinglack of understanding and asking for clarification

التعبير عن عدم الفهم وطلب الإيضاح

A) Asking for clarification طلب الإيضاء

-	I'm still	confused.	Could	you say	that	another	way?
	1111 20111	comuscu.	Could	you suj	Lilar	ariotrici	vvuy

- ما زلت متحيرًا. هل يمكنك أن تقولها بطريقة أخرى؟

- I'm sorry, but I'm not sure I understand what you mean by that.

- عذرًا، لكنى لست متأكدًا بأننى فهمت ما يعنيه ذلك.

- Could you give me an example?

- هل يمكن أن تعطيني مثالًا؟

- When you say ..., do you mean ...?

- عندما تقول ...، هل تعنه...؟

توضيح أمر ما Clarification

- I mean,	أنا أعنب،
- In other words,	ىمعنى آخر،

C) Expressing understanding التعبير عن الفهم

- Ah, I see. I understand that now.

- حسنا، أنا أفهمك الآن.

- بمعنی آخر،

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

Mariam is explaining to her friend, Remas how to use the new app.

		• • •
Mariam: I've installed an amazi	ng app.	
Remas :(1)	?	
Mariam: It can name any plant	you want to find out abo	out.
Remas :(2)		
Mariam : OK, if you want to kno	ow the name of any plar	nt, take a photo on you
phone, and then choose Find.		
Remas: I'm still confused. (3)		?
Mariam: OK. The app will tell you	the name of the plant wh	nen you give it the photo
Remas : Ah, I see. (4)		
Mariam : Will you install it?		

Unit 7



How to write a review of desert life

كيفية كتابة نقد عن الحياة فى الصحراء

- There are not many animals in the desert.
- Examples of animals that live in hot deserts are (بعض الحيوانات الصحراوية).
- Some animals like (اسم الحيوانات) live under the ground to (السب).
- Camels can live for a long time without water.
- They store water in their bodies.
- Life is really difficult in the desert, but it isn't impossible.

Writing tips

Think about the topic you are writing about and consider what the most relevant ideas or issues related to that topic.

- فكر فت الموضوع المطلوب منك الكتابة عنه مع مراعاة أكثر الأفكار ملاءمة وارتباطًا بالموضوع.

Example

"Desert life"

Life in deserts is hard because there's not much food or water. However, plants, animals and people found a way to live in deserts. There are not many animals in the desert, but some animals are able to live in that hard habitat. Examples of animals that live in hot deserts are lizards, snakes and camels. Small animals, such as lizards live underground to avoid heat. They only come out at night to look for food. Like desert plants, desert animals can live on as little water as possible. Most of the water used by these animals comes from seeds that hold and keep water. Camels can live in hot deserts by storing water in their bodies. They have wide feet, so they don't sink into the ground. Life is really difficult in the desert, but it isn't impossible.

int	Write a short story about a trip you did to a desert habitat.
P. P.	
Shec	
F	
	*



Lessons

d) -ion



	UNDERP		Offic 7	(5 & 6)						
1 Finish the following	dialogue:				3					
Samir is explaining the meaning of personification.										
Samir : I like the way t	the writer uses p	ersonificati	on.							
Taha : Personification					ri .					
Samir: I mean that sh	e makes the hor	ses sound	like people.							
Taha : (2)		***********	?							
Samir: Yes, for examp	ole, the writer cal	ls the horse	es 'I' or 'she' n	ot 'it'.						
Taha : Do you mean	the writer thinks	that peop	le and horses	s are the s	ame?					
Samir : (3)	(337424334444443334474444444444444444		Do you	see what	I mean?					
Taha: No, I'm still co	nfused. (4)	***************************************			?					
Samir: OK. I feel that	personification r	nakes us ui	nderstand th	e horses b	etter.					
Taha: Ah, I see. (5)				•						
Dead and complete t	ha taut with wa	uala fua ua Al	ha fallawina	. It ata						
2 Read and complete t										
fur – contro	ol – deforestation	n – fear –	are found –	find						
There are about 30	0 different speci	es of mon	gooses. They	(1)	in					
Africa, southern Asia	and southern Eu	rope. They	have a long	body, wi	th short					
legs and a long tail. T	heir bodies are c	overed by	thick (2)	T	hey like					
to fight snakes. Some	people use mon	gooses to	(3)	rat popu	ulations.					
They are endangered	because of (4)		and loss of h	abitat.						
3 Choose the correct a	newer from a h	corde								
PART TO SERVE SERV										
1. To is to ma	ke something fu	II, so there	is no space f	or any mo	re of					
something.	L) avaid	A lecon		all asset						
a) fill	b) avoid	Y2		d) cont	ЮІ					
2. The introduction of t "introduction" is "		nteresting.	The synonyi	n or						
a) conclusion	b) ending	c) sun	nmary	d) begi	nning					

3. We add the suffix to change the verb "express" into a noun.

c) -ance

b) -ment

a) -tion

4. Ais a word	or phrase to expl	ain things in a picture	e, diagram, etc.
a) hole	b) skill	c) label	d) stable
5. The population of Eq	gypt is about 100	million. The word "po	pulation" means
the			
a) smoke	b) people	c) litter	d) animals
6. You should	yourself when yo	ou're angry.	
a) damage	b) design	c) break	d) control
Complete the senten	ces with the corr	ect form of the word	l(s) in brackets:
1. English	(speak) in many	countries of the wor	ld.
2. Two windows	(broken)	during yesterday's pa	irty.
3. Pizza is	(making) with c	heese and tomatoes.	
4. Three people	(are hurt)	in the fires last night	K 1
5. When was the oldes	t house in the US/	4(build	d)?
Write ONE HUNDRED	and TEN (110) w	ords on:	
The Company of the Co	"A review of de	eert animale"	

		a 8	
Challenging Questions			
Choose the correct a	nswer from a, b,	c or d:	عجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب
1 Basmala is very be	autiful. She has	hair.	
a) gold colours		b) gold-colou	r
c) gold-colouring		d) gold-colou	red
2 The match ended	with three		
a) goals	b) aims	c) scores	d) labels
3 Which suffix descr	ibes the noun?		
a) -able	b) -ent	c) -ed	d) -ion

يتخبب	حفريات	ساحلی	diign	إزالة الغابات	محيط	(قرد) إنسان الغاب	ď	يكتشف	مهدد بالانقراض	الدب القطبى	عدد السكان	ज्ञांछ व्यूर्व	فراء/فرو	مِسْتِد. بَابًا
avoid	fossils	coastal	natural	deforestation	ocean	اب orangutan	destroy (ed)	discover (ed)	endangered	polar bear	population	rainforest	fer	grassland

Landnage

Present simple passive:

New hospitals are built in Egypt every year. (الفاعل + am/is/are + P.P. + (by + مفعول

(الفاعل + am not/isn't/aren't + P.P. + (by + مفعول The difficult questions aren't solved by

students.

Question:

Q. word + am/is/are + Joan + P.P. + ...?

When is your favourite programme shown?

2. Past simple passive;

Form:

(الفاعل + was/were + P.P. + (by + مفعول

A lot of roads were made in Egypt last year. (الفاعل + wasn't/weren't + P.P. + (by + مفعول

The email wasn't sent yesterday.

Question:

Q. word + was/were + Jgada + P.P. + ...?

When was this temple built?

أرض رطبة

وحيد القرن الأبيض

white rhino

wetland

mongoose

wildlife

النمس (حيوان)

سميك/كثيف

السكان المحليون

أنواع/أطناف

species

locals

thick

عجائب

wonders

الحياة البرية

Expressing lack of understanding and asking for clarification

A) Asking for clarification

- I'm still confused. Could you say that another way?
- I'm sorry, but I'm not sure I understand what you mean by that.
 - When you say ..., do you mean ...? Could you give me an example?
 - B) Clarification
 - I mean, ___
- · In other words,
- Ah, I see. I understand that now. C) Expressing understanding



Al-Adward Test on Unit







Language Functions

	الفيوم ٢٠٢٣ Finish the following dialogue:
	Hagar is talking to Reem about some interesting animals.
١	Hagar: Are you interested in animals, Reem?
١	Reem :(1)
١	Hagar: (2)?
	Reem : I like orangutans most.
	Hagar: (3)?
	Reem: They live in rainforests. Have you ever seen an orangutan?
	Hagar: (4)
	Reem: What about you? Which animal do you like most?
	Hagar: (5)
	Reem: I wonder how the polar bears can live there.
	Peading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list: rule - role - active - make - are made - wild

Some animals are (1) during the day and sleep at night like mongooses. Mongooses also live in large groups of up to 50, where each one has to play. Other animals are usually active during the night like caracals. They live alone. Mother caracals often live in holes that (3) by other animals. Most (4) animals live in forests or grasslands.

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Black Beauty is born on a farm in the English countryside. He spends the first four years of his life there with his mother and the other farm horses. Beauty is sold to another owner. There, Beauty makes friends with Merrylegs and Ginger. Beauty behaves well in many situations. Both Ginger and Beauty are sold again to another owner. After some time Beauty and Ginger are sold to different owners. Beauty meets Ginger again. She looks terrible. They talk for a short time.

Ginger is very unhappy. She has many different homes and works very hard. All her owners are unkind to her and treat her badly. Finally, Beauty is sold to a good home of three women who are looking for a good horse. Beauty is a fine horse,

	cide to keep him. It is ir derstands that he has a		STORY THE PROPERTY OF THE PROP
	rrect answer from a,		5
1. The passage	is about a summary of	f a/an	
a) email	b) letter	c) article	d) story
2. Black Beauty	spendsyear	rs with his mother.	
a) two	b) three	c) four	d) five
3. Merrylegs an	d Ginger are Beauty's		
a) friends	b) teachers	c) owners	d) cousins
B) Answer the fo	llowing questions:		
4. What does th	e underlined pronour	"She" refer to?	
5. Ginger is unh	appy. Explain.		
6. Do you want	to own a horse? Why/	Why not?	
	Vocabulary	and Structure	2

4	Choose	the	correct	answer	from	a.b	. C	or	d:
	-110036	CHIC	COLLEGE	CALL OF ALL POINT		u, w	, -	~.	-

1. A big fire	the house. It damag	jed it all.	
a) saved	b) contained	c) protected	d) destroyed
2. We can call the h	abitatwhen	it has lots of trees a	nd rain.
a) grassland	b) polar	c) rainforest	d) desert
3. The synonym of	"local" is "".		
a) national	b) international	c) global	d) worldwide
4. A is a l	arge area of water surre	ounded by land.	Longman
a) desert	b) lake	c) hell	d) mountain
5. If you	someone well, you are	nice to them.	
a) belong	b) contain	c) own	d) treat
6. To form a noun f	rom the verb "pollute",	we add the suffix "	
a) -ful	b) -able	c) -ment	d) -ion

Complete the sentences w	ith the cor	rect form of	the word(s) in b	rackets:
1. These pictures are	(ta	ke) by my sist	er.	البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٣
2. The news	(be) watche	d by Omar ev	very day.	سوهاج ۲۰۲۳
3. The mistakes were correct	cted	(to) th	ne teacher.	
4. They (cate	ch) thousand	ds of fish from	the sea yestero	الفيوم ۲۰۲۳ الفيوم
5. Long ago, camels	(cal) ships of the	desert.	الأسعادات ١٠٠١ يتاريخ
	D V	Vriting		
Write ONE HUNDRED and	TEN (110) v	vords on:		
"A re	view of diff	erent habita	ts"	

	******************	***************************************	***************************************	

		***************************************	***************************************	
	***********	***************************************		***********************
	****************	***************************************		*************************
	******************	*******************	***************************************	
	***********		*******************************	

Assess your	< 50%	50:64%	65:84%	85:100%
progress * * * * *	Study again	Practise more	Solve more exams	Well done!



Protecting our planet

Objectives of the unit

Reading An article about climate change; a post about a school project; blogs about a recycling project

and weaving; a text about seagrass

Writing A plan for a recycling project; a speech about how to keep air clean; a short report about

a habitat

Listening A radio report about an environmental problem; a discussion about printer cartridges;

identifying word stress; a speech about helping the environment

Speaking Discussing environmental problems; giving a speech

Language Verb + to or -ing

Life Skills Problem solving and decision making

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات (SB) تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب Longman) تشير لأسئلة لونجمان

STUDY



Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 12 - 15 WB pages 77 & 78

Vocabulary

قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

Antarctic (n)	القطب الجنوبى	greenhouse gases (n)	غازات الاحتباس الحرارى
Arctic (n)	القطب الشمالب	industry (n)	الصناعة
carbon dioxide (n)	ثانى أكسيد الكربون	landfill sites (n)	مواقع دفن النفايات
chemicals (n)	مواد كيميائية	melting ice (n)	ذوبان الجليد
climate change (n)	تغير المناخ	methane (n)	غاز الميثان
coral reefs (n)	الشعاب المرجانية	oil (n)	بترول/نفط/زيت
electrical equipment (n)	معدات كهربائية	oxygen (n)	الأكسجين
electricity (n)	كهرباء	planet (n)	ڪو ڪب
farming (n)	الزراعة	rubbish (n)	قمامة
forest fires (n)	حرائق الغابات	solar energy (n)	طاقة شمسية
fossil fuels (n)	الوقود الحفرى	wind power (n)	طاقة الرياح

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

breathe (d) (v)	يتنفس	produce (d) (v)	ينتج
collect (ed) (v)	يجمع	transport (n)	النقل/المواصلات
continue (d) (v)	يستمر		
drought (n)	جفاف	volunteer (n)	متطوع

Check Point

Choose and complete: drought - breathe - collect - electricity

1 Hot countries can get from the sun, using solar panels.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك

للعفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

- 3 The air we should be clean and safe.
- (n) = noun
- (adj) = adjective
- (prep) = preposition

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(v) = verb

(adv) = adverb

(conj) = conjunction

Protecting our planet

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

الكلمة Word	دفها (Meaning) دفها	مرا	Antonym (Opposite)	لمسحد
absorb (v) يمتص	تص take in	يه	leak	يتسرب
create (v) يخلق/ينشئ	make/produce بنع/ينتج	يد	destroy	يدمر
increase (v) يزيد	raise يد	یز	reduce/decrease	يقلل
keep (v) يحافظ	preserve bà	يد	endanger	يعرض للخطر
melt (v) يخوب	وب dissolve	يذ	freeze	يتجمد
problem (n) مشكلة	trouble شڪنة	ص	solution	حل
serious (adj) خطير/جاد	dangerous طير	خا	safe	أمن
waste (v) یهدر/یضیع/بیدد	lose/misuse خسر/یسمء استخدام	ید	save	يحفظ/يدخر

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

get	> worse		يزداد سوءًا
take	> a shower	A CONTRACTOR OF THE PROPERTY O	ياخذ حمامًا

Prepositions حروف الجر

breathe in	يستنشق	reason for	سېب ل
breathe out	يزفر (يخرج الزفير)	serious for	خطیر لـ
in the same way	بنفس الطريقة	solution to	حل لـ

eck Point

Choose and complete:

waste - getting - to - in

1 My father has a solution the problem.

2 We mustn't our energy resources. We must save them.

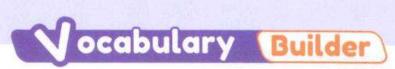
3 My headache is worse. I have to go to a doctor.

كيمدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للكلمات ومرادفها وعكسما والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle	
leave	يترك/يغادر	left	left	
pay for	يدفع ثمنًا	paid for	paid for	





Definitions		التعريفات
-------------	--	-----------

absorb (v) متص	to take in a liquid or gases through a surface		
air pollution (n) تلوث المواء	damage caused to the air by chemicals and waste		
carbon dioxide (n) ثانہ اُکسید الکربون	a gas which we breathe out and which is produced by burning fossil fuels		
climate change (n) تغیر المناخ	how the Earth's weather changes		
deforestation (n) إزالة الغابات/التصحر	when all the trees in an area are cut down		
drought (n) جفاف	a long period of time during which no rain falls		
fossil fuel (n) وقود حفری	natural material such as petrol and oil that you can burn for energy		
greenhouse gas (n) غاز الاحتباس الحرارى	a gas in the air such as carbon dioxide which can cause global warming		
landfill site (n) موقع دفن النفايات	a place where rubbish is taken, often to be buried under the ground/a place where people leave rubbish on the land		
melting ice (n) ذوبان الجليد	a problem in the Arctic and Antarctic because of global warming		
methane (n) غاز الميثان	a natural gas often produced by animals and dead plants/ a greenhouse gas from landfill sites		
solar energy (n) الطاقة الشمسية	energy from the sun		

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	اللاحقة Suffix	الوظيفة Function	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
environme	بيئة (nt (n)	-al	تحويل الاسم لصفة	environmental (adj) بيئه
equip (v)	يعد/يجهز	-ment	تحويل الفعل لاسم	equipment (n) معدات/أجهزة
renew (v)	يجدد	-able	تحويل الفعل لصفة	renewable (adj) متجدد

Prefix البادئة

البادئة Prefix	وظيفة Function	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
re-	تعطب معنب الإعادة	cycle (v) راجة	دورة/يركب در	recycle (v)	يعيد تدوير

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 1

- How can we help solve the environmental problems?

Listen to the radio programme. Which of the environmental problems on page 12 will this project help to stop?

SB page 13

In the cities of Cairo, Giza and Fayoum, there is a project that is teaching people about climate change⁽¹⁾ and how to help the environment by recycling⁽²⁾ rubbish.

Over 400 women volunteers⁽³⁾ visit houses in these cities every week. The volunteers ask people to put their rubbish into three different bins: for plastic, paper and metal. When the volunteers come back a week later, they pay the families money for the rubbish they have collected. Then they take away⁽⁴⁾ the rubbish for recycling.

"If families collect their paper, plastic and metal, we will pay them for it," says Dalia. "Then we can take away the rubbish and recycle it. It's a great solution⁽⁵⁾ to a big problem, because the family get some money and we help the environment."





تغير المناخ (1)	إعادة التصنيع (2)
متطوعون (3)	يبعد (4)
حل (5)	



volunteer solution /volentier/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Post-listening question:

- What's the main idea of the text?

Pre-reading question: - From your point of view, what's the main reason for climate change?

Lesson 2

Read the article. What produces a lot of carbon dioxide?

SB page 14

Our planet is getting hotter and our weather is changing. There are more floods(1), droughts(2) and forest fires than at any time in history. One of the reasons for this is climate change.



Climate change is caused by greenhouse gases such as carbon dioxide. These are made when we burn fossil fuels(3) such as oil. Rubbish in landfill sites makes a greenhouse gas called methane. Deforestation⁽⁴⁾ also produces greenhouse gases. Trees absorb carbon dioxide from the air. When we cut down trees, the carbon dioxide stays in the air.





If we keep burning fossil fuels, climate change will get worse. So, we need to use cleaner renewable energy(5) such as solar energy and wind power⁽⁶⁾. We must start recycling more rubbish and stop putting rubbish in landfill sites. If we recycle more paper, we can avoid cutting down our forests. This will help slow down climate change.



فيضانات (1)	جفاف (2)	وقود حفری (3)
إزالة العابات (4)	طاقة متجددة (5)	قوة الرياح (6)

Complete the blog with these verbs. Which of the topics from the graph on page 15 of the Student's Book is the blog about? WB Page 78

Buildings cause 6% of our greenhouse gases(1). If we keep building houses in the same way, global warming(2) will continue. I think we should decide to build houses that need to use less electricity from fossil fuels. We can do this by planning to build houses that use renewable energy. We should also avoid leaving all our electrical equipment on when we are not using it!

Post-reading question:

- What could we do to help the environment?



- غازات الاحتباس الحرارى (1)
- الاحتباس الحراري (2)

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating



 Read and complete tl 	he text with words	from the following	سوهاج ۲۰۲۳	
interrupt - will - renewable - cut - won't - fossil				
We should do our b	est to keep our env	rironment clean. We n	nustn't (1)	
down trees because th				
fuels to stop climate o				
comes from the sun an	d the wind. So, we (4) be able to	live in a safe planet.	
2 Choose the correct a			•	
1 is a gas tha			Longman	
a) Methane		S 10000	d) Oil	
2. The suffixca			27	
a) -al	b) -ly		d) -ing	
3. Trees absorb carbon			_	
Di MCC3 ab301b ca1b011	aloxide alla give en	, 9	Longman	
a) take in	b) give out	c) give up	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	
4. He worked as a				
a) vet		c) volunteer		
5. We add the prefix				
again.			سوهاج ۲۰۲۳	
a) im-	b) un-	c) re-	d) dis-	
6is a long perio	d of low rainfall tha	at leads to a shortage	of water. (Longman)	
a) Draught		c) A stream	d) A well	
7. When you heat ice, it				
a) stops		c) leaks	d) melts	
8 makes air, v	vater, soil etc. dange	erously dirty and not	suitable for people	
to use.			(Longman)	
a) Cultivation		c) Pollution		
9. The country tried ha		ndustry by building	new factories. The	
antonym of "increase	"is"		DE .	
a) freeze	b) melt		d) raise	
10is a natural				
		c) Fossil fuel	d) Solar energy	
11. Another word for "ma			الفيوم ۲۰۲۳	
a) present	b) promise		d) produce	
12. We can get an adjectiv			H	
a) -ness	b) -able	c) -tion	d) -y	

Language

The First Conditional

الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Use (If/When + present simple + will + inf.) to talk about things in the future which we think will probably happen.

تستخدم للتحدث عن أشياء نعتقد أنها من المحتمل أن تحدث في المستقبل.

Form

التكوين

will/won't + inf. فاعل 🗼 مضارع بسيط present simple فاعل 🗼 will/won't + inf.

If families collect their paper, plastic and metal, we will pay them for doing it.

When we recycle old things, the world will be greener.

will/won't + inf. > if/when > فاعل + present simple عضارع بسيط

Our environment will be cleaner when we recycle our rubbish.

Climate change will get worse if we don't avoid cutting down trees.

وعند السؤال نستخدم:

present simple + فاعل + inf. + if/When + فاعل + present simple? + present simple فاعل + will + فاعل + inf. + if/when + فاعل + present simple

Will Dina speak good English if her parents move to Canada? What will happen if we don't recycle rubbish?

Got it ?

- 1 What will happen if you (didn't) pass your exams?
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (don't) لأن قبل (if) مستقبلًا (will) فيتبع if مضارع بسيط.
- 2 If she comes early, she (watch) the movie.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (will watch) لأن بعد (if) مضارعـًا بسيطًا. فالجملة الأخرى تكون فه المستقبل.
- 3(Do) you buy a new laptop if you join the university?
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (will) لأن بعد (if) مضارعنا بسيطًا، وبالتالم يسبقها مستقبل.

_

Verbs + (to + inf.)

advise to	ينصح بأن	hope to	يامل أن	teach to	يُعلم أن
agree to	يوافق أن	invite to	يدعو أن	tell to	يخبر أن
allow/permit to	يسمح بأن	learn to	يتعلم أن	want to	يريد أن
ask to	يطلب أن	need to	يحتاج إلى	warn to	يحذر أن
choose to	يختار أن	offer to	يعرض أن	would like to	يود أن
decide to	يقرر أن	order to	يامر ان	would love to	يحب ان
encourage to	يشجع أن	plan to	يخطط أن	would prefer to	يفضل أن

Form

التكوين

Subject + verb + to/not to + inf.

Example

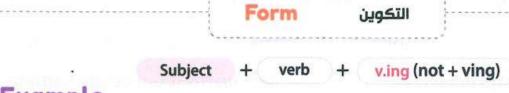
- We need to use cleaner renewable energy.
- We decided (to/not to) go out.
- My father warned me not to come late again.

Got it ?

- 1 Our teacher encouraged us(try) recycling old things.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (to try) لأن الفعل (encourage) يتبعه (to + inf.).
- 2 My father advises me (not/stay) up late on a school night.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (not to stay) لأن الفعل advise يتبعه (to/not to).

Verbs + (v + ing)

avoid	يتجنب	mind	يمانع
enjoy	تسيىيع نـ	practise	يمارس
escape	يهرب	recommend	توصہ نـ
finish	ينمى	spend	يقضى (وقتا)
go	يذهب	suggest	یقترح ۰
keep	يحتفظ/يستمر	understand	يفهم



Example

- If we keep burning fossil fuels, climate change will get worse.
- He suggested not eating at that restaurant.

Got it ?

- 1 Hanaa likes to practise (speak) English with native speakers.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (speaking) لأن الفعل (practise) يتبعه (v + ing).
- 2 I recommend (not/visit) the museum in the afternoon as it becomes very crowded.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (not visiting) لأن الفعل (recommend) يتبعه (v+ ing).



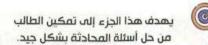


Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ♣ Applying ♣ Analysing ♣ Evaluating ▲ Creating



1. My brother asked me to stop (run) in the middle of the street.	أبناؤنا فى الخارج ٢٠٢٣
2. What (would) you do if you don't understand the lesson?	جنوب سيناء ٢٠٢٣
3. If I have more time, I (would) read more books.	البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٣
4. Did you finish (do) your homework?	Longman
5. My mom allows me (have) a piece of candy after dinner.	
6. We should avoid (eat) unhealthy food.	المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
7. If we (not/stop) using oil, we will have more pollution.	Longman
8. My mother always orders me(clean) up my room before	bedtime.
9. If the train is late, I (phone) you.	WB
10. The teacher advises the students (study) for the test.	
11. You (get) very healthy if you go running every day.	WB
12. We must avoid (pollute) the environment.	دمیاط ۲۰۲۳
13. Do you enjoy (play) the piano?	جنوب سيناء ٢٠٢٣
14. If you brush your teeth, you(not/get) toothache.	
15. What do I need (buying) from the shops, Mum?	أسوان ۲۰۲۳
16. The family decides(have) a barbecue for dinner.	
17. If she(help) her mum or dad, they will be proud of her.	
18. If you(saving) enough money, you will be able to buy a	new toy.
19. I would love (have) a pet dog.	المنيا ٢٠٢٣
20. The government plans (plant) a lot of trees along the side	s of streets.





Discussing environmental problems

مناقشة المشاكل البيئية

Situation

ما بقال في هذا الموقف

Response

حملة الرد









What will happen if we recycle rubbish?

ماذا سيحدث لو أعدنا تصنيع القمامة؟

Our environment will be cleaner.

ستصبح بيئتنا أكثر نظافة.





How does deforestation create greenhouse gases?

كيف ينتج التصحر غازات الاحتباس الحرارى؟

When we cut down trees, the carbon dioxide stays in the air.

عندما نقوم بقطع الأشجار، يظل غاز ثانه أكسيد الكربون فه الهواء.





Why are trees good for the environment?

لماذا تعد الأشحار مفيدة للبيئة؟

Because they breathe in carbon dioxide which is bad for the environment.

لأنها تستنشق غاز ثانه أكسيد الكربون الضار بالبيئة.



Speakina Exercise



Remembering A Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

Shady and Amir are talking about climate change.

Shady: What do you think we can do to reduce climate change?

Amir : (1).....

Shady: Is recycling good for the environment?

Shady: (3).....?

Amir: We should use renewable energy.

Amir : (5)?

Shady: We can use electric cars.

Amir: Great! Electric cars will reduce pollution and there won't be any accidents.



How to write a review of recycling

كيفية كتابة نقد عن إعادة التصنيع

- I think recycling is very (صفة).
- We need recycling for many reasons.
- Recycling saves a lot of energy.
- Recycling paper saves millions of trees.
- Moreover, recycling reduces the amount of waste.
- In addition, we use this recycled material for producing many new products.

Writing tips

Use varied sentence patterns in your writing. There should be both long and short sentences. استخدم نماذج متنوعة من الجمل. يجب أن تكون هناك جمل طويلة وأخرى قصيرة فم الفقرة.

· Example

"Recycling"

Recycling is very important as it helps to save our planet. First, it saves energy. Recycling materials uses less energy than making new products. Secondly, it reduces the amount of waste that is sent to landfill sites. When we leave waste on landfill sites for a long time, it produces different kinds of greenhouse gases like methane. Thirdly, recycling paper and wood saves millions of trees that breathe in carbon dioxide and make oxygen. So, it helps our environment to be cleaner. Finally, recycling creates new jobs every year. So, it helps people who don't have jobs to find work. I think recycling is the best solution for helping our environment. We should all learn to recycle old things.

<u>.</u>	Write a review about:
k Point	"Environmental problems"
Chec	
Proj.	

TEST YOURSELF



Lessons (1 & 2) Unit 8

II Finish the following	g dialogue:		och leep gun i ol
Said is telling his n	nother about defo	restation.	
Mother: What subj			
Mother: What did y	ou learn in science	7	
Said : (2)		Dean everybe	
Mother : (3)			
	tion is cutting down		
Mother: (4)	1101(III) III II II	ndy zaho.	
			bsorb carbon dioxide.
Mother : What will I			issors carbon aloxide.
2 Read and complete	the text with word	s from the follow	ing list: ۲۰۲۳ الدقملية
	burning – gases – c		
			ere are more floods,
			ne of the reasons for
that is climate (2)	which is ca	used by greenhous	se (3) such
as carbon dioxide. T	hese are made whe	n we keep (4)	fossil fuels.
3 Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. She has been working	ng at a school for free	for more than 8 year	ars. She is
			الحقملية ٢٠٢٣
a) an employee	b) a volunteer	c) the boss	d) the manager
2. energy	is clean energy from	n the sun, water, or	wind. (Longman)
a) Polluting	b) Polluted	c) Non-renewal	ble d) Renewable
3. Prices usually go up	o from time to time.	They	uickly.
a) absorb		c) melt	
4. To some	ething is to turn it in	to something that	
	100 20	Siem H	(Longman)
a) invent	b) cut	c) recycle	d) throw

5. When you go m	ountain climbing, you	should take the right	t equip
a) -ment	b) -tion	c) -able	d) -ly
6. We keep our foo	od cold in the fridge. T	he synonym of "keep	o"is"
a) stop	b) preserve	c) endanger	d) waste
Complete the se	ntences with the cor	rect form of the wor	d(s) in brackets:
1. We should avo	id (cut) dow	n trees.	وان ۲۰۲۳
2. There is no bre	ad, so we need	(go) to the baker	'S. ۲۰۲۳ دی الجدید
3. You	go) to the party tonig	ht if you study all you	ur lessons.
4. The doctor tole	d the patient	(taking) medicine e	very day. ۲۰۲۳ مىليە
5. If you follow th	e rules, you	(not/get) in trouble.	
Write ONE LINE	RED and TEN (110) v	words on:	e em tr
The state of the second considerable and the state of the second considerable and the			ب سیناء ۲۰۲۳
"A review of pro	tecting our planet fr	om the dangers of c	limate change"

			,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,

		***************************************	***************************************
***************************************		***************************************	
Challenging Questi	ons		
1 Choose the co	orrect answer from a	b.cord:	حاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.
	orefix to the ver		
a) re-	b) im-	c) ir-	d) il-
7	oun from the verb "fa		
a) -ed	b) -ing	c) -ly	d) -tion
-	sentences with the		
	your homework, you	can go outside and	(will pla)
with your fri	enas. varns the child	(touch) the hot n	an
Z. The parent v	variis trie Criiiu	(touch) the not p	uii.





Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 16 - 18 WB pages 81 & 82

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary			المفردات الرئيسية
cartridge (n)	خرطوشة (وعاء حبر)	loom (n)	نول
fabric (n)	نسيج القماش	materials (n)	مواد خام
fishing net (n)	شبكة صيد	printer (n)	طابعة
head teacher (n)	مدير المدرسة	traditional (adj)	تقلیدی
ink (n)	д	thread (n)	خيط

Additional Vocabulary

S. Al		دات ا		11
اميه	ىرىع		ينطوا	الر

blog (n)	مدونة إلكترونية	post (n)	منشور
carpet (n)	سجادة	recycling box (n)	صندوق إعادة التدوير
culture (n)	ثقافة	recycling centre (n)	مركز إعادة التدوير
discussion (n)	مناقشة	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعب
design (ed) (v)	يصمم	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
jewellery (n)	مجوهرات	weaving (n)	النسيج
leather (n)	جلد	weaver (n)	نساج
machine (n)	قاآ	wool (n)	صوف

Choose and complete: wool - post - designs - ink

- 1 We need some _____ for our printer.
- 2 My father is an engineer. He buildings.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقباس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word قلكلمة	مرادفها (Meaning) مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	
broken (adj) مڪسور	damaged محطم	unbroken/undamaged بر مکسور	
connected (adj) متصل	متصل linked	غیر متصل disconnected	
expensive (adj) غالم الثمن	costly مکلف	inexpensive/cheap رخیص	
latest (adj) احدث	مديث modern	قدیم old	
lovely (adj) جميل	beautiful جميل	ugly قبیح	
traditional (adj) تقلیدی	old-fashioned قديم	new/modern حدیث	

Language Expressions

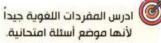
التعبيرات اللغوية

find	> a way	يجد طريقة	keep	> clean	يحافظ على نظافة
Prepos	itions				حروف الجر
accordi	ing to	وفقًا لـ	make into		يحول إلى
agree v	vith	يتفق مع	throw away		يتخلص من

wrong with



متصل بـ



خطأ فى

Definitions

connected to

التعريفات

خرطوشة (n) cartridge	a piece of plastic which contains and supplies ink for a printer	
fabric (n) نسيج القماش	cloth or material which can be used to make clothes, bags, etc.	
ink (n) בּאָر	a liquid used in pens or printers for writing, drawing, etc.	
نول (ماكينة النسيج) (loom (n	a machine used for weaving	
thread (n) خیط	a long piece of cotton, silk, etc. which people can use to sew or make clothes	
weaver (n) عامل النسيج	a person who makes cloth by weaving	
weaving (n) النسيج	the art of making cloth by crossing threads using a special machine	

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	اللاحقة Suffix	الوظيفة Function	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
colour (n)	لون	-ful	تحويل الاسم لصفة	colourful (adj) زاهه اللون/ملون
discuss (v)	يناقش	-ion	تحويل الفعل لاسم	discussion (n) قناقشة
Egypt (n)	مصر	-ian	تحويل الاسم لصفة/ اسم فاعل	قصری Egyptian (n/adj)
expense (n) قفة	مصروف/نا	-ive	تحويل الاسم لصفة	expensive (adj) غالم الثمن
print (v)	يطبع			printer (n) طابعة
weave (v)	ينسج	-er	تحويل الفعل لاسم	weaver (n) نساج
tradition (n)	تقليد	-al	تحويل الاسم لصفة	traditional (adj) تقلیدی

Making a suggestion Let's + inf. Why don't we + inf. ? Let's watch TV tonight.

تقديم اقتراح هيا بنا لم لا...؟ • Why don't we start a recycling project?

"be" made of

"be" made from

مصنوع من (والمادة الخام لم تتغير) مصنوع من (والمادة الخام تتغير أو مصنوع من شمء آخر)

This door is made of wood.

Glass is made from sand.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 This T-shirt is made Egyptian cotton.

- a) from
- b) of
- c) into
- d) by

- 2 Why don't we that mountain?
 - a) climbing
- b) climb c) to climb
- d) to climbing

- 3 That chair is made an old door.
 - a) into
- b) at
- c) from
- d) of

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 3

- What's a printer used for?



Listen to Dalida and Sherifa talking then choose the correct answer.

SB Page 16

Dalida I want to print an article from the

internet, but the printer is broken⁽¹⁾.

Sherifa Really? What's wrong, Dalida? Let me

look. No, the printer isn't broken.lt needs a new printer cartridge⁽²⁾.

Dalida Of course. You're right, Sherifa. I think

there's a new one in the cupboard.

Sherifa What are you going to do with the old one?

Dalida I'll throw it away. I always throw them away.

Sherifa You can't throw it away!

Dalida Why not?

Sherifa That is very bad for the environment. Ink from the printer cartridge

can get into rivers and the sea. The ink kills(3) fish and other sea

animals. It's really terrible. You must recycle it.

Dalida Oh, no. I didn't know that. That sounds horrible.

Sherifa Look! There's an address on the box. If we send the printer cartridge

to that address, they will recycle it.

Dalida OK. Let's do that. What happens to all the printer cartridges at school?

Sherifa I don't know. I think they're thrown away.

Dalida Well, why don't we start a recycling project?

Sherifa That's a great idea.



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

address /əˈdres/

Post-listening question:

cartridge / ka:trid3/

Do you think that their recycling project will succeed? Why?



- خرطوشة الطابعة (2)
- يقتل (3)

Pre-reading question:

- What do you usually do with your old things or the things you don't want?



Read Dalida and Sherifa's social media post. What have they asked their teachers to do?

SB Page 17

Our School recycling project!

The problem

Five classrooms in our school have a computer and a printer⁽¹⁾. At the moment, we throw away the printer cartridges⁽²⁾ with the school rubbish. But the ink inside printer cartridges is very bad for the environment(3). So we want to start a school recycling project.



What we are going to do

We have asked our head teacher, Mr Hamdi, if we can start a recycling project(4), and he said yes. He will let us put a recycling box in the classrooms with

طابعة (1) خرطوشة الطابعة (2) سئة (3) مشروع إعادة التدوير (4)

printers. We have written emails to all our teachers. We have asked them to put the old printer cartridges in the recycling boxes.

How you can help us

We will take the recycling boxes to the recycling centre every month. But we need volunteers to help us. If you would like to be a volunteer, please write your name and email below.

Thank you.

Dalida and Sherifa



recycling /ri: saiklin/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

Post-reading question:

- Do you like to join Dalida and Sherifa? Why/Why not?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 3

- How important is the mobile phone for you?

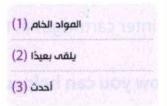


Choose the correct words to complete the blog.

WB Page 79



We all enjoy having new mobile phones, but what should we do with our old phones? Should we keep throwing them away? Remember that it is not easy to make mobile phones. They need to have a lot of important materials(1) inside



them. When you throw away⁽²⁾ a phone, these materials can be very bad for the environment. I think that one day, we will not need to buy a new phone every few years. People will design phones that can use the latest(3) technology, even when it changes. Then, we will avoid throwing away our old phones. That will be very good for the environment!



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

material /məˈtɪəriəl/

technology /tek noledzi/

Post-reading question:

- Do you agree with the blog? Why/Why not?

Lesson 4

Pre-reading question: - What does the word "tradition" mean?

Read the blog about the Reform Studio in Cairo. What is made there?

Weaving(1) is an Egyptian tradition(2), but there aren't many traditional weavers(3) in Egypt today. So I was surprised to see three weavers working on traditional looms(4) when I visited the Reform Studio in Cairo.

When Mariam Hazem and Hend Riad were students at university(5), they wanted to do something about plastic rubbish.

They found a way of making old plastic bags into long threads(6), which they could make into fabric(7) on a traditional loom.

Then they used the plastic fabric to make colourful(8) bags, chairs and small carpets(9).

Today their bags, chairs and carpets are sold in shops in Cairo and London. This is a fantastic project because it is great for the environment(10) and great for one of our

Egyptian traditions!

Post-reading question:

- What's the main idea of this passage?

النسيم (1)

عادة/تقليد (2)

نساجون (3)

نول (4)

الحامعة (5)

خبوط (6)

قماش (7)

زاهم الألوان (8)

سحاد (9)

السئة (10)





WB Page 80

Lesson 4



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

thread /Ored/

fabric / fæbrik/

1. Complete the text with these words.

There are a lot of traditional arts in Egypt. I learned about the traditional art of weaving at school today. A weaver uses a machine called a loom. This crosses threads under and over each other to make fabric. Weavers can make very beautiful things.

Pre-reading question:

- Which materials are easy to recycle?

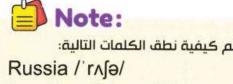
Read the text about recycling. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences. WB Page 80

Waste⁽¹⁾ is a big problem around the world. However, many of the things that we throw away can easily be recycled.

- Russia used a plastic football field⁽²⁾ in the 2018 World Cup. It was made from 50,000 plastic cups.
- You can recycle cotton and wool to make new clothes. You can also use old plastic bottles to make rubbish bags and plastic bags for shopping.
- You can make lovely⁽³⁾ new handbags from pieces of leather⁽⁴⁾ that factories do not use.
- Some stones are very expensive, but you can make beautiful jewellery⁽⁵⁾ from old glass bottles.
- When plastic fishing nets fall into the sea, they are very bad for sea animals. We can collect the fishing nets and recycle them into other plastic items, like sunglasses for example.
- You can make bricks⁽⁶⁾ to build houses from old plastic bottle tops. They are very strong!

Post-reading question:

- How could recycling help the environment?





قمامة/نفايات (1)

ملعب كرة قدم (2)

جميل (3)

(4) جاد

محوهرات (5)

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: jewellery / dzu:əlri/

Life Skills

We can all do something to help the environment. If you know of a problem, decide what you can do about it. Do some research and think of different solutions. Don't be afraid to ask for help. Make a plan before you begin.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

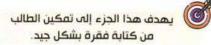


Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

1	Read and	complete th	e text wit	h words from	the following list:

centre - to	help - helping - ve	olunteers - weavers	- away
		environment. After d	
		hings instead of throw	and was a market pro-
of the control of the last of the control of the co		. We need (4)	
would like to be a vo	olunteer, please write	your name and email	us.
Choose the correct	answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. The suffix	makes the adjecti	ve of the word "tradi	الوادى الجديد ٢٠٢٣
a) -ic	b) -al	c) -ion	d) -ure
2 is the art	of making cloth by	crossing threads using	ng special machine.
a) Farming	b) Weaving	c) Sailing	d) Baking
3. Sailors use fishing	to catch f	ish.	
a) printers	b) looms	c) nets	d) webs
4. A/Anis a	machine on which	thread is woven into	cloth.
a) engine	b) axe	c) loom	d) room
5. A printer	is a small containe	r of ink for use in a pr	inter. ۲۰۲۳ سوهام
a) cartridge	b) carriage	c) glass	d) cup
6. The vase is broker	n. Who threw it to th	e ground? "Broken" h	ere is opposite in
meaning to "			
a) quiet	b) unsafe	c) dangerous	d) undamaged
7. We add the prefix	to get the	opposite of "connec	ted".
a) un-	b) dis-	c) re-	d) en-
8. You need three m	etres of fo	r the dress. It should	be good cloth.
a) ink	b) fabric	c) weaving	d) technology
9. To get the adjective	ve from the noun "co	olour", we add the su	ffix
a) -ful	b) -ive	c) -ion	d) -er
10. If something is	, it costs muc	h money.	البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٣
a) easy	b) cheap	c) expensive	d) difficult
11. We had a discuss-	about wh	ere to go next holida	y.
a) -ment	b) -ion	c) -ful	d) -ive
12. To get the antony	m of the adjective "e	expensive", we add th	e prefix
a) im-	b) in-	c) en-	d) re-





How to write a review of a traditional craft

كيفية كتابة نقد عن حرفة تقليدية

- Egyptian handicrafts are popular with tourists.
- (الحرفة) is one of the most popular crafts in (مكان).
- There are a lot of schools for learning (الحرفة).
- In this craft, people use (المواد الخام).
- I think more people should learn that craft.
- It's very important for the Egyptian economy (الاقتصاد المصرى)

Writing tips

Follow these steps while writing a paragraph:

- Plan your paragraph.
- Write it.
- Review your paragraph. * اتبع تلك الخطوات عند كتابة الفقرة:
 - خطط لفقرتك.
 - اكتبها.
 - راجعها بعد الكتابة.

Example

"A review of weaving"

Egyptian handicrafts are popular with tourists. Weaving is one of the most popular crafts in Upper Egypt. To weave, you need looms, threads and needles. A loom is a machine that crosses threads under and over each other to make fabric. Weavers can make very beautiful things. Unfortunately, there aren't many traditional weavers in Egypt today. To encourage doing that traditional craft, the government is planning to build four new schools to teach weaving in different cities. These schools will have the best weavers all around Egypt. Their job is to teach students how to weave. They also plan to do a recycling project which is connected to weaving. I think weaving is very important for the Egyptian economy.

Check Point	Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on: "A traditional craft"
טֿ	

TEST YOURSELF



Lessons (3 & 4) Unit 8



Read and complet	e the text with wo	rds from the following	list:
throw	- throwing - for - v	vith - recycle - materia	ls
When we buy no Should we keep to can be very bad for (3)	new things, what sh hem or throw ther r the environment v	ould we do (1) n away? Some of the when we throw them. So e should try to (4)	our old ones? se (2) o,we should avoid
Read the following	g, then answer the	questions:	
		to protect the environr	ment by reducing
		als. When we recycle, w	
		things. Recycling is ea	
We can put things	like bottles, cans ar	nd cardboard in a specia	I bin for recycling.
Then, take the bir	to a recycling cent	tre. At the centre, the tl	nings we recycled
get arranged and	turned into new th	ings. By recycling, we c	an help to reduce
		atural materials. Recyc	
		ealthy and clean for ou	
The second secon		ecycling, we can all mak	e a difference and
help protect our e		. It was do	
	rrect answer from a		
a) pollution	b) waste	ronment by reducing c) a & b	d) none
		we recycle old things.	u) none
	b) bad	c) cloudy	d) polluted
	nerations" refers to		a) politica
_	nts b) grandchild		d) teachers
110 CO 100 CO 10	lowing questions:		
		sage?	
		oun "it" refer to?	
		e things that we can re	
3 Choose the correct	t answer from a, b	, c or d:	
		of farming. The antonyr	n of "traditional" is
<i>u</i>	minimum Lance	tion Alliances, restricted stre	جنوب سيناء ٢٠٢٣
a) modern	b) old	c) expensive	d) far

2. Ais a person who makes cloth by weaving.

a) loom

b) weaving

c) weaver

d) fabric

3. What can I do to I	orint this document?	To get the noun fro	m the verb "print
add the suffix	*************		Longma
a) -or	b) -er	c) -ist	d) -ment
4 is a liqui	d used in pens or pri	nters for writing, dra	wing, etc.
a) Juice	b) Fabric	c) Ink	d) Thread
5. I liked your	on social media. I	wrote a comment o	n it.
a) post	b) technology	c) loom	d) box
6. This T-shirt is expe	nsive. It isn't	at all.	*
a) latest	b) new	c) costly	d) cheap
Complete the sente	neas with the corre	ct form of the word	(s) in brackets
			(5) III DI GERECS.
	ou/buy) if you go to the		Longma
	. (finish) his bath, he		
	ed (share) th		other.
4. Adel wants	(buy) a new mobi	e phone.	Longma
5. The little girl enjoy	rs(sing) her	favourite song.	
Write ONE HUNDRE	D and TEN (110) wo	rds on:	
WITE ONE HONDRE			
	"A recycling	project"	
***************************************			*******

***************************************		***************************************	
***************************************	******************************		*******************************

Challenging Questions	h .		
1 Choose the corr	ect answer from a, b	cord:	ريات الكتاب
	hink we can save er		
meaning of "		lergy: Save Here i	ias the opposite
a) stop	b) use	c) keep	d) waste
	A STATE OF THE STA	Construction of the Constr	u) waste
			d) evpensive
a) lucky		c) inexpensive	@
Section of the sectio	ntences with the cor		ra(s) in brackets:
150 No. 150 No	ys warns me		
2 (to do	oing) exercise makes	you fit.	





Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 19 - 21 WB pages 83 - 85

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

		fi baaraa saasa saa a a	
herbs (n)	باشدأ	remind (ed) (v)	ينذكر
leaf/leaves (n)	ورقة/ أوراق (نبات)	seagrass (n)	أعشاب البحر
lift (n)	סנוסכ	spider plants (n)	نباتات عنكبوتية
member (n)	فرد/عضو	washing up water	الماء المتبقب من الغسيل

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

baby fish (n)	سمكة صغيرة	temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة
invite (d) (v)	يدعو	tips (n)	نصائح/نقاط هامة

Choose and complete: tips - invited - lift - member

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية

والإضافية.

- 1 I want to be a _____ in a great club.
- 2 My friend _____ me to his birthday party.
- 3 Our teacher always gives us some _____ at the end of the lesson.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسما
attractive (adj)	جذاب	beautiful	جميل	horrible/terrible	فظيع
careful (adj)	حريص	cautious	حريص	careless	مهمل
familiar (adj)	مألوف	بع well-known	معروف/شائ	unfamiliar	غير مألوف
respect (v)	يحترم	admire	يعجب بـ	disrespect	لا يحترم
water (v)	یروی	irrigate	یروی	dry	يجفف

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

give	> a speech	يلقب خطابنا	order	> a material	يرتب مادة للحديث
keep	> clean	يحافظ على نظافة	presen	t > a material	يعرض مادة للحديث

Prepositions	9. 1	,	حروف الجر
along the coast of	على طول ساحل	take care of	یعتنی ب
careful of/with	حریص من/علہ	to conclude	فى الختام
solution for/to	حل لـ	turn on/off	يفتح/يغلق (جهازًا)

Check Point

Choose and complete:

dry - off - giving - irrigate

1) I'm always worried before ______ a speech.

2 I usually turn my computer when I don't use it.

يمدف هذا التدريب لقياس فممك للكلمات ومرادفها وعكسما والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle	
choose	يختار	chose	chosen	
smell	يشم	smelt	smelt	



ادرس المفردات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Definitions

التعريفات

herbs (n) اعشاب		plants whose leaves are used in cooking to add flavour to food, or as a medicine		
seagrass (n)	عشب البحر	a plant which lives in the sea, usually near the coast		

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	اللاحقة Suffix	الوظيفة Function	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
attract (v)	يجذب	-ive	تحويل الفعل لصفة	attractive (adj)	جذاب
care (n)	رعاية	-ful	تحويل الاسم لصفة	careful (adj)	حریص
dive (v)	يغوص	-er	تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	diver (n)	غواص
natural (adj)	طبيعى	-ly	تحويل الصفة لحال	naturally (adv)	بشكل طبيعى

Prefix البادئة

البادئة Prefix	Function الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلعة الجديدة
dis-	تعطى عكس المعنى	respect (v)	يحترم	disrespect (v)	لا يحترم
un-	تعظم عكس المعتم	familiar (adj)	مألوف	unfamiliar (adj)	غير مألوف

It's best to + inf.

من الأفضل أن

- It's best to choose plants that grow naturally in Egypt.
- start/finish by + v + ing

بیدأ/بنمی ب

- I'd like to start by saying that we should all use less energy.
- I'd like to finish by saying, we can all help the environment.
- keep + adj.

- This keeps us fit and healthy.
- It is + adj. + to + inf.

- It's important to recycle as much as possible.
- stop + v + ing

يتوقف عن

- Please stop buying water in plastic bottles.
- help + (inf. / to + inf.)

يساعد

Seagrass helps keep (to keep) the sea healthy.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Our teacher always starts the lesson by guestions.
 - a) ask
- b) to ask
- c) to asking
- d) asking

- 2 Could you help me a job?
- b) getting
- c) to getting
- d) got
- 3 Stop your money on sweets that are bad for your health.
 - a) to waste
- b) waste
- c) wasting
- d) to wasting

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 5

- What environmental problems would you like to give a speech about?

Listen to Ziad's speech. What is it about?

SB Page 19

Ziad Today, I'm going to talk about what we can do to help the environment. I'd like to start by saying that we should all use less energy⁽¹⁾. For example, turn off the TV and computer at night. Remember to turn off the lights when you leave a room. And we should all use the stairs and not the lift⁽²⁾. This saves energy and keeps us fit and healthy.

In the next part of my speech (3), I'd like
to talk about water. We need to save
water, so please turn off the tap when
you brush your teeth. And when you
water your plants, use your washing up
water. And please stop buying water in
plastic bottles. Buy a glass water bottle
that you can use again. This saves plastic waste (4).





طاقة (1)	مصعد (2)
خطاب (3)	نفايات (4)
يحترم (5)	

And it's really important to recycle as much as possible. Recycle your plastic, glass and paper at home. And why not start a recycling project at school?

I'd like to finish by saying, we can all help the environment. We need to understand that the environment is our home and it is important that we respect (5) it.



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

waste /weist/

speech /spi:tʃ/

Post-listening question:

- Summarise the speech in two lines.

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 5

- Have you ever grown any plants at home?



Complete the speech with these expressions.



- 1. Today, I'm going to talk about plants in the house. Not everyone has them, but I think you should!
- 2. I'd like to start by saying that plants are very good for your health.
- 3. To begin with, plants breathe out oxygen, which is a gas that we need to breathe. Also, plants often absorb (1) pollution in the air, making it cleaner for us.
- تمتص (1)
- أوراق النباتات (2)
- أعشاب (3)
- حذاب (4)
- ىشكل طبيعي (5)
- 4. In the next part of my speech, I'd like to talk about where to put your plants. Some plants smell nice, so I put these in my balcony. And you can eat the leaves (2) of plants called herbs (3), so put these in your kitchen! Spider plants look attractive (4), so I put them in an open place, like the living room.
- 5. I'd like to finish by saying that it is best to choose plants that grow naturally (5) in Egypt. They will look better in your house since they will look familiar. Plants that grow naturally in Egypt are easier to take care of.



breathe /bri:ð/

herb /ha:rb/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

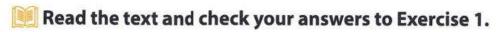
Post-reading question:

- What two reasons are there for choosing plants from Egypt?

Pre-reading question:

esson 6

- Do you think that seagrass is important to the environment? Why/Why not?



SB Page 20



Seagrass (1) is found in the sea along the coast (2) of many countries. It is food for many sea animals, including turtles. Baby fish and sea animals live in seagrass because it is a safe place.

Seagrass helps keep the sea healthy and it can help stop climate change (3). This is because seagrass absorbs 10% of the ocean's (4) carbon dioxide every year. Seagrass absorbs carbon dioxide 35 times faster than rainforests. That is why seagrass can help stop climate change.

أعشاب البحر (1) ساحل (2)

تغير المناخ (3)

(4) المحيط

مع ذلك (5)

About 90% of all seagrass has disappeared from the UK's coast in the last 100 years. However, there is an environmental project in the UK that is growing new seagrass. When the plants are big enough, divers will plant them along the coast. The plants will still be quite small. Nevertheless (5), they will grow into 20,000 square metres of seagrass.



absorb /əbzə:rb/ nevertheless /neveða les/ تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Post-reading questions:

- 1 How can seagrass help stop climate change?
- 2) From your point of view, why has seagrass disappeared from the UK's coast?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

	Read and complete t	the text with wor	ds from the following	ng list:	(Longman)
-	to pollute - pl	anet – renewable	-polluting - plant	- healthy	
ŀ	We should keep tl	ne environment cl	ean. We should avoi	id (1)	the
	Nile. We should (2)				
l	energy. Thus, we will				
6	Choose the correct a	nswer from a, b,	c or d:		
>	1. People usually use a				
	a) seagrass	b) diver	c) lift	d) con	clusion
	2. If you som	eone, you have a	good opinion of thei	r characte	r or ideas.
	a) choose	b) respect		d) gro	
	3. Our club has many	. It has a	lot of people.		
	a) tips	b) lifts		d) her	bs
	4. A is a plan	t which lives in the	e sea, usually near th	e coast.	
l	a) leaf	b) seagrass	c) member	d) tip	
	5. I saw an attract	dress and I	wanted to buy it.		
ŀ	a) -ed	b) -ing	c) -ous	d) -ive	<u>,</u>
Į	6. A is a pers	on who swims un	der water.		
	a) diver	b) member	c) spider	d) squ	iare
	7. It's very hot today. T	The is ver	y high.		
	a) spider	b) member	c) lift	d) ten	nperature
l	8. Farmers have to wa	ter their crops esp	ecially in hot weathe	er. The anto	onym of
	"water" is "				1.00
l	a) dry	b) irrigate	c) flood	d) dro	ught
	9. I like to follow the	19 195 82 63 63 63 65 65 65 65 65 65 65 65 65 65 65 65 65	J-75.		
	a) temperatures			8	mbers
l	10. Young people shou		ple. Add the prefix	to	get the
١	antonym of "respec		* 11	15	
١	a) in-	b) im-	c) dis-	d) ab-	
Ì	11. You should be care	ful when you cross	the road. The oppos	site of "care	etul"
١	is "".	or epistinis s	5 E	-N	mich tara
	a) care	Parties on Property of American	c) cautious	d) car	ing
	12. To get the adverb o	h) -ive	c) -less	d) -inc	a
	3111/	F3 1 - 1 1 / 63	-1		CORT :

C Language

Conjunctions

الروابط

Reason

روابط السبب

because

لأن

- Baby fish and sea animals live in seagrass because it is a safe place.
- I didn't go to school because I was ill.

This / That is because

هذا بسبب

Seagrass can help stop climate change. This is because seagrass absorbs
 10% of the ocean's carbon dioxide every year.

Result

روابط النتيجة

That is why

ولهذا السبب

 Seagrass absorbs carbon dioxide 35 times faster than rainforests. That is why seagrass can help stop climate change.

Contrast

روابط التناقض

Mowever

ومع ذلك

• Waste is a big problem around the world. However, many of the things that we throw away can easily be recycled.

Nevertheless

مع ذلك

 The plants will still be quite small. Nevertheless, they will grow into 20,000 square metres of seagrass.

🄇 Got it 💡

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 He got the full marks (however) he worked hard.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (because) لأنه تم ذكر سبب حصوله على الدرجة النهائية.
- 2 Some people try to throw rubbish away.(because) it can be useful! الاجابة الصحيحة (However) لأن هناك تناقضًا.



Language Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
1. I am tired (so) I stayed up late last night.
2. I forgot my lunch at home. That is (because) I'm hungry.
3. One of the reasons we are having more floods is (why) a lot of the
world's ice is melting.
4. I wanted to go to the park (Because), it started to rain.
5. He didn't take his medicine. That is(so) he still feels sick.
6. I am happy (but) I got a new toy.
7. He is good at playing the guitar (Because), he's not good at singing.
8. We have to be quiet. This is(so) the baby is sleeping.
9. It's very cold outside (Because), I'm going to play in the snow.
10. Baby fish and sea animals live in seagrass (however) it is a safe place.
11. We didn't water the plants. That is (because) they died.
12. He cried loudly (That's why) he had hurt his knee.
13. I don't want to go outside (but) it's too hot.
14. Plastic is bad for the environment (Because), it is easy to recycle.
15. He's not feeling well (Because), he's going to go to school.
16. She is cold (so) she forgot her jacket.
17. He is a good swimmer (So), he's scared of deep water.
18. We have to use sunscreen. This is (why) the sun is very hot today.
19. He didn't wear his coat in the rain. That is(so) he got sick.
20 The traffic was very had (because), she arrived at work on time.





إلقاء خطاب Giving a speech

A) To start a speech

لتبدأ الخطاب/الحديث

Today, I'm going to talk about plants in the house.

- اليوم سأتحدث عن النباتات في المنزل.
- I'd like to start by saying (that) plants are very good for your health.
 - أود أن أبدأ حديثم قائلا بأن النباتات مفيدة جدا لصحتك.

To begin with, plants breathe out oxygen, which is a gas that we need to breathe. - بادئ ذى بدء، النباتات تخرج الأكسجين وهو الغاز الذى نحتاجه للتنفس.

B) To move to a new point

للانتقال للنقطة التالية في (الخطاب/الحديث)

In the next part of my speech, I'd like to talk about where to put your plants.

- في الجزء التالي من حديثي، أود التحدث عن أين تضع نباتاتك.

C) To finish a speech

لإنهاء الخطاب/الحديث

1

To conclude, growing plants is very important for us.

- لنلخص الخطاب، زراعة النباتات عهم جدًّا لنا.

l'd like to finish by saying (that) it is best to choose plants that grow naturally in Egypt. - أود أن أنهم حديثه قائلا بأنه من الأفضل أن تختار النباتات الته تنمو بشكل طبيعه فه مصر.

Speaking Exercise A Remembering A Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

Marawan is preparing a speech ab	out the importance of recycling.
----------------------------------	----------------------------------

Maged: Hi, Marawan. What are you doing?

Marawan: (1)

Maged: What is it about?

Marawan : (2)

Maged : That sounds interesting! (3) ______?

Marawan: I'd like to start by saying that recycling helps to reduce waste.

Maged: What would you like to talk about in the next part of your speech?

Marawan: (4)

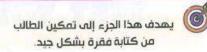
Maged : (5) ?

Marawan: I'd like to finish by saying that recycling helps to save energy and

reduce greenhouse gases.



2. Write it right



How to write a paragraph about "Clean air".

كيفية كتابة فقرة عن جعل الهواء أكثر نقاءً.

- Clean air is important to human health.
- Most air pollution is caused by (الأسباب).
- We should help clean our air.
- We can change our routines to make our air cleaner.
- We can (ما يمكننا فعله).

Think about how you want to structure your paragraph. This will make your paragraph more coherent and easier to read.

فكر كيف ستقوم باستخدام القواعد اللغوية في الفقرة. هذا سيحعل فقرتك أكثر ترابطًا وأسمل عند القراءة.

·Example

"Clean air"

Clean air is important to our health. There are many things we can do to help reduce air pollution and make the air cleaner. Use buses and trains instead of cars, as they can carry a lot more people on one journey. This decreases the amount of pollution produced. Walking or cycling is better than using a vehicle, as it does not create any pollution. Use less energy so less carbon dioxide is into the air. Most energy is produced by the burning of fossil يُطلق fuels, like coal الفحم, oil and gas, which create carbon dioxide, a greenhouse gas. Turning off lights when they are not needed and not wasting electricity will reduce the need for energy. All of that means that small changes in our daily routine can make a difference in the quality of the air we breathe. I think it's our role to teach the children how to keep the air cleaner and how to save the environment.

Point	Write a review of different ways to keep the environment clean.
Check	

Finish the following dialogue:

	mouning androgate.				
Waleed is go	oing to give a speech ab	out the important	ce of seagrass.		
Waleed	: I'm so happy today.				
Mohammed	:Why are you so happy?		<u></u>		
Waleed	: (1)		·········• •		
Mohammed	: Great! What is your spe	ech about?			
Waleed	: (2)				
Mohammed	:(3)		?		
Waleed	: Seagrass is important b	ecause it absorbs c	arbon dioxide.		
Mohammed	: (4)		?		
Waleed	: In the next part of my sp	eech, I'd like to talk a	bout growing seagrass.		
Mohammed	: (5)				
Pood and co	mplete the text with wo	ands from the follow	wing lists		
and co					
	carbon - made - plant	- care - planet - ma	akes		
Life is not	possible without plants.	Plants are the beau	ty of our (1)		
They are useful gifts of nature. When a plant grows, it (2) the area around					
it cleaner and more beautiful. Plants produce oxygen and absorb (3)					
dioxide. It is a	a fact that people, who live	e near plants, are he	althier and happier. We		
should take (4) of plants.				
Choose the	orrect answer from a, b	c or d:			
1is a plant like grass that grows in or close to the sea.					
a) Linen	b) Cotton	c) Rice	Later and		
	that is has a be	Example 6:	d) Seagrass		
a) attractive		c) terrible	d) horrible		
	plants, you pour wate				
a) throw	b) burn	c) grow	d) irrigate		
a) tillow	w) built	c, 910W	w) iiiigate		

To get the opposite	of the word "familia	ar", we add the prefi	X
a) in-	b) ab-	c) un-	d) dis-
5. Please be more care	eful next time. The s	ynonym of "careful"	'is"
a) cautious	b) careless	c) lazy	d) useful
6. I her in fo	r a coffee. I'd like to	talk with her about	my speech.
a) invented	b) invited	c) reminded	d) respected
4 Complete the sente	nces with the corre	ect form of the wor	d(s) in brackets:
1. He got up late.	(That's why), h	ne could catch the b	ous.
2. He ate too much fo	od (That's	because) he's ill.	
3. Trees are good for	us(howev	er) they breathe in	carbon dioxide.
4. I started a charity			
5. My grandfather is e			
5 Write ONE HUNDRE	D and TEN (110) w	ords on:	
_	"Recycling	our waste"	

*************************************	********************************		***************************************
Challenging Questions	20 000		
Choose the correct			مجاب عنه نهایة الکتاب معطیمه مرد
a) -able	to change	c) -ous	d) -ly
	oeautiful" are		
a) synonyms	b) antonyms	c) verbs	d) adverbs
3. The sun is a big s	tar, but the Earth is a		
a) galaxy	b) system	c) planet	d) plant

Vocabulary

absorb (ed)	يمتص
herbs	أعشاب
air pollution	تلوث الهواء
chemicals	مواد کیمیائیة
climate change	تغير المناخ
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
recycle (d)	يعيد التدوير
deforestation	إزالة الغابات
global warming	الإحتباس الحرارى
weaving	النسيج
greenhouse gases	غازات الاحتباس الحرارى
solar energy	طاقة شمسية
fabric	نسيج القماش
melting ice	ذوبان الجليد
methane	الميثان
renewable energy	طاقة متجددة
seagrass	أعشاب البحر
fossil fuels	الوقود الحفرى
solar energy	طاقة شمسية

Language

1. The First conditional

- If families collect their paper, plastic and metal, we will pay them for doing it.
 - When we recycle old things, the world will be greener.
 - · What will happen if we don't recycle Will Dina speak good English if her parents move to Canada?

1. Reason بالسبب Reason 2. Conjunctions

A) because O

- Baby fish and sea animals live in seagrass because it is a safe place.
- I didn't go to school because I was ill.

This is because seagrass absorbs 10% of Seagrass can help stop climate change. the ocean's carbon dioxide every year. هذا بسبب This/That is because

2. Result assill bylg)

ولهذا السبب That is why

faster than rainforests. That is why seagrass Seagrass absorbs carbon dioxide 35 times can help stop climate change.

3. Contrast childing

A) However (11) 2019

Waste is a big problem around the world. However, many of the things that we throw away can easily be recycled

B) Nevertheless था अ

Nevertheless, they will grow into 20,000 The plants will still be quite small. square metres of seagrass.

哥

environmental

spider plants

نباتات عنكبوتية

- 1. Discussing environmental problems
 - 1. What will happen if we recycle rubbish?
- 2. Why are trees good for the environment? - Our environment will be cleaner.
- Because they breathe in carbon dioxide which is bad for the environment.
 - 3. How does deforestation create greenhouse - When we cut down trees, the carbon gases?
 - dioxide stays in the air.

2. Giving a speech

- Today, I'm going to talk about plants in the A) To start a speech لتبدأ الخطاب/الحديث A) house.

- I'd like to start by saying (that) they are very good for your health.

B) To move to a new point

للانتقال للنقطة التالية فم (الخطاب/الحديث) - In the next part of my speech, I'd like to talk about where to put your plants.

C) To finish a speech To conclude, recycling water is very important for us.

- I'd like to finish by saying (that) it is best to choose plants that grow naturally in Egypt.



Al-Adwad Test on Unit







Language Functions

Finish the following dialogue:
Ahmed is talking to Samir who is planting a tree.
Ahmed: Hello, Samir. (1)?
Samir : I am planting a tree.
Ahmed: Do you know how to plant a tree?
Samir : (2)
Ahmed: (3)?
Samir : My uncle taught me this, he is an old farmer.
Ahmed: Are trees useful for our environment?
Samir : (4)
Ahmed: Why are trees useful for us?
Samir : (5)
Reading Comprehension
Read and complete the text with words from the following list: ۲۰۲۳ مبنه سویف
increase – burning – environmental – global – to burn – environment
Climate change is a serious (1) problem. It happens because of
the rise in (2) warming, which happens because of the (3)
in temperature by burning fossil fuels and the release of harmful gases by
industries. If we keep (4) fossil fuels, climate change will get worse.
It leads to melting of polar ice, floods and droughts.
Read the following, then answer the questions:
There are many reasons why recycling is important. It can help reduce carbon
dioxide. Also it saves energy, reduces greenhouse gases, stops pollution, and
more. By improving our recycling habits, we can help keep the environment

clean. Recycling can help the environment. When we recycle, we keep the natural world. When we cut down fewer trees and forests, we are stopping harm to animals. By reducing damage to the natural

world, we help preserve wildlife. Making products from recycled materials needs less energy than making them from new materials. For example, recycling one glass bottle saves enough power to light a 100-watt light bulb for four hours. Recycling takes up less energy, which reduces carbon dioxide and methane from landfill sites, which causes climate change. Recycling waste is much cheaper than regular collecting waste. The more we recycle, the more money we can save.

Doing so can help save energy, reduce landfill waste and protect our environment.

M Choose the con	ect answer nom	a, b, c or a:	
 The passage is 	about the	of recycling.	
a) importance	b) danger	c) difficulty	d) reduction
Recycling six g	lass bottles saves	enough power to ligh	t a 100-watt light
bulb for	•		_
a) 12 hours	b) 10 hours	c) a week	d) a day
3. If we reduce ou	r damage to the en	vironment, we save	from harm.
a) gases	b) wildlife	c) habits	d) products
B) Answer the follo	wing questions:		
4. Summarise ho	w recycling saves w	wildlife.	

5. How do you th	ink recycling saves	s energy?	98 5
6 How does room	cling holp stop clir		***************************************
o. How does recy	cling help stop clir	nate change?	
***************************************		***************************************	
	Vocabulary	and Structure	
Choose the correct	answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. A is a lar	ge round object ir	n space that moves ar	ound a star.
a) planet	b) gas	c) star	d) shooting star
2 energy i	s clean energy fro	m the sun, water, or w	
a) Polluting		b) Polluted	
c) Non-renewable		d) Renewable	
3. Trees are the lungs	of nature that	carbon dioxid	e. ۲۰۲۳ الفيوم
a) breathe out	b) add	c) pour	d) absorb
4. The ink from print	ers isn't safe to thre	ow into water. It's very	
the environment.			,
a) healthy	b) tired	c) bad	d) good
an annual state of the control of th	ADDINGUEGO POR		-, 9000

1	5. I cut myself on	a piece of l	broken glas	ss. The synon	ym of "bro	ken" is '		
	a) unbroken			c) dam			janised	
	6. We can get the	verb that i	means use	again from tl	ne word "c	ycle" by	adding the	
	prefix							
	a) ir-	b) u		c) dis-		d) re-		
E	Complete the ser	ntences w	ith the cor	rect form of	the word	(s) in b	rackets:	
	1. If it	(rain), we	can't play t	ennis.				
	2. I decided	(bu)	y) a water b	ottle that I c	an reuse fi	om the	shops. SB	
	3. If we keep	(cu	ut) trees, po	llution will g	et worse.			
Ì	4. What	(you/do) if you do	n't catch the	train?		WB)
	5. We had to stay	home	(ho	owever) there	e was a sto	rm.		
	Marking Comments		D	Writing				
0	Write ONE HUNG	DED and	TEN (110)	words on:				
6								
	"	Things yo	u can do to	help save t	he Earth"			

			•••••					*

					**************			**
				**********************				••
	***************************************	***************************************	****************				*****************	**
		***************************************			*************	***********	********************	••
		***************************************			***************			**

	***************************************					***********	***************************************	
	***************************************			***************************************	*****************	***********	***************************************	100.0
	Assess		< 50%	50:64%	65:84	%	85:100%	
	progi	ress	Study again	Practise more	Solve more	CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF	Well done!	
	THE RESERVE THE PROPERTY OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TWO IS NOT THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TWO IS NAMED IN COLUMN TWO I							



Build a greener world

Objectives of the unit

Reading A webpage about mangrove trees; The Iron Woman by Ted Hughes; short web posts about how to

help the environment; a report about the Great Green Wall initiative

Writing A report about a green initiative in Egypt or Africa; answers to a survey

Listening A conversation about sustainable living; a discussion about a story; a television interview about

a solar farm

Speaking Discussing how to live more sustainably; asking about, giving and responding to opinions; conducting

a survey

Language The second conditional

Life Skills Problem solving and decision making

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات (SB) تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب (Longman) تشير لأسئلة لونجمان





Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 22-25 WB pages 84 & 85



- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- 💿 قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary			المفردات الرئيسية
affect (ed) (v)	يؤثر على	plug in (v)	يوصل بالكهرباء
bamboo (n)	شجرة الخيزران	product (n)	منتج
battery (n)	بطارية	salt (n)	ملح
carbon footprint (n)	بصمة كربونية	sea levels (n)	منسوب مياه البحر
crops (n)	محاصيل	seed (n)	بذرة
electricity (n)	الكهرباء	seedling (n)	شتلة/نبتة
energy-saving (adj)	موفر للطاقة	storm (n)	عاصفة
hairbrush (n)	فرشاة الشعر	toothbrush (n)	فرشاة الأسنان
light bulb (n)	مصباح كهربائى	wind (n)	رياح

Additional Vocabulary		ية	المفردات الإضاف
community (n)	مجتمع	kill (ed) (v)	يقتل
field (n)	حقل	mangrove (n)	شجرة العانجروف
hieroglyphics (n)	الهيروغليفية	seawater (n)	مياه البحر
charge (d) (v)	يشحن	environmental scientist (n) عالم بيئہ

Check Point

Choose and complete: affects - community - electricity - charges

1) We can get from the sun and the wind.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية

والإضافية.

2 Eating fast food our health badly.

3 My dad always says that every one has a role in the ...

(n) = noun (v) = verb

(adj) = adjective

(adv) = adverb

(prep) = preposition (conj) = conjunction لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

الكلمة Word	مرادفها (Meaning) عرادفها	Antonym (Opposite) בשמו
give up (v) يقلع عن/يستسلم	يتوقف stop	continue/start ایستمر/یبدأ
protect (v) يحمه	ينقذ/يحفظ save	harm/hurt يضر/يؤذى
reusable (adj) قابل لإعادة الاستخدام	recyclable قابل لإعادة التدوير	non-recyclable غير قابل لإعادة التدوير
rise (v) يرتفع	increase يزداد	decrease ينخفض
sustainable (adj) مستدام	مستمر continuous	temporary مؤقت
turn on (v) يشغل	switch on يشغل	turn off يطفئ
unusual (adj) غير عادى	uncommon غير شائع	usual عادی

Proposition	20
Preposition	13

حروف الجر

along the coast	على طول الساحل	protect from	یحمہ من
on farms	فى العزارع	provide for	يوفر لـ

heck Point

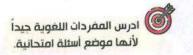
Choose and complete: decreasing - from - increasing - off

- 1 Sunglasses protect our eyes the sun.
- 3 The prices are rising very high. They are quickly.

مذا التدريب يهدف لقياس فهمك للكلمات ومرادفها وعكسما وحروف الجر.







التعريفات **Definitions**

كأس من الخيزران (n) bamboo cup	a cup made from a tall, strong grass
crops (n) محاصیل	plants that are grown in large quantities for food
energy-saving light bulb (n) مصباح موفر للطاقة	a glass object that uses less electricity than usual to give light
light bulb (n) مصباح کھربائی	a glass object that you put in lights, which changes electricity into light
mangrove tree (n) شجرة المانجروف	a small tree with roots above the ground, which grows in or near the coast or rivers
rechargeable batteries (n) بطاریات قابلة للشحن	something that gives power to a machine, toy, car, etc. and which you can continue to add energy to, so they continue to work
reusable (adj) قابل لإعادة الاستخدام	able to be used again
rising sea levels (n) ارتفاع مستوى سطح البحر	when the sea becomes higher because climate change melts the ice at the Poles
seedling (n) شتلة/نبتة	a small plant which has started to grow from a seed
sustainable (adj) مستدام	causing little or no damage to the environment

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	اللاحقة Suffix	الوظيفة Function	لكلمة الجديدة The new word
environme	nt (n) بيئة	-al	تحويل الاسم لصفة	environmental (adj) بيئه
farm (v)	يزرع	-er	تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	farmer (n) مزارع/فلاح
recharge (v) يعيد الشحن			- 4 10	rechargeable (adj) قابل لإعادة الشحن
reuse (v) ام	يعيد الاستخد	-able	تحويل الفعل لصفة	reusable (adj) قابل لإعادة الاستخدام
sustain (v)	يدوم/يحافظ			sustainable (adj) مستدام

البادئة Prefix

البادئة Prefix	Word	الكلمة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word a:	الكلمة الجديد
	charge (v)	يشحن			recharge (v)	يعيد الشحن
re-	usable (adj) تخدام	صالح للاس	عنى الإعادة	تعطب م	reusable (adj) ستخدام	قابل لإعادة الا
un-	usual (adj)	عادي	كس المعنى	تعطی عذ	unusual (adj)	غیر عادی

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 1

- What sustainable products do you use?

Listen to Dalia and Reem. Which of the sustainable products on page 22 do they talk about?

SB page 23

Dalia I want to do something to protect the

environment, but I don't know what to do.

Reem That's easy. Use less plastic. My family used to

get all our shopping in plastic bags. But now,

we use reusable (1) shopping bags.

قابلة لإعادة الاستخدام (1)

خيزران (2)

مستدام (3)

منتحات (4)

مصابيح كهربائية موفرة للطاقة (5)

Dalia That's a good idea.

Reem Also, get a bamboo (2) coffee cup. Look at mine. You can't usually recycle the cups that you get from coffee shops. Bamboo is sustainable (3), so bamboo products (4) help the environment. I've also got a bamboo

toothbrush!

Dalia Wow! I like your cup. It doesn't look like bamboo.

Reem Do you use energy-saving light bulbs (5) at home?

Dalia Yes, we do. We didn't use to use energy-saving light bulbs, but we do

now.

Reem So do we. So you ARE doing something.

Dalia OK, but I don't think I could give up my electric toothbrush for

a bamboo toothbrush.



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

sustainable /səˈsteɪnəbəl/ toothbrush /ˈtuːθbrʌʃ/

Post-listening question:

- What can we do to save energy?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 2

- Write a list of the reasons that cause climate change.



Read the webpage. Check any new words in a dictionary. Why are mangrove trees unusual?

SB page 24

Climate Change

Climate change means that many countries have more floods (1) now because of rising sea levels (2). Most trees and plants can't live in seawater (3). When seawater comes onto farms, the salt (4) in the water kills (5) the crops (6) and farmers can't grow anything for many years. So, people lose their farms and their homes.

However, in hot countries like Egypt, mangrove trees (7) grow in the sea along the coast. Mangrove forests protect farms and communities from strong winds (8) and storms (9). They provide (10) homes for plants, fish and sea animals. If there were more mangrove trees, there would be fewer floods.



فیضانات (1)	ارتفاع منسوب مياه البحر (2)
ماء البحر (3)	(4) ملح
يقتل (5)	محاصیل (6)
أشجار المانجروف (7)	(8) المرابع (8)
(9) العواصف	يمد بايزود (10)

Now in Egypt, people are growing thousands of mangrove seedlings to plant along the Red Sea coast. The problems caused by rising sea levels could get worse if they didn't plant new mangrove forests. So, they are going to plant 300,000 seedlings every year. When they grow into mangrove forests, they will protect the coast from rising sea levels.



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

mangrove / mængrəʊv/

seedling /'sl:dllŋ/

Post-reading questions:

- 1. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?
- 2. What is the main idea of the passage?

Life Skills

People on the Red Sea coast needed to work together to solve the problems that affect their area. Do you know about an environmental problem that has been solved by people working together to help the community?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Read and complete	the text with words i	rom the following li	أيناؤنا فب الخارج "٢٠٢٣ St:
oil – reusa	ble – continue – carb	on – bulbs – sustaina	able
Helping the envi	ronment is very import	ant for everyday life. V	Ve cannot
(1) to use	petrol. We need to use	e (2) produ	cts. Some people
	y-saving light (3)		
shopping bags. This	will help the world to b	oe a better place to liv	e in.
Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or	d:	
1. Something which i	s sustainable is		جنوب سيناء ٢٠٢٣
a) electric	b) temporary	c) renewable	d) modern
2. There are more floo	ods in many countries l	pecause of rising sea .	الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
a) leaves	b) reefs	c) levels	d) rocks
3. Farmers always loo	k after their fields to in	crease	(Longman)
a) seeds	b) crops	c) branches	d) floods
4. A cup is a	cup made from a tall,	strong grass.	
a) bamboo	b) seed	c) seedling	d) tree
5. To be is to	be able to be used ag	ain.	
	b) rechargeable		d) reusable
	an turn the word "envi	ronment" into an adje	الوادى الجديد ctive. ۲۰۲۳ع
a) -al	b) -ly	c) -ily	d) -ing
	s object that you put in	n lights, which change	es electricity
into light.			
a) solar panel	b) light bulb	c) battery	d) farm
	a problem in most cou	ntries all over the wo	rld. "Rise" is
a synonym for "			Longman
a) decrease	b) number	c) increase	d) amount
12	e the electric car, simpl	y plug it into a chargi	ng station.
a) un-	b) dis-	c) re-	d) en-
10. To get the opposite			
a) un-	b) dis-	c) im-	d) -re
11. We need to think of	solutions to reduce ou	ır to help th	e environment.
2	b) light bulbs		d) sea levels
12. A is a sma		ed to grow from a see	ed.
a) field	b) bulb	c) seedling	d) cup

Language

Using (used to) for regular past habits and routines. ستخدام (used to) للتعبير عن عادات في الماضي.

Use (used to/didn't use to + infinitive) to talk about a repeated action in the past that has now changed.

تستخدم «used to» للتحدث عن فعل متكرر في الماضي والذي تغير الأن.

Form التكوين

Ex: • We used to get all our shopping in plastic bags.

Negative

النفى

Ex: • We didn't use to use energy-saving light bulbs, but we do now.

Question

1. Yes/No questions:

Ex: Did you use to brush your teeth with an electric toothbrush?

2. Wh- questions:

Ex: • What games did you use to play when you were little?

Got it?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 He used to(lived) in the countryside.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (live) لأن (used to) يأته بعدها الفعل في المصدر.
- (2) Which team(do) he use to play for when he was 18?
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (did) لأنها سؤال في العاضي مع (use to).



Form

التكوين

التصريف الثانب للفعل + Subj.

We use the past simple to express actions that started and ended in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

e.g. • We watched TV last night.

She was at school yesterday.

ويمكن استخدام (could + inf.) للتعبير عن القدرة في الماضي البسيط.

I could play the piano when I was five.

Negative النفى

Subj. + didn't + inf.

Subj. + wasn't/weren't +

He didn't play football last Friday.
 They weren't at home yesterday.

Question

Q. word + did + subj. + inf.? Q. word + was/were + subj. + ...?

e.g. • When did you travel to Canada?

• Where was Lily yesterday?



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1) What did you(doing) last weekend?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (do) لأن (did) يأتم بعدها الفعل فى المصدر.

2 | I(lose) my phone three days ago.

- الإحاية الصحيحة (lost) لوجود (ago) الدالة على الماضي البسيط.

The second conditional "If"

الحالة الشرطية الثانية

Form

التكوين

+ subj. + past simple subj. + would ('d)/wouldn't + inf.

- If I had more time, I would read more books.
- If there were more mangrove trees, there would be fewer floods.

Subj. + would ('d)/wouldn't + inf. + if + subj. + past simple

 The problems caused by rising sea levels would get worse if they didn't plant new mangrove forests.

1. Use the second conditional "If" to talk about situations that are possible but probably won't happen.

تستخدم حالة الشرط الثانية للتحدث عن المواقف المحتملة ولكن لن تحدث على الأرجح.

2. Use the second conditional to give advice.

تستخدم حالة الشرط الثانية لتقديم النصح.

If I were you, + I + would ('d)/wouldn't + inf.

- If I were you, I would see a doctor.
- If I were you, I wouldn't smoke.
- If he were rich, he'd buy a car.

يمكن استخدام (were) مع كل الضمائر.



3. Use the second conditional with could to mean 'would perhaps'.

تستخدم حالة الشرط الثانية مع (could) لتعنب (would perhaps) «ربما» أو لتعبر عن القدرة والاستطاعة.

- If he knew about the problem, he could share in solving it; perhaps he would do so!
- If Samy had free time, he could go to the club.

Question

Q. word كلمة استفهام + would/could + subj. + inf. + if + subj. + past simple?

• What would you do if you travelled to space?

If + subj. + past simple , + Q. word استفهام + would/could + subj. + inf.?

• If you had more free time, where would you go?

Got it?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1) If you studied hard, you (will) do better at the exams.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (would) لأن (if) أته بعدها فعل ماض مما يدل عله أنها الحالة الشرطية الثانية.
- 2) What(will) she do if she won the competition?
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (would) لأن (if) أتم بعدها فعل ماض مما يدل علم أنها الحالة الشرطية الثانية.



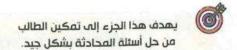
Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If he trained well, he(win) the match.	أبناؤنا فى الخارج ٢٣
2. We(use) to get our shopping in plastic bags. Now we don't.	دمیاط ۲۰۲۳
3. They(catch) thousands of fish from the sea yesterday.	الفيوم ٣٠٢٣
4. He(use) to live by the sea, but now he does.	أسوان ۲۰۲۳
5. If we(have) more time, we would visit our teacher.	الدقملية ٢٠٢٣
6. I (not/use/have) an electric toothbrush, but now I've got one	e. WB
7. If we(not/be) friends, I would be angry with you.	
8. My father(don't) use to get up late when he was young.	Longman
9. When he(be) a child, he used to like eating sweets.	Longman
10. Did you(used) to walk to work, Dad?	Longman
11. What(did) you do if you lost your mobile in the park?	Longman
12. What did Lily(used) to play before she hurt her shoulder?	
13. We'd buy a house if we (decide) to stay here.	
14. We(use/waste) water, but now we try to save water.	WB
15. My grandparents (not/ use/send) emails – they wrote letters	wB
16. We(not/have) time to visit the Eiffel Tower last summer.	(WB)
17. If I(be) a superhero, I would save the world.	
18. If she passed the exam, she (be) able to join the university.	
19. She used to love eating chocolate, but now she(does).	
20. If I were you, I(not) be too quick to give up.	





Discussing how to live more sustainably

مناقشة كيفية المعيشة بشكل أكثر استدامة

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد





What could you stop using or buying that is bad for the environment? ما الشمء الضار بالبيئة الذي يمكنك أن تتوقف عن استخدامه أو شرائه؟

I could stop using plastic bags, tea bags, toothbrushes and wasting paper. يمكننه التوقف عن استخدام أكياس البلاستيك، وأكياس الشاي، وفرش الأسنان وإهدار الورق.





What other things could you do to live a more sustainable life? ما الأشياء الأخرى التب يمكنك فعلما لتحيا حياة أكثر استدامة؟

I could use less water, bamboo toothbrush, reuse water bottles and have energy-saving light bulbs.



يمكنني استخدام ماء أقل، فرشاة أسنان من الخيزران، إعادة استخدام زجاجات الماء وامتلاك مصابيح موفرة للطاقة.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

>	Hazem	and Farid are talking about how to live in	a sustainable way.				
	Hazem: Hi, Farid. Do you think of living in a sustainable way?						
	Farid	:(1)	What does that mean?				
	Hazem	: It means living in a way that doesn't harm t	ne environment.				
	Farid	:(2)?					
	Hazem	Hazem: We can start that by using less water and electricity and recycling.					
	Farid	:(3)?					
	Hazem	:We can use less water by taking shorter sho	wers.				
	Farid	:What materials can we recycle?					
	Hazem	: (4)					
		(=)	1/11 +m + +h >+				

How to write a review of mangrove trees

كيفية كتابة نقد عن أشجار المانجروف

- What are mangrove trees?
- Where can they live?
- What size are they?
- How many species are there?
- Why are they important?
- What do you think of them?

ما هم أشجار المانجروف؟

أين تتواجد؟

ما أحجامها؟

كم عدد أنواعها؟

لماذا هم مهمون؟

ما رأيك بهم؟

Writing tips

You should start your paragraph with a good, clear and simple topic sentence which introduces the topic clearly.

يجب أن تبدأ فقرتك بجملة رئيسية
 واضحة وبسيطة تتضمن العوضوع
 والفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة.

Example

"Mangrove trees"

Mangroves are the only species of trees in the world that can live in saltwater. They come in different sizes. They are from 2 to 10 metres high. There are about 80 different species of mangrove trees. Mangroves, seagrass and coral reefs work as a single system that keeps coastal habitats healthy. Mangrove forests protect farms and communities from strong winds and storms. They provide homes for plants, fish and sea animals. They have hard wood that people use to make boats and other products. They have also been used in medicine. If there were more mangrove trees, there would be fewer floods. I think they are very important, and we should plant more.

ŧ	Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:			
Check Point	"Sustainable living products"			
Che				

TEST YOURSELF



Lessons (1 & 2) Unit 9



Finish the following	dialogue.						
A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR		rotect the environr	ment.				
Dalia and Reem are discussing how to protect the environment. Dalia: Do you think that our environment is in danger? Reem: (1)							
							Reem: (1)
Dalla: What can we	e do to neip protect it:						
Reem: (2)	n act (2)	•	7				
Dalia: Reusable things! (3)? Reem: Reusable things are the things that can be used again, like bamboo products.							
Dalia: (4)?							
Reem: I use a bamb		2 محمد ما خد مطال					
	energy-saving light bu		didn't use to use				
	1. 1. L. L. H L. A		diant use to use				
energy-savii	ng light bulbs, but we	do now.					
n I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	- the standardale wante	from the following	list: (Longman)				
	e the text with words						
would have	e – reusable – protec	t – will have – poll	ute – less				
I want to do so	mething to protect or	ur environment. If v	ve share in keeping				
	clean, we (1)						
(2)	plastic. We can	buy (3)	shopping				
	use bamboo coffee c						
(4)	the environment	i.					
Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c o	rd:					
1are plan	nts that are grown in la	arge quantities for f	ood.				
a) Levels	b) Crops	c) Farmers	d) Seeds				
2. We in c	our phones to charge t	hem.					
a) turn	b) reuse	c) plug	d) recharge				
	he computer so we ca		antonym of				
"turn on" is "		grand and an ar	in in seque				
a) switch on	b) switch off	c) take off	d) take on				
	ery bad today. There is	The second second second second					
		10 ESQ 10 SQ 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10	d) electricity				
a) drought	b) storm	c) field	u) electricity				

	is to cause little o	or no damage to the	environment.			
a) unusual						
c) sustainable		d) rechargeable				
6. We can get an adj	ective from the verb	"renew" by adding t	the suffix "			
a) -ness	b) -able	c) -tion	d) -y			
Complete the sente	nces with the correc	t form of the word(s) in brackets:			
1. If we lived in Alexa	ndria, we(go	o) to the beach every	weekend. ۲۰۲۲ بوفية			
2. I didn't use to hav	e a car, but now I	(have).				
3. You wouldn't have so many accidents if you(drive) more carefully.						
4. He didn't use	(playing) chess	when he was young	g. ۲۰۲۳ علم			
5. People(live) in caves a long t	ime ago.	دى الجديد ۲۰۲۳			
Write ONE HUNDRE	Dand TEN (110) was	ede on:				
WITE ONL HONDRE						
	"Using sustainab	ne products				

•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••						
***************************************			•••••			

Challenging Questions						
1 Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b,	c or d:	مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب			
1. The suffix "	" is used to for	m adjectives.				
a) -or	b) -er	c) -ment	d) -able			
	rease" and "decrease"					
a) adjectives	b) meanings	c) antonyms	d) synonyms			
	ntences with the cor		rd(s) in brackets:			
	can fly), I would visit t					
2. If he read well,	he (not) n	eed glasses.				





Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 26-28 WB pages 86 & 87

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary			لمفردات الرئيسية
air conditioning (n)	نظام تكييف الهواء	powers (n)	قوی/قدرات/طاقة
burn (burnt) (v)	يحرق/يحترق	promise (d) (v)	<u>تم</u> د
diagram (n)	رسم تخطیطی	remote control (n)	أداة التحكم عن بعد
electric car (n)	سيارة كهربائية	solar panels (n)	ألواح شمسية
heating (n)	تدفئة/تسخين	special (adj)	خاص/مميز
iron (n)	ححتح	water wheel (n)	ساقية
message (n)	رسالة	wind turbines (n)	توربينات الرياح
control (led) (v)	يتحكم فى	worker (n)	عامل

Additional Vecabulary

Additional Vocabulary			المفردات الإضافية
ability (n)	قدرة	especially (adv)	خصوصا
accident (n)	حادثة	ski (ed) (v)	يتزلج
computer mouse (n)	فأرة الكمبيوتر	superhero (n)	بطل خارق

Choose and complete: accident – ability – panels – electric

- 1 Using cars helps protect the environment.
- 2 There was a terrible ______ yesterday. Three people died.
- 3 Scientists use solar to produce electricity.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word قماكاا	عرادفها (Meaning)	Antonym (Opposite) عكسما
awesome (adj) رائع	amazing مذهل	terrible سیمهٔ جدًا
یتدکم فہ control (v)	manage يدير	mismanage يسمء الإدارة
enormous (adj) فخم	large/huge کبیر جدًّا	tiny/small صغير
frightened (adj) خائف	afraid/ scared	brave شجاع
horrible (adj) فظيع/رهيب	terrible رهیب/فظیع	attractive جذاب
reduce (v) يقلل	decrease يقلل	increase يزيد
renewable (adj) متجدد	sustainable مستدام	non-renewable غير متجدد
repair (v) يعلم	mend/fix) يعلم	damage يدمر
worried (adj) قُلِق	anxious قَلْق	unworried غير قَلِق

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

cause	> a problem	يسبب مشكلة	produce	electricity	ينتج كهرباء
use/produce	renewable e		have	> a plan	لدیه خطة

Prepositions

حروف الجر

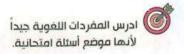
answer to	إجابة لـ	on fire	مشتعل فيه النار
at the end of	فى نماية	worried about	قلق على/بشأن

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Prese	nt	Past simple	Past participle
become	يصبح	became	become
bring	يحضر	brought	brought





Definitions

التعريفات

a machine that makes the air in a room stay cool or warm
if something is burning, it is on fire
damage something so badly that you cannot repair it
special ability to do something
say you will do something
a device that helps you control and deal with a machine from far away

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	اللاحقة Suffix	الوظيفة Function	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
bad (adj)	ستى	h.		badly (adv)	بشكل سيئ
total (adj)	كامل	-ly	تحويل الصفة لحال	totally (adv)	كليتا
work (v)	يعمل	-er	تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	worker (n)	عامل

البادئة Prefix

البادئة Prefix	Word	الكلمة	Function	الوظيفة	تيدة The new word	الكلمة الجد
un-	worried (adj)	قلق	كس المعنب	ند ملعت	unworried (adj)	غير قلق

Language

be (am/is/are)/get + used to + (v + ing/ضمير/اسم)

معتاد على (مازال يفعل الشيء في الحاضر)

 In summer when it's very hot, that's difficult, especially at night, but you get used to it.

by + v + ing

عن طريق

- By burning the rubbish, the factory produces enough electricity for 150,000 homes.
- air conditioning air conditioner

التكييف (كنظام تشغيل) التكبيف (جهاز التكبيف نفسه)

- We're using the air conditioning less often.
- I'm looking for an air conditioner.

Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 3

- What problems do factories cause?



Look at the words in red. Use a dictionary to check the meaning. Then match them to the words with a similar meaning below.

SB page 26

The Iron Woman

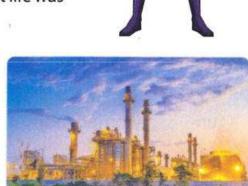
One day, a girl called Lucy was surprised to see the Iron Woman. She was enormous (1), with big red eyes. Lucy was frightened, but she found that the woman wanted Lucy to help her. Lucy's father worked at a factory and the Iron Woman asked her where the factory was. Pollution from the factory was killing all the fish in the river, so she wanted to destroy(2) it.

The Iron Woman had special powers (3) so that she was able to make all the factory workers become fish. The workers (4) all had to live in the river and started to understand how difficult life was for the fish.

Lucy wanted to help the Iron Woman, but she was worried about her father. So after the Iron Woman left, Lucy called a boy called Hogarth. He was friends with the Iron Man.

'If you brought the Iron Man here,' said Lucy, 'we could find an answer to the problem.'

The next day, Lucy met Hogarth and the Iron Man at the factory. When the Iron Woman arrived, the Iron Man told her that he had a plan. Soon, the Iron Woman let them become people again. They could stay people if they promised (5) that the factory would not produce (6)



ضخم (1)	تدمر (2)
قوی/قدرات (3)	العمال (4)
يعد (5)	ینتج (6)

any more pollution. They all agreed, and the river became clean once more.



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

enormous /ɪnɔːˈməs/

produce /prəˈdjuːs/

Post-reading question:

- What did the workers understand when they became fish?

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 3

- What kinds of stories do you like reading?

Listen to a conversation about The Iron Woman. Who liked the story more, Dina or Judy?

Judy What did you think of the story, Dina?

I liked it. I think the message is easy to Dina understand. Factories should not produce pollution (1).

I agree, but the Iron Woman wanted to destroy Judy the factory. I don't think that's right. If we didn't have factories, we wouldn't have so many things to buy in the shops.

Dina That's why the Iron Man had a different plan. He didn't want to destroy the factory.

That's right. Some of the factory workers Judy probably didn't like the pollution, but if they didn't work at the factory, they wouldn't have any money.



التلوث (1)	تعد (5)
متجدد (3)	

Dina But Judy, when they became people again, they promised (2) that the factory would not produce any more pollution. So his plan was a good one!

That's true. How do you think they made the river clean once more? Judy

Perhaps the factory started to use renewable (3) energy. Dina

You're right. If the factory used renewable energy, it wouldn't produce Judy pollution.

And if it didn't produce pollution, then everyone would be happier. Dina

Post-listening question:

- How do you think we can help stop factory pollution?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 3

- Do you think that we can produce electricity from rubbish?

Read the text and answer the questions.

WB page 86



A large factory in Denmark has an inexpensive way of producing renewable energy. It burns rubbish! If the factory did not burn the rubbish, it would go to landfill sites (1). By burning the rubbish, the factory produces enough electricity for 150,000 homes. If the factory burned fossil fuels (2) to make

- أماكن دفن النفايات (1)
- وقود حفری (2)
- يمتص (3)

this electricity, it would produce a lot more greenhouse gases. There is a garden on the roof of the factory. The plants there absorb (3) some of the air pollution that comes from the factory. You can also ski down the roof! Isn't that amazing?

Post-reading question:

- A factory in Denmark has a cheap way of making renewable energy. Explain.

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 4

- In your opinion, how can people help the environment?



Read all the web posts. Who hasn't given up anything yet?

SB page 28

What do you do to help the environment? Have you given up anything?

We're using the air conditioning (1) less often. In summer when it's very hot, that's difficult, especially (2) at night, but you get used to it. We can't use our computer less often, though, because we need it for work.



Dom and Julia Baldwin, USA

I always used to get the newest phone. I've stopped doing that now because it isn't sustainable (3). Oh, and now I use rechargeable batteries (4) for the TV remote control (5) and my computer mouse.



Sawsan, Egypt

I live in the country and I need to have a car. I've bought an electric car (6) because it's greener. Also, I always take a reusable bag when I go shopping.

Greta, Australia



We're going to give up (7) living in the city because we want to grow our own vegetables and live a simpler life. If we stayed in the city, we wouldn't be able to do that.

Luc and Emile, France





تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

conditioning /kən'dı[ənɪŋ/ sustainable /sə'stelnəbəl/

Post-reading question:

- Which of the things in the web posts would or wouldn't you be able to give up or do to help the environment? Why/Why not?

تكييف المواء (1)	خامهٔ (2)
مستدامة (3)	بطاريات (4)
جهاز التحكم عن بعد (5)	سيارة كهربائية (6)
يقلع عن (7)	

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 4

- How can we save energy?

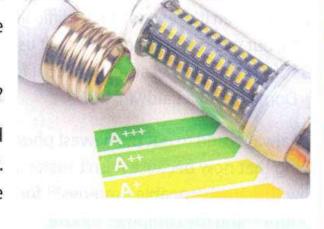
Listen to the conversation about energy use in the house.
Choose the correct answers.

WB page 87

Injy	Hana, have you seen this diagram (1)
	of what uses most electricity in the
	home?

Hana No, I haven't. What does it say, Injy?

Injy It says that air conditioning (2) and heating (3) use the most electricity. In fact, these use nearly 50% of the home's electricity.



رسم تخطیطہہ (1)

تكييف الهواء (2)

لتسخين (3)

Hana That's a lot! What uses the second most?

Injy Hot water. That uses about 15% of the home's electricity.

Hana What about things in the kitchen? Don't they use much electricity?

Injy They don't use very much. The fridge and the oven both use about 4%.

Hana That's interesting. And what about the TV and computers?

Injy Televisions use about 3% and computers about 1%.

Hana OK. So if I wanted to save electricity, I would use less air conditioning and heating?

Injy That's right. Oh, and turn off the lights, too. They use about 12% of the house's electricity.



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

electricity /ıˌlek'trısəti/

Post-listening question:

- Mention two devices that use the most electricity in the home.



Vocabulary Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

cause - make - do - will - won't - renewable

Every day, scientists think of new ways of producing (1) energy that is inexpensive and doesn't use fossil fuels to (2) electricity. They have thought of burning rubbish. But it (3) produce a lot of air pollution. Scientists want a way that doesn't produce any pollution or (4)...... a problem to the environment.

5	Choose	thec	orrect	answer	from a.	b. cord
4		20 E on 2	CALL PROPE	C411244C1	I PARE COL	my a we

2 Choose the correct	t answer from a, b,	cora:	
1. A/An is	a large wheel which	is turned by water f	lowing through it.
a) steel wheel	b) waterfall	c) big wheel	d) water wheel
2. We can use wind	to produce	e energy.	اسوان ۳۰ ۲۰
a) types	b) wheels	c) turbines	d) paints
3. The Great Pyrami	d in Giza is a very big	g building. It's	سوهاج ۲۰۲۳
a) enormous	b) expensive	c) normal	d) tiny
	was awesome. It was		very much.
a) terrible	b) amazing	c) large	d) brave
5. A contro	ol is a device that he	lps you control and	deal with a television,
for example.			Longman
a) full	b) near	c) far	d) remote
6. If something is	, it is on fire.		
a) protecting	b) burning	c) saving	d) damaging
7. He couldn't contr	ol his feelings. The s	ynonym of "control"	is " ۲۰۲۳ اسوان ۲۰۲۳
85500	b) design	7.	0.5
8. We get the oppos	site of "worried" by a	dding the prefix "	
a) re-	b) un-	c) im-	d) dis-
9. To is to	damage something	so badly that you ca	nnot repair it.
a) destroy	b) protect	c) burn	d) fix
10. Our teacher uses	to explain	the lessons clearly.	
a) diagrams	b) turbines	c) wheels	d) panels
11. We change the a	djective "total" into a	n adverb by adding	the suffix "".
a) -ful			
12. My sister is fright	ened of dogs. The sy	nonym of "frightene	ed" is "".
a) brave	b) afraid	c) scared	d) b&c





2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



Example

"A review of electricity"

There are a lot of sources of energy. In my opinion, electricity is the most important source of energy that can be produced from other sources of energy like coal, natural gas, oil and nuclear power. The energy sources we use to make electricity can be renewable or non-renewable, but electricity itself is neither renewable nor non-renewable.

Electricity plays an essential role in our society today. It is used in our hospitals, banks, homes and cars. I think we couldn't live without it. However, all this electricity doesn't just appear when we need it; we must create it. All over the world, there are millions of electricity-generating stations. Some of these are small; others are huge. Some of the stations run on the power of fire and steam, while others run on the power of the wind or falling water. Some even use the power of the sun alone to create electricity. Although there are many different ways of getting electricity, we should save it.

كيفية كتابة نقد لمبادرة خضراء How to write a review of a green initiative

Example

"A review of the Go Green initiative"

Nowadays, there are a lot of green initiatives in Egypt. I'd like to write about a green initiative in Egypt. It's called "Go Green". The initiative "Go Green" starts as part of the National Sustainable Development Plan "Egypt 2030". It aims to change behaviours and encourage people, especially young people, to protect the environment, natural resources and sea life.

The initiative was set up by the Ministry of Environment. It also raises awareness use about the importance of waste recycling, food and energy saving and air pollution reduction. The Go Green Initiative's main goal is to create great opportunities for development. Go Green provides simple, everyday actions you can take to reduce your carbon footprint, make our great city more sustainable in the future and help our community. In my opinion, it's a wonderful initiative, and we should encourage people to support it. What do you think of this initiative?

TEST YOURSELF



Lessons Unit 9 (3 & 4)



Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

	The state of the s
remote – would – v	vill – conditioning – up – off
(1) and the computer for the TV (2) control (3) living in the city bec	help the environment. We can use the air less often. We can use rechargeable batteries and the computer mouse. We have to give ause we want to grow our own vegetables and he city, we (4)
Read the following, then answer	the questions: ۲۰۲۳، ومناور ۳۰۰۳
Nothing can live without energy from fossil fuels like coal, oil and energy because they are limited amount of carbon dioxide in the Now, water and wind are used clean and do not pollute the energy. But energy from the energy. Life on earth depends or able to make food. Animals wou uninhabited. That is why there is	gy. People, animals and plants need energy to to work. Most of the energy we use still comes d gas. We call these non-renewable forms of and expensive. The use of fuels increases the atmosphere and pollutes the environment. It is to produce electricity. They are inexpensive, environment. We call them renewable forms sun is probably the best form of renewable in the sun. Without the sun, plants wouldn't be aldn't have food. The earth would be cold and a great interest in solar energy. It is important omes and workplaces in order to stop using
A) Choose the correct answer from	
1. The main idea of the text is "	
a) Renewable energy	b) Solar energy
c) Energy	d) Non-renewable energy
energy from the	e rises in the atmosphere when we use
	uels c) wind d) sun
3are two sources of r	
a) Plants and animals	b) Water and wind
c) Sun and gas	d) Coal and oil
B) Answer the following question	
4. Infer why the sun, the wind ar	nd the water are friends to the environment.
5. In two sentences, summarise	the first paragraph in your own words.
6. It is necessary to use the solar	energy. Give reasons.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or c	d:	
 The car industry just came out with an el environment. 	ectric car. It's a ca	the دمّهلیة ۲۰۲۳
a) damages b) harms	c) hurts	d) helps
2. The government builds most factories in	the desert becau	se they produce
pollution. "Produce" is similar in meaning	j to "".	Longman
a) does b) kill	c) prevent	d) cause
3. A/Anis a machine that makes the air	r in a room stay coo	ol or warm. ۲۰۲۳ دقملیة
a) fan b) oven	27/2	
4are used to absorb the sun's rays and		
,		Longman
a) Wind turbines b) Solar powers	c) Solar panels	d) Polar bears
5. My father me to get me a present if		
a) promised b) protected	No.	
6. To get the noun for a person from the ve		
a) -ing b) -er	c) -or	d) -ment
Complete the sentences with the correct f		
1. What would you stop eating if you		ealthier? WB
2. Heba (used to) like cheese, but	now she does	يمال سيناء ٢٠٢٣
		1 (1 stigm O
3(Were) you play with your frien	ds yesterday?	*
3(Were) you play with your frien 4. If I(have) enough time, I'd visit	ds yesterday? you.	Longman
3(Were) you play with your frien	ds yesterday? you.	Longman
3(Were) you play with your frien 4. If I(have) enough time, I'd visit 5(Does) your dad use to turn off	ds yesterday? you. his computer at n	Longman
3	ids yesterday? you. his computer at n	Longman
3(Were) you play with your frien 4. If I(have) enough time, I'd visit 5(Does) your dad use to turn off	ids yesterday? you. his computer at n	Longman
3	ids yesterday? you. his computer at n	Longman
3	ids yesterday? you. his computer at n	Longman
3	ids yesterday? you. his computer at n	Longman
3	ids yesterday? you. his computer at n	Longman
3	ids yesterday? you. his computer at n	Longman
3	ids yesterday? you. his computer at n s on: y sources"	Longman
3	or d:	ight?
3	or d: of energy.	ight?
3	or d: of energy. c) expensive	ight? مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب
3	or d: of energy. c) expensive meaning as "big".	ight? ight? d) rechargeable
3	or d: of energy. c) expensive meaning as "big". c) large	ight? ight? d) rechargeable d) enormous
3	or d: of energy. c) expensive meaning as "big". c) large	ight? ight? d) rechargeable d) enormous
3	or d: of energy. c) expensive meaning as "big". c) large ect form of the wo	ight? ight? d) rechargeable d) enormous
3	or d: of energy. c) expensive meaning as "big". c) large ect form of the wo	ight? ight? d) rechargeable d) enormous rd(s) in brackets:





Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 29 - 31 WB pages 88 - 90

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary			لمفردات الرئيسية
countryside (n)	الريف	living thing (n)	شىء/كائن حى
desertification (n)	التصحر	president (n)	رئيس الجعمورية
initiative (n)	مبادرة	region (n)	منطقة
interrupt (ed) (v)	يقاطع (شخصًا في الكلام)	solar farm (n)	مزرعة شمسية
interview (n)	مقابلة شخصية	source (n)	مصدر
landscape (n)	منظر طبيعى	tourism (n)	السياحة
create (d) (v)	يبتكر/يخلق/ينتج	organiser (n)	منظم

Additional Vocabulary

power station (n)

farming (n)

	**
report (n)	تقرير إخبارى
the whole	کل

Choose and complete: report - sources - initiative - farming

محطة طاقة

الزراعة

- 1 There is a/an _____ to use greener energy.
- 2 This is about how tourism is important for our country.
- 3 The sun and the wind are clean for energy.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

المفردات الاضافية

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها (Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
advantage (n)	ميزة	benefit	فائدة	disadvantage	بيد
agree (v)	يوافق	accept/allow	يقبل/يسمح	disagree	لا يوافق
improve (v)	يحسن	develop	يطور/ينمى	damage	يتلف
personally (adv	شخصيـًا (individually	بشكل فردى	publically	علانية

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

ask for	>	permission	يطلب الإذن	farm	>	the land	يزرع الأرض
build	>	a power station طاقة	یبنی محطة ا	produce	>	money	ينتج المال

Prepositions حروف الجر help with advantage to ميزة لـ يساعد في in my opinion فۍ رأی agree with يتفق مع

instead of create jobs for يخلق وظائف لـ بدلًا من on farmland فى أرض زراعية cut down يقطع

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Pr	esent	Past simple	Past participle	
set up	يۇسس/يېنى	set up	set up	
shine	تسطع	shone	shone	



💇 ادرس العفردات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



التعريفات Definitions

desertification (n) التصحر	changing an area into desert
initiative (n) مبادرة	something to improve a difficult situation
interrupt (v) يقاطع	if you interrupt someone, you speak to stop them from speaking
landscape (n) منظر طبیعہ	a view showing an area of land
region (n) منطقة	an area of a country
solar farm (n) مزرعة للطاقة الشمسية	an area with many solar panels that provide electricity
source (n) مصدر	a person, thing or place that gives information

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	اللاحقة Suffix	الوظيفة Function	The new word	الكلمة الجدر
organise (v)	ينظم	-er	تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	organiser (n)	منظّم
person (n)	شخص	-al	تحويل الاسم لصفة	personal (adj)	شخصہ
personal (adj	شخصی (-ly	تحويل الصفة لحال	personally (adv)	شخصيا

Language



يتوقف عن/يقلع عن/يمتنع من يتوقف لكى يفعل شيئًا

- We need to stop burning fossil fuels.
- On my way home, I stopped to buy the newspapers.

Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 5

- Do you think that there are solar parks and wind turbines in Egypt?

Listen to this television interview about a solar park. Where is it?

SB page 29

Reporter So, Mrs Jones. Tell us why your community decided to build a solar park(1) on this farmland (2). This area is popular for tourism (3) and people come here to enjoy the countryside (4) and the beautiful views of trees and hills (5). Many people would say the solar park is ugly. They don't want to see lots and lots of ugly solar panels in the countryside.



Mrs Jones I don't agree. Personally, I think that the solar panels are beautiful. We need to create clean energy that doesn't

مزرعة شمسية (1) أرض زراعية (2) السياحة (3) الريف (4) (5) זענ وقود حفری (6) مصدر (7)

pollute the environment. Solar panels produce clean, renewable energy. In my opinion, we need to stop burning fossil fuels (6) which create greenhouse gases and cause climate change.

Reporter What do you think about the solar park, Mr Brown? Do you agree with Mrs Jones?

Mr Brown I agree that we need clean, renewable energy. But I don't agree that we should build solar parks in the countryside. We should build them in cities near factories. And I don't agree that they're beautiful. They're ugly and they destroy the countryside. Farmers need this land.

Mrs Jones I totally disagree. The solar panels don't destroy the countryside. This solar park was built on one field. No trees were cut down and the farmer can still keep his sheep in the fields. The sheep can walk under the solar panels to eat the grass. And don't forget, the solar panels produce money for the community. It helps us all. In my opinion, every community should have their own source (7) of energy.

Reporter Well, thank you both for talking to us today. Now it's time to go back to the studio.

Post-listening question: - What do you think of solar parks?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 6

- Why do you think some green land have changed into desert?



Read the report and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 30

The Great Green Wall

This report(1) is about a green initiative(2) in Africa called the Great Green Wall (3). This initiative was set up (4) in 2007 by the African Union (5) to solve the problem of desertification (6) in the Sahel region (7) of Africa.

Desertification happens when green land becomes desert. In the Sahel region, this has happened because climate change is creating more droughts (8) every year and people do not always farm the land well. People cannot grow food and they are losing their farms and homes.

The Great Green Wall initiative will plant millions of trees, seedlings and plants across Africa from west to east, to create a growing, green landscape (9). When it is finished, the wall will be 8,000 km long. It will be the biggest living thing⁽¹⁰⁾ in the world. It will create jobs for 10 million people. The trees and plants will improve the land for farming again, and people will be able to grow crops.

The Great Green Wall will improve(11) the lives of everyone who lives in the Sahel region. It will also help reduce⁽¹²⁾ the problems caused by climate change for the whole world.





تقرير (1)	مبادرة (2)
الجدار الأخضر العظيم (3)	(4) دسنی
الاتحاد الإفريقى (5)	التصحر (6)
منطقة الساحل (7)	جفاف (8)
منظر طبیعہ (9)	شمء حب (10)
يحسن (11)	يقلل (12)



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

desertification /di_z3:tifi'keI[ən/ landscape / lændskeip/

Post-reading question:

- The Great Green Wall will improve the lives of everyone who lives in the Sahel region. Explain.

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 6

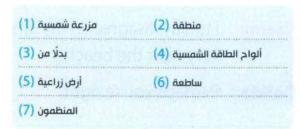
- What does the expression "renewable energy" mean?
- Put the paragraphs of this report about a solar farm in the UK in the correct order. What is the main idea of the report?

WB Page 89

Cleve Hill Solar Farm

- b 1) This report is about plans to build the largest solar farm (1) in the UK. The initiative, called Cleve Hill, plans to produce enough energy for 91,000 homes across the region (2) and should be open in 2023.
- d 2) The UK plans to use renewable energy instead of (3) fossil fuels by 2050 and Cleve Hill will help with this. The solar farm will have 880,000 solar panels (4) on countryside that was farmland (5),





- around two kilometres from the village of Graveney. In the past, solar farms were not very good in the UK because it is not very sunny. However, new large batteries in the solar farm can save and produce electricity even when the sun is not shining (6).
- a 3) Some people in the village are not happy about the plan. They think that the solar farm is too big and will create problems for wildlife. Also, they are worried that the large batteries are dangerous and could cause fires.
- (4) The organisers (7), however, say that the batteries are safe. They also say that there will be special areas for wildlife. They say that the solar farm will help to reduce the problems caused by climate change.



Note:

region / ri:d3ən/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

Post-reading question:

- According to the report, what are the advantages and disadvantages of building a solar farm?

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2.

WB Page 88

Lesson 5

Dalida What do you think of this plan to build

wind turbines in the sea near the beach?

Nesma Personally, I think it's a good idea. Wind

turbines produce renewable energy.

Dalida I agree that we need renewable energy,

but I think the wind turbines should be

built on the land.



Nesma I don't agree that they should be built on the land. There is more wind at sea.

Dalida Yes, but don't forget, many tourists love our beaches. They don't want to

look at ugly wind turbines.

Nesma I totally disagree. In my opinion, wind turbines look nice, and they won't be

very near the beach.

Dalida Perhaps you're right.

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 7

- From your point of view, how can green initiatives help to protect the environment?

0

Complete the text with the words in the box.

SB page 31

There are many green initiatives (1) across the world which are helping to protect the environment. There are projects to build solar farms to create green energy. There are projects to plant seedlings (2) and trees to give us cleaner air. At home, people are choosing to use rechargeable batteries and energy-saving light bulbs (3). Some people are buying more products made of bamboo (4), which is sustainable (5) and doesn't cause pollution. Some people are even



using air conditioning ⁽⁶⁾ less often because it uses so much energy. What can you do to help protect the environment?

Post-listening question: - Summarise the passage in two lines.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

 Read and complete 	the text with words	from the followin	g list: ۲۰۲۳ الاحمر
car -	difficult - opinion -	used – cities – use	s
In my (2), live the countryside. It	e living in big (1) ving in big cities is v is much quieter, clea villages to enjoy the p	very (3)nov aner and healthier.	w. I prefer living in Our grandparents
	answer from a, b, c		
 The Haya Karima productive What do you think meaning to " 	b) initiative of the new plan? "Wh	c) report	A STATE OF THE STA
a) What do you like c) Why do you prefe 3. Theis a pe	about	b) What's your op d) Why don't you	
a) president		c) editor	d) writer
4. To get the noun fro			
a) -ed	b) -ing		The second secon
5. What are the advan	tages of solar energy	? "Advantage" here	has the opposite
meaning of "	"	2	Longman
	b) dishonesty		
6. All things			thy life.
	b) personal		d) living
7is very im			
a) Tourism			d) A region
8. Add the prefix "	The state of the s		Alger i finds r
a) un-	b) dis-	c) im-	d) il-
9. If yousom			
	b) create		
10. To get the noun for the verb "organise".			
a) -ly	b) -ing	c) -or	d) -er
11. They plan to			
	b) create		d) protect
12. is changin			
a) Station	b) Countryside	c) Disadvantage	Desertification

C Skills



السؤال عن وإبداء رأى Asking for and giving an opinion

(A) Asking for permission:

طلب إذن (للتحدث):

- Excuse me. Can I say something?

عذرًا، هل يمكننۍ قول شيء ما؟

(B) Asking for an opinion:

السؤال عن الـــرأي:

- What do you think about the solar farm, Mr Brown?

ما رأيك فب المزرعة الشمسية، سيد براون؟

- What's your opinion about building solar farms in the countryside?

ما رأيك فى بناء مزارع شمسية فى الريف؟

(C) Giving an opinion:

إبداء الرأي:

- Personally, I think that solar panels are wonderful.

شخصيتًا، أعتقد أن ألواح الطاقة الشمسية رائعة.

- In my opinion, we need to stop burning fossil fuels.

فب رأيب، نحتاج للتوقف عن حرق الوقود الحفري.

(D) Agreeing to an opinion:

الاتفاق في الـرأي:

- I agree that we need clean, renewable energy. أتفق في أننا نحتاج لطاقة نظيفة متجددة.

(E) Disagreeing to an opinion:

عدم الاتفاق في الرأي:

- I don't agree that we should build solar farms in the countryside.

لا أتفق فى أننا يجب أن نبنى مزارع شمسية فى الريف.

- I totally disagree. The solar panels don't destroy the countryside.

لا أتفق كليًّا. ألواح الطاقّة الشمسية لا تدمّر الريف.

- Don't forget, the wind turbines save money for the community.

لا تنس، طواحين الهواء توفر أموالًا للمجتمع.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding Applying Analysing A Evaluating A Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

Ebrahim and Hegazy are talking about the new superhero film.

Ebrahim: Excuse me, Hegazy. Can I ask for your opinion on something?

Ebrahim: What do you think about the new superhero film?

Ebrahim: I agree that the action was great, but the story was not good.

Hegazy: I totally disagree. I still enjoyed it totally.

Ebrahim: (3).....?

Hegazy : My favourite superhero is Spider-Man. (4).....?

Ebrahim: I like Batman. He's so cool and brave.

TEST YOURSELF



Lessons (5 & 6) Unit 9



1 Finish th	ne following o	dialogue:		WB
Dalia is	speaking wi	th Nesma about t	he plan to build wind t	urbines.
Dalia	: What do yo	ou think of this pla	n to build wind turbine	s in the sea near
	the beach?			
Nesma	: Personally,	I think it's a good i	dea.	
Dalia	VS1404-04	No. of the Control of	?	
Nesma	A 52 (50)		ce renewable energy.	
Dalia			, but I think	they should be
	built on the		STATE OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY OF THE PA	
Nesma	: (3)	***************************************	?	
Dalia	201 201		vant to look at wind turl	oines that might
	look ugly.	,		
Nesma			There is m	ore wind at sea.
Dalia		ou're right.		
Nesma	(5 5)			ines look nice.
	(-,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,			
2 Read an	d complete t	the text with words	from the following list	
	produce - u	used to – used – so	urce – damage – farm	land
Our	community o	lecided to build a so	olar park on a (1)	They want to
(2)	clean	energy that doesn	t pollute the environme	ent. Solar panels
100		N. 247.00	rees were cut down. Ev	
			f energy. People (4)	
			renergy. reopie (4)	436 103311
rueis, b	ut now they	use solar energy.		
3 Choose	the correct a	nswer from a, b, c	or d:	
			anels that provide elect	ricity.
	mland	. man many serial p	b) Region	
	ar farm		d) Desertification	
2	is a perso	on, thing or place t	hat gives information.	
a) Sou			c) Landscape	d) Tourism
- 11 - It-		1.17	·	
			is far from here.	***
a) isla	ınd	b) forest	c) desert	
a) isla 4. When	ınd	b) forest	The second secon	

	Personally, I th "personally" is		nost important lang	uage. The antonym of
	a) especially	20000000000000000000000000000000000000	b) badly	
	c) publically		d) individ	
		efix "" to "a	advantage" to get th	Š
	a) un-	b) dis-	c) in-	d) re-
	4 Complete the se	ntences with the c	orrect form of the v	vord(s) in brackets:
			ed, we(ha	ive) more problems
	caused by risin		round last winter	
l	TERM CHARGE	(fall) on the g	oons on Saturday m	ornings
			parities on the second	ve health problems.
		77.757	e playing the guitar	506 10 NO.
	Write ONE HUND	ORED and TEN (110) words on:	
		"An	initiative"	
l	***************************************			
	***************************************		***************************************	

	***************************************		***************************************	

	***************************************		******************************	***************************************
	Challenging Quest	ions		- X
-	Choose the corre	ect answer from a,	b, c or d:	<mark>مجاب عنه نهاية</mark> الكتاب.
	1. Personally, I th	nink it's a good idea	a. The word "persona	ılly" is a/an
	a) adjective	b) adverb	c) verb	d) noun
	2. The aim of this	s course is to impro	ove your speaking, n	ot toit.
	a) damage	b) protect	c) create	d) develop
	3. If we add the	orefix "" to	some words, it give	es the opposite.
	a) bi-	b) en-	c) re-	d) dis-

Language

1. (used to) for regular past habits and routines

يۇثر عام

Vocabulary

We used to get all our shopping in plastic bags.

كأس الخيزران

نظام تكييف الهواء

air conditioning

affect (ed)

bamboo cup

countryside

We didn't use to use energy-saving light bulbs, but we do now.

التصحر

desertification

diagram

رسم تخطيطه

- Did you use to brush your teeth with an electric toothbrush?
- What games did you use to play when you were little?

يقلع عن

أرض زراعية

farmland

منظر طبيعم

المصباح الكهربائب الموفر للطاقة

energy-saving light bulb

شہء/کائن حب رئيس الجمهورية

living thing

president

product

landscape

give up

2. The second conditional "If"

- If I had more time, I would read more books.
- They wouldn't come if they were busy.

فلتح

ď

promise (d)

- If he were rich, he'd buy a car.
- If I were you, I would see a doctor.

بطاريات قابلة للشحن rechargeable batteries

Which places would you visit if you went to Paris?

يقلل

حقيبة تسوق قابلة لإعادة الاستخدام

reusable shopping bag

reduce (d)

ارتفاع منسوب مياه البحر

rising sea levels

 If you had more free time, where would you go?

1. Discussing how to live a more sustainable life

- What could you stop using or buying that is bad for the environment?
- I could stop using plastic bags, tea bags, toothbrushes and wasting paper.
- What other things could you do to live a more sustainable life?
- toothbrush, reuse water bottles and have energy-saving light bulbs.

I could use less water, bamboo

- 2. Asking for and giving an opinion What's your opinion about building Excuse me. Can I say something? solar farms in the countryside?
- · Personally, I think that solar panels - I agree that we need clean, renewable energy. are wonderful.
 - I don't agree that we should build solar farms in the countryside.
- I totally disagree. The solar panels don't destroy the countryside.

مستدام

ساقية

توربينات الرياح

wind turbines

water wheel

شتلة/نبتة

ألواح شمسية

solar panels

sustainable

seedling



Al-Adward Test on Unit



Language Functions

Finish the following dialogue:

Tamer is asking Omar about his opinion on the new histo	ry textbook.
Tamer: Can I ask for your opinion on something?	
Omar : Of course. (1)	7
Tamer: What do you think about the new history textbook?	
Omar : (2)	I like it so much.
Tamer: (3)	?
Omar : I like it because it covers more topics and stories.	
Tamer: (4)	*** •
Omar : Why don't you agree?	
Tamer: (5)	· •
Omar : I don't agree that the writing style is boring	

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

products - bulbs - use to - used to - rechargeable - reusable

Our class wanted to do something to protect the environment. One of the boys suggested using less plastic. People (1) get all their shopping in plastic bags, but now they use (2)...... shopping bags. Another boy recommended using bamboo (3) because bamboo is sustainable. Also, using energy-saving light (4) helps to save electricity.

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Helping the environment is important because it helps to protect the Earth and all the living things that call it home. There are many ways that children can help the environment.

First, we can reduce the amount of waste we produce by recycling and reusing things. We can also use less water and electricity by turning off the lights and water when we're not using them.

Second, we can plant trees and other plants to help clean the air and provide habitats for animals. We can also pick up litter and clean up our local parks and beaches.

Third, we can use public transport, walk, or bike instead of driving a car. This helps to reduce air pollution and keep our natural resources.

Finally, we can support local farmers and businesses that use sustainable practices and reduce our use of meat and dairy products.

By taking these simple actions, we can all do our part to help the environment

,			The second secon
and make the Eart	h a better place for ev	eryone to live.	
A) Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. The underlined	d pronoun "them" refer	s to	
a) habitats	b) lights	c) water	d) both b & c
2. The word "sup	port" is similar in mea	ning to "".	
a) save	b) help	c) protect	d) avoid
3. Which of the for passage?	ollowing is NOT a way	to help reduce was	te, according to the
a) Recycling.		b) Reusing.	
c) Throwing av	vay.	d) Reducing.	
B) Answer the follo	wing questions:		
4. What is the ma	in idea of this passage	?	6
5. Summarise the	e text in two lines.		
6. What other wa	ys do you think we ca	n follow to help the	e environment?
C	Vocabulary o	ınd Structure	
Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c or	d:	
1. The synonym of	the word "enormous"	is "	شمال سیلاء ۲۰۲۳
a) very big	b) tiny	c) small	d) thin
2. This factory	parts for cars.		
a) saves	b) introduces	c) reduces	d) produces
3. We should help	reduce pollution. We s	houldit.	
a) increase	b) decrease	c) spread	d) cause
4. A good teacher	always attracts studen	ts' attention. We ca	n change the verb
"attract" into an	adjective by adding th	e suffix "	

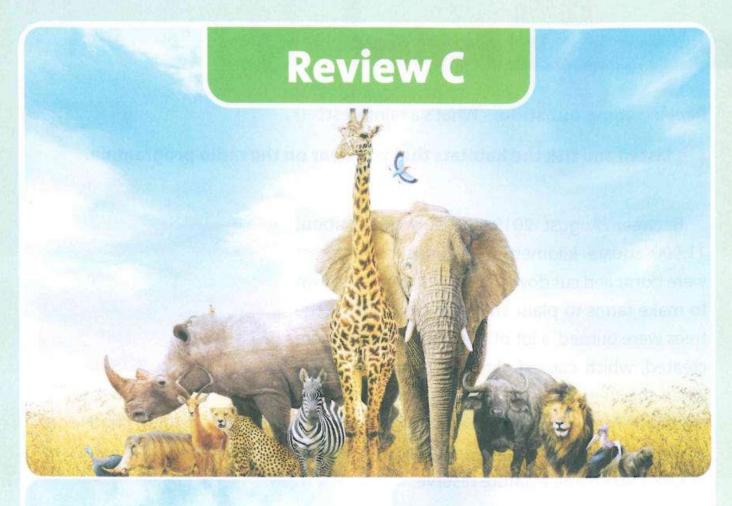
c) -y

b) -able

a) -ive

d) -er

	5. Ais a	long period of time	during which no r	ain falls.	
	a) desert	b) forest	c) flood	d) drought	
	6. A/An	is a machine that ke	eps a room's temp	erature cool.	
	a) fan		b) oven		
	c) air condition	ier	d) fridge		
E	Complete the sen	tences with the corr	ect form of the wo	rd(s) in brackets:	
	1.1 (used	d/have) a dog when	I was young.		
	2. If Hala	. (wouldn't) buy so n	nany clothes, she w	ould have more mor	ney.
	3. We(se	ee) a good film last v	veek.		
	4. If I were rich, m	y life(chan	ge) completely.		
	5. When he	(be) a child, he u	sed to like eating s	weets.	
	Weite ONE HINDS		/riting	탣	
i	write ONE HUNDE	RED and TEN (110) w	oras on:		
	9	"Building wind tur	bines near a beac	h"	
			***************************************		*****
					•••••
	Assess yo	W ~ E004			
	Assess yo progress * * * *	W ~ E004	50:64% 6		







Units 7, 8 & 9



Pre-listening question: - What's a rainforest?

Lesson 1



Listen and tick the habitats that you hear on the radio programme.

SB page 32

Between August 2019 and July 2020, about 11,000 square kilometres of Amazon rainforest were burnt and cut down. The trees were cut down to make farms to plant crops for cows. When the trees were burned, a lot of greenhouse gases were created, which caused climate change. But also,



when the trees were destroyed, the habitats of thousands of birds and animals were lost. The animals that lived had nowhere to live and they couldn't find food.

This is why some habitats are made into nature reserves. In 1951, the Serengeti in Africa was made a nature reserve.

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 1

- Why do you think it is wrong to destroy rainforests and other habitats?

Complete the text with the correct form of the verb in brackets. 58 page 32

In 2020, a lot of greenhouse gases were created by deforestation in the Amazon area. Trees were burnt and a lot of carbon dioxide was made by all the fires. We could avoid creating carbon dioxide by not cutting down our forests and burning the



trees. We need to protect our rainforests because they are important habitats for wildlife, plants and trees. The millions of trees keep the air clean for the whole planet. The greenhouse gas methane is produced by the cows that are brought to the area after the rainforest has been destroyed. So, it is time to plant more and more trees.

Post-reading question:

- Do you think we need to make more nature reserves? Why/ Why not?

Pre-listening question:

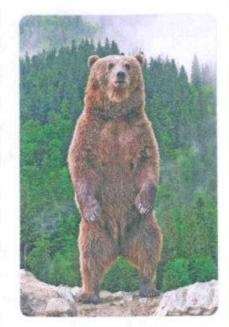
Lesson 1

- Where do you think bears used to live many years ago?

Listen to a speech. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

Woman

Today, I'm going to talk about a plan to introduce an animal back to Britain. I'd like to start by saying that bears used to live in Britain many years ago. However, there have been no bears in the country for hundreds of years. So, why do scientists want to bring them back? To begin with, they are beautiful animals. Visitors love to see them, and they will be able to watch the bears safely from special areas.



Man 1

I'm sorry, but I'm not sure what you mean by special areas.

Woman

The bears will live in woods, which is their natural habitat, but there will be fences to keep the bears from people. Visitors will walk along high paths up in the trees and watch the bears from there. Are there any more questions?

Man 2

Yes, what do you think about the farmers who worry that the bears will kill their animals?

Woman

Personally, I don't think they need to worry. The bears won't live near any farms. They will only stay in woods and they will be behind the fences. So, to conclude, this is just one plan to bring back animals that used to live in Britain. In my opinion, this is a great start.



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

special /'spe[əl/

natural / næt[ərəl/

fence /fens/

Post-listening question:

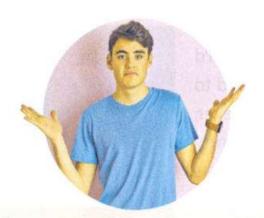
- What's the main idea of the speech?

Pre-reading question: - Do you consider yourself a negative person or a positive one?

Lesson 2

Read the texts. Who do you agree or disagree with? Discuss your ideas with a partner.

SB page 33



If everyone does one thing to help the environment, it will help a lot. For example, we can all use less paper or turn off the lights when we leave a room. I didn't use to buy rechargeable batteries, but now I do. We can all help.



I don't think there's much that young people can do to help the environment. Our parents buy our food and clothes. They do the shopping. If my parents don't want to recycle anything, there's nothing I can do.

Pre-reading question: - What are the materials people usually use?

Lesson 2

Read the blog. What happens to the recycled plastic bottles?

SB page 33

There are lots of ways we can protect our environment and build a greener world. We need to use cleaner, greener energy. If factories had solar panels on their buildings, they would save money. We need more people to work together to get renewable energy for their communities.



If more communities had a wind turbine, they would have cheaper, cleaner energy. We could also help the environment by planting more trees.

What about plastic? Millions of plastic bottles are used every day. When these bottles are recycled, the plastic is used to make clothes, toys, carpets and furniture! Glass and metal can be recycled, too. We don't recycle enough and that's why there's still so much rubbish in landfill sites.

Post-reading question: - What's the main idea of this passage?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 2

- Do you have any ideas to reduce the amount of rubbish that people produce every day?

Complete the text with correct form of the verbs in brackets.

WB page 92



Rubbish is produced by all of us every day, and we need to do something about it. In many countries, most rubbish is put into landfill sites and in others, the rubbish is burnt. However, if countries keep doing this, it will cause a lot of pollution.

In Sweden, only about 1% of rubbish was put into landfill sites last year. More than 50% of rubbish is recycled, and most houses are just 300 metres from a 'recycling station' where people can put paper, glass and plastic. The rest of their rubbish is burned in special power stations. Here, the rubbish is made into electricity and heating. These power stations cause some air pollution, but something useful is created, too.



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

pollution /pə'lu:[ən/

station / sterfen/

Post-reading question:

- Imagine the world if all the countries followed the Swedish project of recycling rubbish.



To space and back

Objectives of the unit

Reading A magazine article about a space scientist; the history of space exploration; a text about

satellite technology; the poem Day; an informative text about the International Space Station

Writing A paragraph about objects that use space technology; an informative text about a spacecraft

Listening A quiz about space; a podcast about satellites; a discussion about a famous photo

Speaking Talking about life experiences; talking about space and satellite technology; saying when

events happened

Language The past perfect

Life Skills Critical thinking

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات (SB) تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب (Longman) تشير لأسئلة لونجمان





Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 34 - 37 | WB pages 93 & 94

Vocabulary

- 🧶 قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- 🥌 قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary			المفردات الرئيسية
astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء	publish (ed) (v)	ينشر (كتابـًا)
astronomer (n)	عالم الفلك	satellite (n)	قمر صناعہ
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	sign (n)	علامة/لافتة
graduate (d) (v)	يتخرج	solar system (n)	النظام الشمسى
gravity (n)	الجاذبية	solve (d) (v)	يحل وور
jets of air	تيارات هوائية	spacecraft (n)	مركبة فضائية
lens(es) (n)	عدسة	telescope (n)	منظار/تلسكوب
orbit (ed) (v)	یدور (فہ مدار)	waste (n)	نفایات

Additional Vocabulary

machine (n) age (n) ألة عصر believe (d) (v) newspaper (n) ىعتقد/ىصدق جريدة equipment (n) round (adj) معدات مستدير flat (adj) share (d) (v) يشارك مسطح flood (ed) (v) sports event (n) يفيض حدث ریاضی

Choose and complete: event - shared - ages - graduated

- 1 My brother from the university last year.
- 2 The Football World Cup is a great sports
- many photos with my friends.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقباس فهمك للعفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

المفردات الإضافية

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective
45955 955	

(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية: | preposition | (prep)

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite) ומשבר
alive (adj) يد الحياة	حہ/علہ ق	living	حب حا	dead میت
appear (v)	يظمر	come out	يظمر	disappear يختفه
die (v)	يموت	pass away	يموت	يعيش live
far away (adj)	نمتد	remote	نعتد	near/close قریب
land (v)	تعنط	settle down	يستقر	يغادر/تُقلع leave/take
وب (popular (adj	شائع/محبر	common	شائع	غیر شائع/غیر محبوب unpopular
prepare (v)	يعد/يجهز	arrange/organise	يرتب	disarrange يضع بشكل غير مرتب
retire (v)	يتقاعد	stop working ن العمل	يتوقف عر	continue working يستمر فہ العمل
solution (n)	حل	answer	إجابة	problem مشكلة

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

یتحقق/یصبح حقیقیًا come > true	make > a discovery
NASA (National Aeronautics and Space Administration) وكالة ناسا للملاحة الجوية والفضاء	NASA's Technology Transfer Project مشروع ناسا لنقل التكنولوجيا
the International Space Station محطة الفضاء الدولية	organise a sports event ينظم حدثا رياضيًا

Prepositions

حروف الجر

		1	-
by the end of	قبل نهاية	on the surface of	على سطح
in space	فى الفضاء	prepare for	تسيعد ך
go into space	يذهب إلى الفضاء	revise for	يراجع لـ
interested in	مهتم بـ	through space	عبر الفضاء
look for	يبحث عن	work on a project	يعمل على مشروع

Choose and complete:

retire - in - for - off

1 My grandpa will from his job next year. He will be sixty.

لهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للكلمات ومرادفها وعكسما والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

2 I'm interested languages, so I always take courses.

3 My plane takes at seven.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle	
dream of	يحلم بـ	dreamt	dreamt	
fly	يطير	flew	flown	



🥮 ادرس المفردات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Definitions

التعريفات

assistant (n)	عداسه	somebody who helps a person do their job	
astronaut (n) رائد فضاء		a person who travels into space	
astronomer (n) عالم فلك		a person who studies stars and planets	
gravity (n) الجاذبية		a force which attracts things or people to the centre of the Earth	
lens (n) محسة		a piece of glass used in cameras or on glasses, that can make things look bigger or smaller	
orbit (v) يدور		move around a star or planet	
researcher (n)	باحث	a person who studies something carefully	
satellite (n) قمر صناعہ		a machine that goes around the Earth to send or collect information	
solar system (n) النظام الشمسب		all the planets and their moons which go around the sun	
solution (n)	حل	a way to deal with or answer a puzzle or question	
space station (n) محطة فضاء		a large satellite going around the Earth where astronauts can live and work to study space	
spacecraft (n)	مركبة فضائية	a vehicle that can travel through space	
telescope (n)		equipment that makes things that are far away look nearer	

اللاحقة Suffix

Word assist (v)	ا لكلمة يساعد	اللاحقة Suffix اللاحقة -ant	الوظيفة Function الوظيفة تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	The new word الكلمة الجديدة assistant (n)
compete (v)	يتنافس	-ition	تحويل الفعل لاسم	competition (n)
invent (v)	يخترع	-or	تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	inventor (n) مخترع
Italy (n)	إيطاليا	-ian	تحويل الاسم لصفة/لاسم	Italian (n/adj) إيطالب
lecture (n)	مئحاضرة			lecturer (n) صحاضر
research (v/n) يبحث (علميًا)/بحث		-er	تحويل الاسم/الفعل لاسم فاعل	researcher (n) باحث
nation (n)	أمة	-al	تحويل الاسم لصفة	national (adj) قومہ/وطنب
successful (adj) ناجح/متفوق		-ly	تحويل الصفة لحال	successfully (adv) بنجام

Language Notes

- 1 the (first/second/last) + to + inf.
- الأول/الثانم/الأخير ... (الأعداد الترتيبية)
- Neil Armstrong was the first astronaut to walk on the moon.
- 2 as well as + (n/ v + ing)

بالإضافة إلى

- As well as being an astronaut, she has been working as a researcher.
- (3) alive

من الصفات التب لا يأتب بعدها اسم ولا يأتب قبلها ظروف الدرجة مثل (very).

- She does not know if he is alive or dead.
- طكان التخرج + from / التخصص + graduate in
 - Ayman graduated in Engineering from Aswan University.



Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 1

- Do you want to be an astronaut? Why/Why not?



Read the article quickly. Why did Ayman Ragab enter NASA's competition?

SB Page 35

Prize-winning Egyptian helps NASA

For many years, NASA has been trying to understand what it can do with the rubbish that space journeys (1) produce. Scientists have been looking for ways to solve (2) the problem of rubbish.

Astronauts (3) use a lot of plastic, paper and other waste (4) on their journeys to space. This can be a real problem. So, NASA started a competition, asking the world's best scientists to try and find a solution (5)

Ayman Ragab is an Egyptian scientist who has always been interested in space science (6). In 2019, he entered NASA's competition and came second. Ayman suggested using jets of air(7) to make the waste smaller and then help to recycle it.



رحلات الفضاء (1)	يحل (2)
رائد فضاء (3)	نفایات (4)
حل (5)	علوم الفضاء (6)
تيارات هوائية (7)	يتخرج فى (8)
مدرس مساعد (9)	باحث (10)
مشروع ناسا لنقل التكنولوجيا (11)	الجاذبية (12)

Ayman is from the village of al-Dababiya near Luxor and graduated in (8) Engineering from Aswan University. He has worked as a teaching assistant (9) at the same university and now works as a researcher⁽¹⁰⁾ for a university in Finland.

Since he won his prize, he has worked on NASA's Technology Transfer Project⁽¹¹⁾ which looks at how to use the latest technology in space, and he has recently found ways to save energy when there is little gravity(12).



astronaut / æstreno:t/ technology /tek noledzi/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: graduate / grædʒuət/

Post-reading question:

- Are you proud of Ayman Ragab? Why/Why not?

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- Have you heard about the famous American astronaut Peggy Annette Whitson?



WB page 93



June 2018

Today, the famous⁽¹⁾ American astronaut Peggy Annette Whitson has just said that she is going to retire⁽²⁾. More than 500 people have been to space, but Peggy has spent longer in space than any other woman. She has been travelling to space every few years since 2002. As well as being an astronaut, Peggy has worked as a researcher⁽³⁾, a university lecturer⁽⁴⁾ and on the



محطة الفضاء الدولية (5)

International Space Station⁽⁵⁾. Our newspaper **has been writing** about her work for more than 15 years, and we wish her luck for the future!



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

researcher /ri's3:t[ər/

lecturer /lektʃərər/

Post-reading question: - Why do you think Peggy Annette became very famous?

Pre-reading question: - Who invented the first telescope?

Lesson 2



Read the article. Match the headings a-e to the paragraphs 1-5.

SB page 36

Exploring space – past and present

1. The first astronomers

The stars and the planets have always been important to us. In ancient times, people knew what time of year it was by looking at where the stars were in the sky. The Ancient Egyptians discovered (1) that a star called Sirius appeared in the sky just before the Nile flooded (2).



2. Early ideas about the sun and the Earth

An astronomer (3) from the 2nd century, called Ptolemy, believed that the sun orbited (4) the Earth. It was a popular idea that people believed for many centuries. Islamic astronomers in the 11th-13th centuries thought that the idea might be wrong.

يكتشف (1)	يفيض (2)
عالم فلك (3)	يدور حول (4)
ينشر (5)	التلسكوب (6)
عدسات (7)	النظام الشمسى (8)
تشاف الفضاء (9)	SI

3. A new idea

In 1532, the astronomer Nicolaus Copernicus showed that the Earth orbited the sun, but he hadn't published (5) his ideas until just before he died. Copernicus hadn't wanted people to know about his ideas while he was alive, because he knew they would be unpopular.

4. The first telescopes

Before the beginning of the 17th century, astronomers had only studied space with their own eyes. Then, in 1608, the telescope (6) was invented. The Italian astronomer Galileo improved the design. He made the lenses (7) stronger so that he could study the planets in our solar system (8).



5. Modern discoveries

The modern age is an exciting time for space discovery (9). We can see objects that are far away in space and look for life on other planets. What discoveries do you think we will make in the future?



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

astronomer /astronamar/

century /'sent[eri/

Post-reading question: - Summarise the text in 40 words.

- What shape is the Earth, flat or round?

Listen to the conversation about a quiz and number the photos in the order that you hear them.

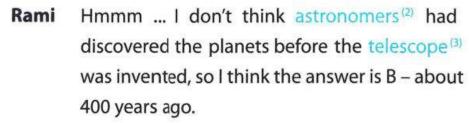
SB page 37

Rami What are you looking at, Kamal?

Kamal Hi, Rami. It's a quiz about space history. Some of the answers to the questions are very surprising⁽¹⁾. I scored 2 out of 4. Would you like to try?



Kamal When did people first discover the planets in our solar system? A: about 2000 years ago or B: about 400 years ago.



Kamal Wrong! Astronomers had discovered them a long time before that! People from an ancient place in the Middle East called Babylonia discovered the planets in the first and second century. They saw that the planets moved differently from the stars in the sky, so they knew that they were different.

Rami Wow! That was a long time ago!

Kamal Yes, it was! Second question ... When did people discover that the Earth was round? **A:** in the 6th century or **B:** in the 15th century.

Rami Oh, I know people believed that the Earth was flat for a long time. So I'll choose answer B, in the 15th century.

Kamal Wrong answer! People had discovered the Earth was round a long time before the 15th century! Greek scientists in the 6th century saw that the sky looked different from different places. This made them think that the planet was round.





- محمش (1)
- علماء الفلك (2)
- التلسكوب (3)

Oh dear! I'm not doing very well. Rami

يطور (4)

Kamal Don't worry. Here's the third question. Who invented the telescope? A: Galileo or B: Hans Lippershey?

Hmm ... Well Galileo improved (4) the design of the telescope, but he Rami didn't invent it. So the answer is B, Hans Lippershey.

Kamal That's right. Hans Lippershey lived in the Netherlands in the 16th century. He wasn't an astronomer – he made glasses. He discovered that he could use more than one lens to make objects look bigger ... So, Galileo didn't invent the telescope, but he was the first person to use it to study space. Question 4. How many people had walked on the moon by the end of the 20th century? A: 2 or B: 12?

Hmm, I'm sure it's more than two, so I think B is the right answer – 12 Rami people.

Kamal That's right! Twelve people had walked on the moon by the end of the 20th century. No more people have walked on the moon this century, so the number is still the same.

So I got 2 out of 4 - the same as you! ... That was really interesting, Rami Rami! I think I learnt a lot.



Netherlands / neðelendz/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: telescope / teleskeup/

Post-listening questions:

- 1. How many people had walked on the moon by the end of the 20th century?
- 2. When did people first discover the planets in our solar system?



PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises



Remembering 🛦 Understanding 🛦 Applying 🛦 Analysing 🛦 Evaluating 🛦 Creating

1 Read and comple	te the text with wor	ds from the followi	ing list: ۲۰۲۲ القليوبية
competition	n – saved – engineer	ing – match – resea	archer – save
graduated with h worked as a teac	onors from the Facu hing assistant at the and came second. I	Ity of (2)at same university u	ntly located in Finland, Aswan University. He ntil 2019. He entered nd ways to (4)
	ct answer from a, b,	c or d:	
▶ 1. Ais sor	nething people use to	o see things that are	e far away. ٢٠٢٣ إِنْنَا فِمَا الخَارِجِ
a) telegraph	b) telescope	c) television	d) telephone
2. To get the noun f	from the verb "compe	ete", add the suffix "	
a) -ation	b) -ition	c) -tion	d) -ion
3. We add the prefix	x "" to get th	e opposite of the wo	ord "popular". د د ماره ماره ord "popular".
a) in-	b) un-	c) en-	d) im-
4. My grandfather v	vants to fro	m his job and travel	around the world.
a) retire	b) solve	c) explore	d) graduate
5. The antonym of t	he word "near" is "		أيتاؤنا فم الخارج ٢٠٢٣
a) remote	b) close	c) closed	d) hereabout
6. A/An is	somebody who help	s a person do their j	ob.
a) assistant	b) satellite	c) solution	d) astronaut

b) solar system

c) stars

d) continent

a) destroy

b) discover

c) study

d) move around

9. Ais a machine in space that goes around the earth.

Longman

Longman

الحقيملية ٣٦٠٦

a) microscope

b) telescope

c) ship

d) satellite

10.is a force which attracts things or people to the centre of the Earth.

a) Space

b) Telescope

c) Gravity

d) The sun

a) national

b) popular

c) dead

d) common

12. There is a lot of rain. It's going tosoon.

7. There are eight planets in our

a) dry

b) flood

c) die

d) cover

The Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

Usage

الاستخدام

We use the present perfect to talk about experiences in the past without giving a specific time.

يستخدم المضارع التام للتحدث عن تجارب في الماضي دون إعطاء وقت محدد.

- Ayman Ragab has always been interested in science.
- We have travelled to many cities around the world.

اسم مفرد ,He, She, It has(n't)

اسم جمع + have(n't) + P.P. Form

التكوين Samar has tidied her room. I have watched TV.

• Amira hasn't washed the car. • I haven't done my homework.

Key words الكلميات الدالة

, بعد / حتم الآن yet ,أبدًا never ,حالًا / توًّا just ,من قبل ever ,بالفعل already

اليــوم today / وقت + this , منذ since ,لمـدة for حديثًا today , مؤخرًا lately ,مؤخرًا

Question

Yes/No questions:

Have/Has + subj. + P.P.?

A: Has he read the book yet?

B: Yes, he has. / No, he hasn't.

A: Have they eaten lunch?

B: B: Yes, they have. / No, they haven't.

Wh- questions:

Wh-word + has/have + subj. + P.P.?

A: What have you done since 6 o'clock?

B: I have watched TV since 6 o'clock.

A: Where has he been?

B: He has been at school.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Kareem has(invite) his friends to the party.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (invited) لأن (has) يتبعها التصريف الثالث للفعل مع زمن المضارع التام.

2(Has) you ever used a telescope?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Have) لأن السؤال في زمن المضارع التام والفاعل you.

Usage

الاستخدام

1. We use the present perfect continuous to talk about something that started in the past and is still happening now.

يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر للتحدث عن شهء بدأ فه الماضه وما زال يحدث الأن.

- We have been playing computer games for two hours now.
- 2. We use the present perfect continuous to talk about a reason for a result.

يستخدم للتعبير عن سبب لنتيجة فعل شيء.

I'm tired as I have been working all day.

Form

التكوين

- He has been studying for two hours.
 I have been watching TV all night.
- Amira hasn't been washing all evening. I haven't been sleeping for too long.

Key words الكلمــات الدالـة

نفس الكلمات السابقة وبالأخص (الكلمات الدالة على استمرار فترة من الوقت) /(طوال) وقت + all /(منذ) بداية الوقت + since /(لمدة) (now +) المدة كاملة + for (كم المدة)

Question

الســــؤال

Yes/No questions:

$$Has/Have + subj. + been + v + ing?$$

A: Has he been reading the book all night? B: Yes, he has.

A: Have they been shopping for lunch for long? **B:** No, they haven't.

Wh- question:

A: What have you been doing since 6 o'clock?

B: I have been watching TV since 6 o'clock.



Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- How long have you(be) studying English?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (been) لأن السؤال فه زمن المضارع التام المستمر.



يجب مراعاة عدم استخدام زمن المضارع التام المستمر (بل نستخدم المضارع التام البسيط) مع: ا- أفعال لا تستغرق وقتًا في حدوثها.

- Her dream has come true.
- ٢- أفعال الحالة أو الثبات والأفعال الدالة على الملكية والمعرفة والكينونة وأفعال الحواس والمشاعر بصفة عامة.
- I have known Mr Said for three years.
- I have had this car since 2010. I haven't sold it yet.
- ٣- عند ذكر عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

My father has visited Rome 3 times.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1) She must be tired. She(work) all afternoon.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (has been working) لأن الجملة تعبر عن سبب لنتيحة فعل شيء.
- 2 Anas (eat) my cookies. There are none left.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (has eaten) لأنه لم يتم تحديد وقت الحدث فنستخدم المضارع التام.

The Past Perfect Tense

زمن الماضي التام

We use the past perfect to talk about something that happened before another event in the past.

يستخدم لتوضيح فكرة وقوع حدث قبل حدث آخر في الماضي؛ أي يوجد حدث أول يوضع في زمن الماضي التام وحدث ثان في زمن الماضي البسط.

We took a taxi to the beach because the train had already left.

Form التكوين

- Subj. + had (n't) + P.P.
- She had published her first poem by the time she was eight.
- He hadn't published his ideas until just before he died.

يتم استخدام الماضي التام للتعسر عن:

ا- شىء حدث قبل حدث آخر في الماضي.

- My new job wasn't exactly what I had expected.
- Usage الاستخدام
- - ٢- شهء حدث قبل وقت معين في الماضي.
- Before the beginning of the 17th century, astronomers had only studied space with their own eyes.
 - ٣- عند تبليغ/تقرير شىء حدث فى الماضى.
- He said that he had bought a new car a week before.

Question Yes/No questions: Had + Subj.

• Had you ever visited London when you moved there?

Wh- questions: Wh- word + had + Subj. + P.P. ...?

• What had you done before I arrived?

Key words الكلمات الدالة

/(قبل نماية) وقت ماض + by the end of /(بحلول) وقت ماض + by by the time (بحلول الوقت)/ before (قبل) after (بحلول الوقت)/ until/till (حتى) as soon as (بمجبرد أن) because (مندما) when (عندما)

(1) because

🕹 استخدام هذه الروابط بين الماضي التام والماضي البسيط:



Subj. + Past Simple (حدث ثانر) + because + subj. + Past Perfect (حدث أول)

Maged was hungry because he hadn't eaten lunch.

(2) before/by the time

المحدث أول) Before/By the time + subj. + Past Simple (حدث أول) subj. + Past Perfect (حدث أول)

By the time my parents left home, they had closed all taps.

Subj. + Past Perfect (حدث ثان) + before/by the time + subj. + Past Simple (حدث ثان)

She had cooked lunch before her husband arrived.

(3) after/as soon as

After/As soon as + subj. + Past Perfect (حدث ثانر) subj. + Past Simple

After my mum had heard the news, she phoned me.

Subj. + Past Simple (حدث أول) + after/as soon as + subj. + Past Perfect (حدث أول)

My sister helped my mother in the kitchen after she had cleaned her room.

(4) until/till

Subj. + Past Simple (negative) (حدث ثان + until/till + subj. + Past Perfect (حدث أول)

I didn't play video games until I had finished my homework.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Nader hurt his leg because he(play) football.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (had played) لأن (because) يتبعما (had + P.P.).

2 I didn't go to work until I(get) better.

- الاحانة الصحيحة (had got) لأن (until) يتبعما (had + P.P.).



Language Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the	sentences with	the correct	form of t	the word(s)	in brackets:
--------------	----------------	-------------	-----------	-------------	--------------

1. He (travel) until he had finished his work.
2. Lina knew the best room in the hotel because she (have) been there
before.
3. He had dinner after he (tidy) his room.
4. After Salma(write) the e-mail, she sent it.
5. The house was dirty. They (not/clean) it for a long time.
6. My grandfather has never (drove) a car.
7. Experts have been (tried) to solve the problem of global warming
for years. Longman
8(Did) they finished their art project yet?
9. After we(collect) all the necessary information, we did the research.
10. A: Why is your hair wet? B: We(swim) in the sea!
11. What have you(doing) during all these hours?
12. I didn't send the report until I (revise) it.
13(Before) I had brushed my teeth, I went to bed.
14. After they (win) the match, they celebrated.
15. She hasn't (be) eating her vegetables for days.
16. Before his death, the author (publish) his latest collection of short
stories. WB
17. Have you ever (fly) a kite in the park?
18. By the time we arrived at the party, they (serve) the cake.
19. He has (run) around the garden for an hour now.
20. After Sara(do) the shopping, she cooked lunch.







Talking about life experiences

التحدث عن التجارب الحياتية

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

حملة الرد



Have you (ever) used a telescope?

هل سبق لك أن استخدمت تلسكوبـًا؟

No, I have never used it.

لا، لم أستخدمه أبدًا.



0

What have you been reading recently?

ما الذي تقرئينه مؤخرًا؟

I have been reading a short story.

أقوم بقراءة قصة قصيرة.



2

What have you been dreaming of since you were young? ما الذي تحلمين به منذ أن كنت صغيرة؟

I have been dreaming to be an astronaut.

أحلم بأن أكون رائدة فضاء.



Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

-	Basma is asking Ghada some questions about her life.
	Basma: Hello, Ghada. Can I ask you a few questions?
	Ghada: (1)

Ghada: No, I have never tried an unusual sport.

Basma: What have you been dreaming of since you were young?

Ghada: (3).....

Basma: An astronomer! (4) _____?

Ghada: Because I want to explore space.

Basma: Well, I hope you will achieve your dreams.

Ghada: (5)......



2. Write it right

🕡 يهدف هذا الجزء الى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل حيد.



How to write a biography of someone

كيفية كتابة سيرة ذاتية لشخص ما

- Who is the person you want to write his/her biography?

من هو الشخص؟

- Where and when was he/she born?

أين ومتب ولد؟

- What does he/she do?

ماذا بعمل؟

- What did he/she study?

ماذا درس؟

- What are his/her achievements?

ما هی انجازاته؟

- When did he/she die?

متب توفي؟ (في حالة وفاته)

Writing tips

A biography usually structures the main points of a person's life in chronological order.

عادة ما تقوم السيرة الذاتية بتركيب النقاط الرئيسية لحياة الشخص حسب التسلسل الزمني

Example

"A biography of Ayman Ragab"

Ayman Ragab was born in a village near Luxor. He is a member of NASA's Technology Transfer Program, a project that aims to understand the usage of different technologies in space. Ragab graduated from the Faculty of Engineering at Aswan University. He worked as a teaching assistant at the university until 2019. He is currently working as a space science researcher at the Faculty of Technology at the University of Oulu in Finland. He was honoured by NASA in 2019, when he took part in a competition to come up with smart solutions for recycling in space, winning second place. Again in 2021, NASA agreed to his research on ways to achieve sustainability and save energy in low-gravity environments.

Write a biography of a famous person yo	ou admire.
11444-1446-1444-1444-1444-1444-1444-144	



Unit 10

Lessons (1 & 2)



Finish the following	dialogue:		
Arwa and Zena are	talking about their	life experiences.	
Arwa: What's the be	st thing that happer	ned to you?	
Zena: The best thin	g that happened to	me was getting a ne	w puppy!
Arwa: No, I don't hav	ve any pets. Have you	ever been camping	in the mountains?
Zena: (2)		l went there	two weeks ago.
Arwa: What do you	want to be?		
Zena: (3)		How about	you, Arwa?
Arwa: I don't like tea	aching. I want to be a	a doctor! What's you	r favourite hobby?
Zena: (4)		What about	you?
Arwa: I enjoy readin	g, too. (5)		?
Zena: No, I haven't s	een a real dinosaur	skeleton.	
Read and complete t	the toyt with words	from the fallowing	. Hat.
astronaut – have	been – astronome	r – had been – stati	on – make
The space is no lor	nger a big secret. Scie	entists (1)	trying to discover
more and more about			
to walk on the moor			
space. Still, we expect	scientists to (4)	achievements	5.
Choose the correct a	nswer from a, b, c o	or d:	
1. A/ An is a la	arge satellite going a	around the Earth whe	ere astronauts can
live and work to stud			
a) gravity	b) space station	c) space craft	d) astronaut
2. Some people want t		20	
a) invent		c) explore	
3. Places on the map s	eem to be nearer, bu	ut they are really rem	ote.
"Remote" means "	<u>"</u>	25 1152	الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٣
a) short	b) far	c) green	d) young
4. The best cameras ha	ve a very good	that lets in the	correct amount of
light.			
			Longman

5. A/ An is a	person who studie	s something carefull	
a) astronomer	b) astronaut	c) assistant	d) researcher
6. To get the adjective	e from the word "na	ntion", add the suffix "	
a) -ian	b) -al	c) -ity	d) -able
Complete the sente	ences with the corr	ect form of the wor	d(s) in brackets:
1. What have you	(being)	studying at school th	is year? Longman
2. She has	(ever) been to t	he beach before.	
3. Tarek's a headache	because he	(watch) telev	ision for too long.
4. My brother didn't	go to the club until	he (finish) l	nis work. ۲۰۲۳ نوب سیناء
5. Heba(do) he	er housework for twe	o hours. She has not	أيوم finished yet. ٢٠٢٢
DW-it- ONE WINDS	ED and TEN (110) w	rords on:	
Write ONE HUNDR			
"A	biography of som	eone you admire"	

Challenging Question	is		
1 Choose the cor	rect answer from a	, b, c or d:	مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.
		pple produce. "Produc	ce" can be replaced
by "		A . L . L . L	al) make
a) collect	b) result	c) think	d) make
	problem		d) succeed
a) successfully			and the second
		orrect form of the wo friend Magdi for 15	
		B: Yes, I (solv	





Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 38 - 40 WB pages 95 & 96

A Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية Key Vocabulary

braces (n) ويم الأسنان	sensor (n)	جهاز استشعار
continent (n)	signal (n) قار	إشارة
grain (n) (بخرة)	task (n) ביו	مهمة (أدائية)
headphones (n) ماعات الرأس	سد trainers (n)	حذاء رياضى
helmet (n) خة	verse (n) خو	بيت شعر
abbreviation (n) نصار	اخا wireless (adj)	لاسلكت
fellow (n) يل/رفيق	زم toiler (n)	کادح
satellite (n) مر صناعہ	report (n) قد	تقرير
Satellite expression	بيرات مع الأقمار الصناعية s	تعر
واتف الأقمار الصناعية (satellite phones (n	satellite TV (n)	تلفاز القمر الصناعب
satellite receivers (n) ستقبلات الأقمار الصناعية	weather reports (n)	تقارير الطقس
satellite technology (n) عنولوجيا الأقمار الصناعية	weather satellites (r	ر) الأقمار الصناعية الخاصة بالد

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

boots (n)	حذاء برقبة	motorbike (n)	دراجة نارية
check (ed) (v)	يتحقق/يراجع/يفحص	shows (n)	عروض

heck Point

Choose and complete: headphones - sensor - boots - signal

1 I have problems in using my phone at home because the is bad.

يمدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

- 2 I would like to listen to music on my
- 3 Take your _____ off outside if they're dirty.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning	مرادفها (Antonym (Opposite)	لمسحد
allow (v)	يسمح	permit/let	يسمح	prevent	يمنع
clear (adj)	واضح	obvious	واضح	unclear	غير واضح
comfortable (a	dj) مریح	relaxed/relaxing	مسترخٍ	uncomfortable	غیر مریح
fellow (n)	زمیل/رفیق	companion	رفيق	enemy	عدو
in vain (adj)	دون جدوی	useless	غير مفيد	useful	مفيد
invent (v)	يخترع	create/design	يبتكر/يصمم	destroy	يدمر
possible (adj)	ممكن	probable	محتمل	impossible	مستحيل
useful (adj)	مفيد	helpful	مفيد/متعاور	useless	غير مفيد

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

do	> research	يقوم بإجراء بحث
send/receive	> the signals	يرسل/يستقبل الإشارات

Prepositions

حروف الجر

communicate with	يتواصل مع	step onto	يخطو على
land on	ملد هبمي	work out	يكتشف/يحل/يستنبط
on Earth	على الأرض	useful for	مفید ل

Choose and complete: out - for - impossible - possible

- 2 This clever girl could work the sums quickly.
- **3** Gem Book is very useful both students and teachers.

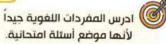
يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للكلمات ومرادفها وعكسما والتعبيرات اللغويه وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Pres	ent	Past simple	Past participle
blow	تهب	blew	blown
fall	يسقط	fell	fallen





Definitions

التعريفات

braces (n) تقويم الأسنان	something that people can wear to make their teeth straight
continent (n) قارة	one of the largest areas of land in the world, such as Africa, Asia or Europe
fellow (n) زمیل/رفیق	another word for man
grain (n) حبة	a seed or seeds from a plant that you can eat
نظام تحديد المواقع GPS (n)	(Global Positioning System) a system for finding how to find something or to get to a place using satellites
helmet (n) خوذة	a special hard hat used to protect the head
in vain (adj) عبثًا/بلا جدوی	if you do something in vain, you do it unsuccessfully
satellite receiver (n) مستقبل قمر صناعہ	a machine which can receive or read information that is sent by a satellite
sensor (n)	something which can measure small amounts of light, heat, sound, etc.
signal (n) اشارة	information or an instruction that is sent by sound, light, etc.
toiler (n) کادح	someone who is working hard
wireless (n) لاسلکہ	able to use the internet without wires

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	اللاحقة Suffix	الوظيفة Function	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
abbreviate	یختصر (v)	-ion	تحويل الفعل لاسم	abbreviation (n) اختصار
comfort (n)	راحة (-able	# I II	comfortable (adj) مریح
globe (n)	كرة أرضية	-al	تحويل الاسم لصفة	global (adj) سمالد
receive (v)	يستقبل		تحويل الفعل لاسم	receiver (n) جهاز استقبال
toil (v)	يكدح	-er	تحويل الفعل لاسم	toiler (n) בונק
train (v)	يتدرب		فاعل	trainer (n) مدرب
use (v)	يستخدم	-ful	تحويل الفعل لصفة	useful (adj) مفید
wire (n)	سلك	-less	تحويل الاسم لصفة	wireless (adj) دسلکس

Language Notes

allow + مفعول + to + inf. • Satellites allow us to study the wea	ther all around the world.
the state of the s	کیں/حتی ہے۔ اکس/حتی
+ so that + فاعل + can/could + inf	hat they can watch their favourite shows
too	يضًا (تأتَّى فَى آخر الجِملة)
also	يضًا (تأتى في وسط الجملة)
 In some areas, satellites send signa Did you know space technology is use every day? 	ls to the internet, too. also used to make many of the objects we
Abbreviations	'ختصارات بل العبلاد
BCE (Before Common Era)	and the selection of th
GPS (Global Positioning System)	نام تحديد المواقع العالمى
Dr (Doctor)	طبيب
Mr (Mister)	ىتاذ/سىد
Choose the correct answer from a,	b, c or d:
1 My mum didn't allow me	the school trip.
a) join	b) joining
c) to joining	d) to join
2 Lily went home earlysh	e could revise well for the exams.
a) to	b) so
c) that	d) so that
3 She looks really tired and she mu	st be really hungry,
a) such	b) to

c) too

d) also

Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- What does "GPS" refer to?

Lesson 3

Read the article quickly. Which of the things that the article describes do you use? SB page 38

We couldn't live without ... satellite technology

Since the late 20th century, we have used satellite(1) technology for many of the things we do every day. Our lives would be very different without it. Here are some of the things that we use satellites for.

GPS - Before satellites were invented, people had always used maps to find their way. Now, most people use GPS, which uses a system (2) of satellites that work together. These send signals (3) to receivers on Earth, which work out where you are. We have GPS (4) in cars, on phones and even in some modern motorbike helmets (5)!

Weather reports - Satellites allow us to study the weather all around the world. They send photos of the Earth from space. When these are put together, they show how clouds and storms (6) are moving.

TV and the internet – Lots of people have satellite TV so that they can watch their favourite shows and sports matches. The signal goes to a receiver (7) on the house. In some areas, satellites send signals to the internet, too.

Mobile phones - Have you ever had problems using your phone because the signal is bad? Satellite phones can work anywhere in the world. They are very useful in places far from cities, such as on mountains or in deserts.





(1)	uclin	ınö

1000	
(2)	milin:
(2)	سسام

Acres 6			
/ 3/1	ات	1.4	0.00
101		н	333

(4)	Inglas	וֹבבוגב	alhi

100	40.1	1 - No. 10
131	u	خود
100	-	-







تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

signal /'signəi/

receiver /rɪsiːvər/

Post-reading questions:

- 1. Do you think satellite technology is useful for weather reports?
- 2. Give two examples of places where satellite phones are useful.

- What inventions would you like to see in the future?

Listen to the podcast and check your answers to Exercise 6. SB page 39

Satellites (1) have changed the way that we do a lot of things on Earth. But did you know space technology is also used to make many of the objects we use every day? In fact, around 50 new products are invented every year using space technology. Here are some of the ones you might use.

Narrator: One, trainers

In the 1970s, space scientists invented a new type of helmet (2). The material inside the helmet contained small bags of air, which made the helmet more comfortable and protected the astronaut better. A few years later, one of these scientists had the idea of using the same type of air bags in trainers. Many modern trainers (3) now use this design.



Narrator: Two, mobile phone cameras

In 1990, space scientists invented a new sensor(4) that allowed scientists to take photos in space without using much energy. This technology is now used in the cameras in our mobile phones.



Narrator: Three, wireless headphones

It's important for astronauts to be able to communicate with their team on Earth. Before the 1960s, headphones were big and uncomfortable. So space scientists designed light, wireless headphones that astronauts could speak into without using their hands. Neil Armstrong spoke through wireless headphones when he first stepped onto the moon.



- الأقمار الصناعية (1)
- خوذة (2)
- حذاء رياضی (3)
- جهاز استشعار (4)

Narrator: Four, sunglasses

In 1980, scientists were working on a way to protect astronauts' eyes in space. They read that the eyes of some birds have special oil that protects them from light and helps them to see more clearly. The scientists designed a lens that could do the same thing. Today, this type of lens is used in sunglasses.



Narrator: Five, clear braces

People have wanted perfect teeth since ancient times. Did you know that the Ancient Egyptians had used the insides of sheep to make braces (5) for teeth? In more modern times, braces were made from metal, and then, in 1986 the first clear braces were created. They used a special kind of plastic that is strong even when it's very thin. It was created to protect equipment on trips into space.



تقويم الأسنان (5)



communicate /kə mju:nıkeIt/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: brace /breIs/

Post-listening question:

- How did Neil Armstrong communicate with people on Earth when he was on the moon?

The word won sounds like one, but has a different meaning. Listen and choose the correct spelling of these words.

Lesson 3

WB page 96

- 1. I watched my favourite football team yesterday, and they won!
- 2. Oh, there is something in my eye.
- 3. My friend called me, but I could not hear.
- 4. I asked my mother if I could go to the park, but she said no.
- 5. What can you see from the top of the tower?
- 6. Ali is Hassan's youngest son.

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 3

- What do you know about Dr Farouk El-Baz?



Complete the article with these words.

Farouk El-Baz

Scientists had done a lot of research (1) before the first person walked on the moon in 1969, and one of the most important scientists was Farouk El-Baz. He helped to plan where Apollo 11 should land on the moon.



Farouk also taught astronauts which rocks to take from the moon on later visits. After studying the moon, Farouk started studying deserts on the Earth. He used satellites to find rivers

ىحث (1)

رمال (2)

that were under the sand (2), and this work has helped Egypt and other countries to find new water.

Post-reading questions:

- 1. How did astronauts know which rocks to take from the moon?
- 2. How did Farouk El-Baz find rivers under the desert sand?

Lesson 4

هذا الدرس عبارة عن قصيدة والقصيدة لها سمات مختلفة. فيجب أن نعرف ماذا تعنب وما الصفات التب تميزها.

1. What is a poem?

- A poem is a piece of writing that expresses feelings and ideas. The words are chosen for their beauty and sound and are carefully arranged, often in short lines which rhyme.

القصيدة هم نص كتابي يعبر عن المشاعر والأفكار. يتم اختيار الكلمات بناء على جمالها وصوتها، وترتب بحرص غالبًا في سطور قصيرة ذات قافية.

2. What does the word "rhyme" mean?

- It means that the words have the same last sound.

Ex: blue - flew/ cat - bat/ hide - side

Pre-reading question: - Do you like poetry? If so, who's your favourite poet?

Read the poem and look at the pictures. What do you think the poem says about the day?

SB page 40

This poem was written by Sir Cecil Spring-Rice, a British diplomat⁽¹⁾ born on February 27, 1859.

Day

'I am busy,' said the sea.
'I am busy. Think of me
making continents (2) to be.
I am busy,' said the sea.

'I am busy,' said the rain.
'When I fall it's not in vain (3).',
Wait and you will see the grain (4).
I am busy,' said the rain.

'I am busy,' said the air,

'Blowing (5) here and blowing there,
Up and down and everywhere.
I am busy,' said the air.

'I am busy,' said the sun.
'All my planets, every one,
Know my work is never done.
I am busy,' said the sun.

Sea and rain and air and sun, Here's a fellow⁽⁶⁾ toiler⁽⁷⁾ - one, Whose task⁽⁸⁾ will soon be done.



Which words in the poem rhyme?

- 1. vain, rain, grain
- 3. sea, me, be

Post-reading questions:

- 1. What helps the grain to grow?
- 3. What other words rhyme with rain?





دېلوماست (1)	قارات (2)	
عبثًا/دون جدوی (3)	حبة (4)	
تمب (5)	زميل/رفيق (6)	
(7) کادم	مهمة (8)	

- 2. air, there, where
- 4. one, done, sun
- 2. Why is the sea busy?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises



A Remembering A Understanding Applying A Analysing Evaluating Creating

Read and complet	e the text with wo	rds from the followin	g list: ۲۰۲۳ جنوب سيناء
satellites -	did – important –	done – rivers – unim	portant
Scientists had (1)lots of re	esearch before the firs	t person walked on
DOWNSON DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PRO		: (2) scientists	and the second s
The second in the contract of the second of		the moon, Farouk El-E	
- Bouldang pro-to-property process to the contract of the cont		to find (4)	And the second s
2-popular communication and desirable substitute		pt and other countrie	
THE STATE OF THE S	t answer from a, b,		
1. Trees breathe in c	arbon dioxide and b	reathe out oxygen so, t	hey are
for us.			دمیاط ۲۰۲۳
a) bad	b) harmful	c) useful	d) useless
2. If something is	, you don'	t need to plug it in.	۲۰۲۳ قیلیدامسها
a) wireless	b) helpless	c) electric	d) powerless
3 are s	omething that peop	ole can wear to make t	heir teeth straight.
a) Sensors	b) Braces	c) Helmets	d) Toilers
4. To get the noun of	of "abbreviate", add t	he suffix "	
a) -ition	b) -ation	c) -ion	d) -ment
5. Ais a	a special hard hat us	ed to protect the head	d.
a) trainer	b) sensor	c) signal	d) helmet
6. My uncle is a great	at write	He wrote short stor	ies.
a) -er	b) -or	c) -ian	d) -ist
7. Asia is the largest	t		Longman
Carried Control of Control	b) island	c) continent	d) country
8. To get the adject	ive of "wire", add the	suffix "".	
a) -al	b) -er	c) -ful	d) -less
9. Ais	someone who is wo	rking hard.	
a) teller		c) toiler	d) grain
10. My parents don't	allow me to watch	ΓV late. The synonym o	of the word "allow"
is "".			الأستادامس
a) find		c) prevent	
11. "" is a	a seed or seeds from	a plant that you can e	eat.
a) Signal	b) GPS	c) Fellow	d) Grain
		onary. To get the adje	ctive from the verb
"use", add the suf	fix "".		
a) -ation	b) -ity	c) -ful	d) -ment

C Skills



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة نشكل حيد.



1. How to write a biography of a famous scientist

كيفية كتابة سيرة ذاتية لعالم مشمور

Example

"A biography of Dr Farouk El-Baz"

Dr Farouk El-Baz was born on January 2, 1938, in Zagazig. He's an Egyptian space scientist. He studied geology at Ain Shams University. He worked with NASA on exploring the moon and the planning of the Apollo programme.

He studied the geology of the moon, so he advised the astronauts where to land. After studying the moon, Dr El-Baz started studying deserts on Earth. He used satellites to find rivers that were under the sand, and this work has helped Egypt and other countries to find new water. Before this work, Dr El-Baz had also helped to develop special cameras on the space shuttle.

He is married. He has four daughters, and six grandchildren. Now, El-Baz is the Research Professor and Director of the Centre for Remote Sensing at Boston University in Boston.

2. How to write about a trip you had

كيفية الكتابة عن رحلة قمت بها

Example

"My trip to the planetarium"

My name's Reem. I'm interested in studying space. I like watching the stars. Our solar system is wonderful. Last weekend, I went on a school trip to the planetarium in Alexandria. We went there by bus. I was really excited about what I saw there. We saw a really interesting film about Ancient Egypt. We learned about how the Ancient Egyptians had studied the stars to find out when the Nile flooded. They had even used the stars to help them build the Pyramids. They were great engineers. I feel really proud to be Egyptian. After the film, we went to an exhibition about Mars. We knew that a space robot had explored Mars before the end of the 20th century. It landed on Mars in 1997. We had an amazing time.

TEST YOURSELF



Unit 10

Lessons (3&4)



Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

n	n	σ	m	н

problems – easier – easy – increa	ise – disadvantages – reduc
-----------------------------------	-----------------------------

To obmolo mumbous	an immortant most is	a mandaum life la v	makas aur livos				
	an important part ir						
	(1)and more comfortable than before. However, it can cause some (2)the number of						
people working in so							
advantages and (4)		ny experts triink	triat teermology mas				
1-1/12			Hart Broken de				
Read the following,	The second secon		الفيوم ٢٠٢٣				
Dr. Farouk El-Baz	, a brilliant scientist	and adventurer,	was always fascinated				
		200	d dreamt of exploring				
canno eres sono vi fili			n astronaut and joined				
			projects, where he used				
			moon! Farouk started				
			rivers that were under				
			tries to find new water.				
	managed and the second		helped select landing				
			collect rocks from the				
			out the moon's history.				
	. 194 a	a snining examp	ole of how dreams can				
become true with		a a v ala					
A) Choose the correct	Storage Search Contract Contra		n .				
	nt" is the same mea	. 20					
a) bad	b) wonderfulto find rivers t		d) comfortable				
		c) satellites					
a) diagrams	ments helped		a) telescopes				
12 (200)	ments neiped		trios				
a) Egypt c) a & b		b) other countries d) None					
ALSO AND SOME PROPOSITION		u) None	*				
B) Answer the follow		g stav maint					
			n"?				
o. who do you thin	ik called ratouk the	King of the Moo	11 1				

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. Satellites allow us to study the weather	r all around the wor	ld. "Allow to" here
is the opposite of "		(Inches
a) prevent from b) come from	c) persuade	to d) think of
2. A satellite is a machine which		
sent by a satellite.		50.750.5255
Contraction Community Contract	c) receiver	d) toiler
3. My father bought a mouse for		
a) global b) comfortable		
4. To get the noun for a person from the v		
a) -ing b) -ment		
5is a system for finding how t		
using satellites.		,
a) GPS b) Satellite receive	er c) Sensor	d) Signal
6. He must finish his before goin	ig home. It's his woi	k today.
a) helmet b) fellow		
	The factor of the state of the	
Complete the sentences with the corre	ct form of the wor	d(s) in brackets:
4 \\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\	740°C3	
1. We've (eat) too much chocola	ite.	
2. The school team (score) two		tch ended. ۲۰۲۲ المنوفية
	goals before the ma	tch ended. ۲۰۲۲ المنوفية
2. The school team (score) two g	goals before the ma had bought it.	
2. The school team (score) two g 3. Andi (lose) her ticket after she	goals before the ma had bought it. (finish) her home	
2. The school team (score) two g 3. Andi (lose) her ticket after she 4. She didn't go to bed until she 5. The kids have (play) all day.	goals before the ma e had bought it. (finish) her home	
2. The school team (score) two g 3. Andi (lose) her ticket after she 4. She didn't go to bed until she 5. The kids have (play) all day. 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) wo	goals before the ma e had bought it. (finish) her home ords on:	
2. The school team (score) two g 3. Andi (lose) her ticket after she 4. She didn't go to bed until she 5. The kids have (play) all day.	goals before the ma e had bought it. (finish) her home ords on:	
2. The school team (score) two g 3. Andi (lose) her ticket after she 4. She didn't go to bed until she 5. The kids have (play) all day. 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) wo	goals before the ma e had bought it. (finish) her home ords on:	
2. The school team (score) two g 3. Andi (lose) her ticket after she 4. She didn't go to bed until she 5. The kids have (play) all day. 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) wo	goals before the ma e had bought it. (finish) her home ords on:	
2. The school team (score) two g 3. Andi (lose) her ticket after she 4. She didn't go to bed until she 5. The kids have (play) all day. 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) wo	goals before the ma e had bought it. (finish) her home ords on:	
2. The school team	goals before the ma e had bought it. (finish) her home ords on:	
2. The school team (score) two g 3. Andi (lose) her ticket after she 4. She didn't go to bed until she 5. The kids have (play) all day. 5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) wo	goals before the ma e had bought it. (finish) her home ords on:	
2. The school team	goals before the ma e had bought it. (finish) her home ords on: El-Baz"	ework. C+S# āulasāali
2. The school team	goals before the manal had bought it (finish) her home ords on: El-Baz"	ework, ۲۰۲۳ الحقملية عنه نماية الكتاب
2. The school team	goals before the manal had bought it (finish) her home ords on: El-Baz"	ework, ۲۰۲۳ الحقملية عنه نماية الكتاب
2. The school team	goals before the many had bought it. (finish) her home ords on: I-Baz" to Alex with my co	ework. دقهلية الكتاب مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب usins. I had
2. The school team	goals before the many had bought it. (finish) her home ords on: I-Baz" c or d: to Alex with my co	ework. دوهملية الكتاب عنه نهاية الكتاب usins. I had
2. The school team	goals before the many had bought it. (finish) her home ords on: I-Baz" c or d: to Alex with my counted the	ework. دوهملية الكتاب مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب usins. I had d) explored of the meaning.
2. The school team	c or d: to Alex with my co c) invented the	ework. دوهملية الكتاب مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب usins. I had d) explored of the meaning. d) verb
2. The school team	c or d: to Alex with my co c) invented the c meaning ect form of the wo	ework. دوهملية الكتاب مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب usins. I had d) explored of the meaning. d) verb rd(s) in brackets:
2. The school team	c or d: to Alex with my co c) invented the	ework. دوهملية الكتاب مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب usins. I had d) explored of the meaning. d) verb rd(s) in brackets:





Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 41 - 43 WB pages 97-99

Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية **Key Vocabulary**

asteroid (n)	كويكب	railway (n)	سكة حديد
map (n)	خريطة	space robot (n)	روبوت فضائب
public transport (n)	المواصلات العامة	turn (ed) (v)	يلف/يدور
informative text (n)	نص غنب بالمعلومات	exhibition (n)	معرض
achievement (n)	إنجاز	communication (n)	التواصل

Additional Vocabulary

planetarium (n) مرشد

المفردات الإضافية القبة السماوية

guide (n)

Choose and complete: railway - achievement- asteroid - guide

1 Going into a university was my greatest

يهدف هذا التدريب لقباس فهمك

2 The took the tourists to the Pyramids.

3 Egypt has a good system. It has modern trains.

للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عکسما (
amazing (adj)	مذهل	awesome	رائع	ordinary	عادي
bright (adj)	ساطع /لامع	shiny	لاصع	dark	مظلم
nearly (adv)	تقريبئا	almost	تقريبا	exactly	بالضبط
public (adj)	عام	general	عام	private	خاص
win (v)	يفوز/ يكسب	achieve ;	يحقق/ينج	lose	يخسر/يفة

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

	a map	يصنع خريطة	take	>	a photo/video	يلتقط صورة/فيديو
do	a phone call	ينجرى مكالمة هاتفية	robot space vehicle = robot space		bot spacecraft مركبة فضائية آلية	
get	> directions	يحصل على الاتجاهات	look	>	more closely at	ينظر عن قرب إلى

عروف الجر

an hour + السرعة	بسرعة فى الساعة	أنحاء العالم from all around the world بس	
above the Earth	فوق الأرض	go around	يدور حول
at the top	فات القمة	on the Space Station	فى محطة الفضاء
bring/take back to	تعتد ألى	جانب إلى الآخر from one side to the other ي	

Check Point

Choose and complete: back - awesome - get - make

1 I phoned my friend to _____ directions to his house.

2 You have to bring the book to the library before Thursday.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للكلمات ومرادفها وعكسها والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.



ادرس العفردات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

Definitions

التعريفات

Deliminons		
map (n)	خريطة	something you can use to follow directions
sailor (n)	بحثار	someone who works on a ship or sails a boat

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	اللاحقة Suffix	الوظيفة Function	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
achieve (v)	ينجز/يحقق	-ment	تحويل الفعل لاسم	achievement (n) إنجاز
communica	ate (v) يتواصل			communication (n) التواصل
direct (v)	يوجه	-ion	تحويل الفعل لاسم	direction (n) اتجاه
exhibit (v)	يعرض			exhibition (n) معرض
inform (v)	يبلغ	-ative	تحويل الفعل لصفة	informative (adj) غنہ بالمعلومات
sail (v)	يبحر	-or	تحويل الفعل لاسم	sailor (n) بحار
win (v)	يفوز	-er	فاعل	winner (n) فائز

<u>Language</u>

- use ... to + inf. يستخدم ... لکی ...
- They use satellites to get directions.
- The first ... to + inf. Astronauts from the Apollo 8 spacecraft became the first people to see the
- far side of the moon.
- اسم جمع + صيغة تفضيل عليا + one of تذكر صيغة التقضيل العليا وصفة طويلة+ est / the most - the least + صفة قصيرة + est / the + صفة قصيرة It's one of the brightest objects in the sky. It's one of the most difficult questions.
- **Places & Nationalities** أماكن وجنسيات Africa Europe افریقیا أوروبا North Africa امریکا America شمال إفريقيا Asia Russia آسیا روسيا Chinese Spanish صينه/اللغة الصينية إسبانب/اللغة الاسبانية
- Important names أسماء هامة ىينو (كويكب أيولو) Bennu Tabula Rogeriana تابولا روجريانا (كتاب نزهة المشتاق في اختراق الأفاق للإدريسي) مسيار الفضاء كاسنى the Cassini space probe the Hubble telescope تلسكوب هابل the Mediterranean Sea البحر الأبيض المتوسط

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1 My brother is one of the cleverest in his school. a) student b) students c) student's d) students' 2 Lindbergh was the first man over the Atlantic. a) flies c) to fly d) to flying b) fly 3 Tourists sometimes use maps directions to the most important places in Egypt. b) to getting d) getting a) to get c) get

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 5

- Do you think people will live on the moon? Why/Why not?

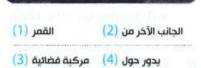
Lina and Injy are at a photo exhibition. What do you think they are talking about?

SB Page 41

Guide This is a very interesting photo. Do you know what it is?

Lina It's the moon (1).

Guide That's right. This is a photo of the moon, but it's an unusual photo. This isn't what we see when we look into the sky at night. This is the far side of (2) the moon.



Injy So, is this the side of the moon we can't see from Earth?

Guide That's right. No one had seen this side of the moon before 1959. That's when 'the Russian spacecraft (3), Luna 3 took the first photos of it. As soon as the photos were taken, they appeared in newspapers around the world. The photos weren't very clear, but everyone was very excited to see them. Then, in 1965, Russia sent Zond 3, another spacecraft to orbit (4) the moon. It took 25 photos and they were much clearer.

Lina Has anyone made a map of the moon?

Guide Good question! From 1966 to 1967, the USA sent spacecraft to orbit the moon and take photos. They used these to create maps of the moon. At the same time, Russia created maps using the photos from Zond 3.

Injy Were all of the photos of the far side of the moon taken by spacecraft?

Guide No, soon after the maps were created, astronauts from the Apollo 8 spacecraft became the first people to see the far side of the moon. They took photos of the moon as they orbited it.

Lina Have any spacecraft landed on the far side of the moon?

Guide Yes. NASA sent a spacecraft to the far side of the moon in 1962, but it broke when it landed. A long time after this, in 2019, a Chinese spacecraft successfully landed on the far side of the moon.

Post-listening question:

- How could Russia create maps of the moon?



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: spacecraft /'speis-kra:ft/ Russia /'rʌ[ə/

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 5

Have you ever used a map?



Read about the history of maps. When did people first use satellites for maps?

WB page 97



بطليموس (1)	
شمال إفريقيا (2)	
بخًار إسبانۍ (3)	
ورقة مسطحة (4)	
سکة حدید (5)	
اتجاهات (6)	la ce e la

100s Ptolemy(1) draws one of the first maps. It shows the area around the Mediterranean.

1100s Al Idrisi, from North Africa (2), draws maps in a book called Tabula Rogeriana. It shows the world as a circle.

1500s The Spanish sailor (3) Juan de la Cosa draws the first map to show America. Gerardus Mercator finds a way to draw the round world on flat paper (4).

1800s Roads and railways (5) make travel easier. Maps become smaller and better.

1950s The first satellite photos are taken of the Earth and maps give much more information.

2005 People start to use maps on their phones and computers. They use satellites to get directions (6).



Note:

Ptolemy / tolemi/ railway / reilwei/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: direction /də rek[ən/

Post-reading question:

- When were the first satellite photos taken of the Earth?

- What do you know about the International Space Station?
- Read the text quickly. Who can stay on the International Space Station?

SB page 42

The International Space Station®

- (1) The International Space Station is a huge spacecraft (2) 70 km above the Earth. It's a place where astronauts live and work when they go into space. Most astronauts stay on the Space Station for about six months.
- (2) The Space Station orbits (3) the Earth every day. It travels at 27,000 kilometres an hour. That means that it goes around the Earth every 90 minutes! It's one of the brightest objects in the sky and you can see it without using a telescope (4).





- (3) Lots of countries worked together to make the Space Station and astronauts from all around the world have stayed on it. The first piece of (5) the Space Station went into space in 1998. Since the first astronauts arrived in 2000, more than 200 astronauts from 19 countries have stayed there.
- (4) Life on the Space Station is different from life on Earth in many ways. In space, washing, sleeping and eating can be difficult! But communication (6) isn't a problem. Astronauts can send emails or make phone calls to their families back home.



station / sterfen/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

communication /kə mju:nı keı[ən/

Post-reading question:

- When did the first piece of the Space Station go into space?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 6

- Why do you think scientists send spacecraft to space?



Put the paragraphs of this informative text in the correct order.

WB page 98

Journey to Bennu

In 2020, a spacecraft landed (1) on Bennu. Bennu is an asteroid (2), which is a large rock that is flying through space. The spacecraft, called Osiris-Rex, took small rocks (3) from Bennu and will take them back to the Earth in 2023.

Then, in 2021, Osiris-Rex left Bennu for its journey home. This will be around 2.3 billion kilometres. because the spacecraft must orbit the sun twice before it can land on the Farth.



هبطت (1)	مذنب (2)
<u>مخور (3)</u>	(4) إنجاز
تقریبا (5)	بأمان (6)
رحلة طويلة (7)	(8) claic

This was an amazing achievement (4). Bennu is more than 300 million kilometres from the Earth but it is very small. It is only 510 metres from one side to the other! Osiris-Rex left the Earth in 2016 and had orbited Bennu for nearly (5) two years before it found a place to land safely (6).

So why has Osiris-Rex made this difficult journey (7)? Scientists think that the rocks from Bennu could help them to understand how the Earth was made. Scientists (8) also think that understanding Bennu will help them know where the asteroid is going. It is possible that it will hit the Earth, although not for many years!



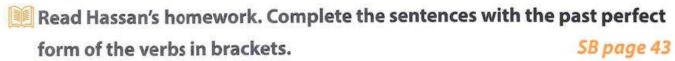
asteroid / æsteroid/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: achievement /ə 'tʃi:vmənt/

Post-reading question:

- What's the main goal of the journey to Bennu?

- Have you ever visited a planetarium?



My trip to the planetarium

By Hassan El-Sayed

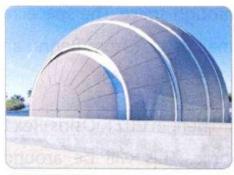
Last year, I went to the planetarium (1) in Alexandria with my cousin, Magdy. I was really excited because I hadn't been to a planetarium before. Magdy lives in Alexandria, so he had visited the planetarium a few times with his family.

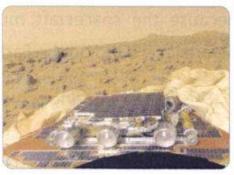
We saw a really interesting film about Ancient Egypt.

We learned about how the Ancient Egyptians (2) had studied the stars to find out (3) when the Nile flooded.

They had even used the stars to help them build the Pyramids.

After the film, we went to an exhibition about Mars. Did you know a space robot (4) had explored Mars before the end of the 20th century (5)? It landed on Mars in 1997.





(1) مبنہ القبة السماوية (2) القدماء المصريون (3) يكتشف (4) مرن (5)

We had an amazing time. We were there all morning, but when we left, we hadn't seen everything! I'd like to go back there again one day.



planetarium /plænə teəriəm/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: excited /ıkˈsaıtıd/

Post-reading questions:

- 1. How do you know that Hassan enjoyed his trip to the planetarium?
- 2. What did Hassan learn about the Ancient Egyptians?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Read and complete the text with words from the follow	ing list	
---	----------	--

دمیاط ۱۲۰۳ دمیا

The International Space Station is a huge (1) 70 km above the Earth. It is a place where (2) live and work when they go into space. Most astronauts stay on the space station (3) about six months. They can send e-mails or make phone (4) to the Earth.

	Chanca	tho	corror	t answer	fram a	a card.
4	CHOO26	FILE	rouser	rallowei	HUIH dy	o, cora.

1 The			
	he word "bright" is "		
a) dark		c) dull	
2. A is a sp	acecraft where peop	le live and work.	Longman
	b) train station		
	You've won the con	npetition. "Win" he	re has the opposite
meaning of "			Longman
a) avoid	b) forget	c) earn	d) lose
4. A is som	ething you can use to	o follow directions.	
a) asteroid	b) map	c) robot	d) guide
a) -or	b) -tion	c) -ment	d) -ative
	mes use space		
travel.		CARLESTON AND	
a) sailors	b) robots	c) guides	d) astronauts
	on, we can use		
cars all the time.			
a) public	b) special	c) private	d) fast
	of the verb "direct", a		
	b) -er		
	linary" is the		
	b) meaning		d) synonym
10. There are nearly f			
	b) lovely		
11. Finally, we went h		15.0	
saw the		3 , 1	
a) courts	b) farms	c) stars	d) fields
12. To get a noun from	THE RESERVE OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PERSON OF		
a) -er	b) -or	c) -ist	d) -ful





Saying when events happened

الإخبار عن موعد وقوع أحداث

تستخدم الروابط التالية عند الإخبار عن وقوع حدث:

at the same time	فى نفس الوقت	before	قبل
as soon as	بمجرد أن	after	نعد

لاحظ استخدام الروابط التب تم ذكرها سابقًا، لترتيب موعد وقـوع الأحـداث:

- 1. I wrote a reply to the email as soon as I had received it.
- 2. Before she returned home, she had bought some bread.
- 3. I was doing my homework. At the same time, my brother was watching TV.
- 4. She found a mistake after she had reread the answer.



Finish the following dialogue:

Merna is asking Nardeen about what she did last weekend.

Merna	: Hi, Nardeen! Where did you go last w	eekend?
Nardeen	n : (1)	
Merna	: (2)	?
Nardeen	: I went with my brother. We went tog	ether to watch the film.
Merna	: (3)	?
Nardeen	:We watched the new film that every	one is talking about.
Merna	: Did you eat anything at the cinema?	
Nardeen	n : (4)	
	before going there.	
Merna	: Did you like the film?	
Nardeen	n : (5)	lt was amazing!

TEST YOURSELF



Lessons (5 & 6) Unit 10



1	Finish the follo	wing dialogue:		
	Nadeen went t	to the park with her f	amily yesterday.	
		deen! I heard you wer		
			?	
		t to the park yesterday		
		did you go with?		
				e all went together.
		ou have fun at the parl		
	(C)	574		
		e had ice cream after		
2	Read and comp	lete the text with wo	ords from the followin	g list: Longman
	arrive	- find - are using - s	torms – have used – cl	imate
	15-15		ortant. Since the late	
			r many things we do e	
			our way. Weather s	
			(3) are mov	
	enable us to kn	ow about the possible	(4) change	
3	Choose the cor	rect answer from a, b	, c or d:	
	1. A/An	is a building where v	ou can see models of th	ne planets and
	the stars.		od carrocc models of th	ic planets and
	a) exhibition	b) mosque	c) planetarium	d) museum
	The second of th		stem and get high fast	- 131
	a) guide	b) robot	c) railway	
		of "public" is "		d) space
	a) common	54		A) a a second
		b) popular	The same of the sa	d) general
			g the suffix "".	B • •
	a) -or	b) -er	c) -ian	d) -ist

5. A tool	cus round the palace	and gardens. It wa	s a great tour.
a) visitor	b) pilot	c) tourist	d) guide
6. A is a	programmed machi	ne that does what	is difficult for humans
to do.			
a) transport	b) robot	c) guide	d) sailor
4 Complete the se	ntences with the co	rrect form of the w	vord(s) in brackets:
1. Hoda did very v	vell in the test becau	se she	(revise) carefully.
2. She	(work) here for	five years now.	
	(finish) eati		
	05, but the train		
5. Dad explained v	why he had	(buy) a new	house.
S Write ONE HUND	ORED and TEN (110)	words on:	
		al Space Station"	
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		
***************************************		921	
***************************************		≅	

Challenging Questi	ons		
Choose the corre	ect answer from a, l	o, c or d:	مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.
1. When somethi	ng is shiny, it isn't		
a) popular	b) common	c) dark	d) bright
2. They are similar	r. They are	the same.	
a) exactly	b) almost	c) really	d) lovely
3. He has lots of i	nformation about m	any subjects. He is	.
a) inform		b) informing	
c) informed		d) informativ	e
C) Illioinica			200

asteroid	کویکب
astronaut	رائد فضاء
astronomer	عالم فلك
braces	تقويم الأسنان
continent	قارة
discovery	اكتشاف
explore (d)	يستكشف
graduate (d)	يتخرجفه
gravity	الجاذبية
in vain	عبثًا/دون جدوى
lecturer	oció
lens	عدسة
orbit (ed)	يدور (فم مدار)
railway	سكة حديد
researcher	باحث
satellite	हैवर व्यांज्ञ
sensor	حهاز استشعار

Language

1. The Present Perfect Tense

- She has tried lots of different sports.
- -We have travelled to many cities around the world.

2. The Present Perfect Continuous Tense

- to understand what it can do with the - For many years, NASA has been trying rubbish that space journeys produce.
- -We have been playing computer games for two hours now.

3. The Past Perfect Tense

- He hadn't published his ideas until just before he died.
- We took a taxi to the beach because the train had already left.
- -She had cooked lunch before her husband arrived.
- After my mum had heard the news, she phoned me.

النظام الشمسم

solar system

spacecraft

مركبة فضائية مهمة (أدائية) منظار/تلسكوب

telescope

VullSp

- I hadn't been to Karim's house since he painted it yellow.

1. Talking about life experiences

A: Have you (ever) used a

telescope?

B: No, I have never used it.

A: What have you been reading recently?

2. Saying when events happened B: I have been reading a short story.

1. I wrote a reply to the email as soon as I had received it.

2. Before she returned home, she had bought some bread.

same time, my brother was watching 3. I was doing my homework. At the

task

wireless winner











Language Functions

Finish the following dialogue:

Logy ar	nd Raghda are taking about their life experiences.	
Logy	: Hi, Raghda! Let's chat about our life experiences, alright?	
Raghda	: Sure! What's the most delicious food you've ever tasted?	
	:(1)	
Raghda	: Oh yes, I love pizza! Have you ever been to a big concert?	
Logy	: (2)	
Raghda	: (3)?	
Logy	: I want to be a dentist. (4)	?
Raghda	: I want to be a singer! What's your favourite game?	
Logy	: (5)	
Raghda	:: I like playing tennis, too.	

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

trainers - helped - helping - helmet - comfortable - sensors

Space technology has (1)..... astronauts and scientists to research stars and planets. It is used to make many of the objects we use every day such as braces, the internet, and the camera (3)..................... Space scientists invented a (3) with small bags of air inside. This made the helmet more (4) for astronauts.

Read the following, then answer the questions:

المنيا ۲۰۲۳ المنيا

The International Space Station (ISS) is a large spacecraft. It serves as a home where astronauts live. It is also a science laboratory. Several countries worked together to build and use the space station. It orbits Earth at 250 miles. It travels at 17,500 mph. This means it orbits Earth every 90 minutes. NASA is using the space station to learn more about living and working in space. These lessons will make it possible to send humans farther into space than ever before.

The space station has made it possible for people to know what is in space. The space station's laboratories allow astronauts to do research that could not be done anywhere else. Space research is even used in everyday life. Scientists also study what happens to the body when people live in zero gravity for a long time. NASA and its partners have learned how to keep a spacecraft working well.

All of these lessons v	vill be important for	our future.	Ipigngam in
A) Choose the correct	t answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. This text is telling	g us about the impor	tance of studying	ı to the
Earth.			
a) laboratory	b) station	c) space	d) spacecraft
The Internationa	I Space Station orbit	s Earth every	hour(s).
a) half an	b) one	c) two	d) one and a half
3. Space research is	s useful to our	life.	
a) daily	b) educational	c) scientific	d) farming
B) Answer the follow	ing questions:		
Why is NASA usir	ng The International	Space Station (ISS)?
6. How do you thinl	k the International Sp	ace Station is imp	ortant for our future?
Choose the correct a	nswer from a, b, c o	r d:	
1. Aa piece look bigger or smal		eras or on glasses,	that can make things
a) spacecraft	b) space station	c) lens	d) researcher
2. A is an in:	strument used to ma	ke distant objects	appear nearer.
			جنوب سيناء ٢٠٢٣
	b) telescope		d) microscope
3. We use the prefix "	"when we m	ean "to do some a	ctions again". دونا
a) il-	b) un-	c) dis-	d) re-

Assess yo progres	"A biography o		rson" 65:84% Solve more exams	85:100% Well done!
			rson"	
**************************************			rson"	
			rson"	
*****			rson"	
			rson"	
	DALD and This (110	· Control of the cont		
Write ONE HUNI	DPED and TEN (110) words on:		
	D	Writing		
5. Waleed	(be) in Londor	n for three year	S.	
4. I'd	(write) my homewo	rk before I we	nt to bed.	6.1
	er was not happy b			
	(doesn't) go to	Alexandria unt	il he had ren	ted a flat the
finished yet.	(Has washed) the	distres for a re	ing time nov	v, sile riasire
	ntences with the c (has washed) the			
a) researcher		c) trai		d) winner
	if you have ar		Acronic	IV la man
	b) helpless		eless	d) hopeless
a) useless	• A Louis Labora		e use t	technology.
	ernet without wires	, this means w		



Media now and in the past

Objectives of the unit

Reading News stories from different sources; a text about the first female broadcaster; an interview about working in the media

Writing A news report; an email asking about working in the media; a biography about a person in the media

Listening A discussion about jobs in the media; a radio news report; different opinions about a story in the news; a conversation about a new restaurant

Speaking Discussing types of news; describing a picture from the news; reporting the news.

Language Reported speech

Life Skills Critical thinking

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التحريبات (SB) تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب Longman) تشير لأسئلة لونجمان

STUDY



Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 44 - 47 WB pages 100 & 101

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- ه قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

A Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية Key Vocabulary

ney recabalary			
magazine (n)	مجلة	the press (n)	الصحافة
media (n)	وسائل الإعلام	trust (ed) (v)	يثق فى
news article (n)	مقال إخبارى	TV news programme	e (n) برنامج إخبارى تلفزيونى
newsreader (n)	قارئ الأخبار	warning (n)	تحذير
pipe (n)	ماسورة/أنبوبة	owner (n)	مالك/صاحب
research (ed) (v)	يقوم بعمل بحث	website (n)	موقع إلكترونى
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	witness (n)	شاهد
cross (adj)	غاضب	fix (ed) (v)	يصلح

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

city centre (n)	وسط المدينة	shopping centre (n)	مركز تسوق
necklace (n)	عقد/قلادة	type (n)	نوع
webpage (n)	صفحة على الإنترنت	flood (n)	فيضان

heck Point

Choose and complete: warning - type - newsreader - necklace

1 There is a sign on the road.

2 Adel bought Salma a gold for their wedding.

3 My brother is a in the radio.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective

(adj) = adjective

(prep) = preposition

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	عرادفها (Meaning) عرادفها	Antonym (Opposite) اكسما
closed (adj)	مغلق	ا locked	open مفتوح
control (v)	يتحكم	manage يدير	
cross (adj)	غاضب	annoyed/angry منزعج/غاضب	سعید/مبتمج happy/cheerful
design (v)	يصمم	plan/draw يخطط/يرسم	يدمر destroy/damage
fix (v)	يصلح	mend/repair يصلح	یکسر break/damage
interested (adj)	مهتم	concerned ممتم	uninterested غير ممتم
local (adj)	محلب	national قومت	international موله/عالمه
normally (adv)	غادة	usually/generally هُمادهٔ	abnormally بشکل غیر طبیعہ
online (adj) ت	عبر الإنترن	onnected متصل	offline غير متصل بالإنترنت

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

cause	> problems	يسبب مشاكل	give	> reasons for	يعطم أسبابًا لـ
get	> news	يحصل على الأخبار	study	> media	يدرس الإعلام
"be/be	come" stuck	يكون/يصبح عالقًا	design	> a website	يصمم موقعنا إلكترونيئا

Prepositions

دروف الحر

			عروف الجر
in the middle of	فۍ وسط	on/in the road	ص فى الطريق
look for	يبحث عن	welcome to	مرحبًا فہ
on a page	على الصفحة	work in radio	يعمل فہ الراديو
on a radio programme	فہ برنامج إذاعہ	work for a newspaper	يعمل فى جريدة
on motorbike	على دراجة نارية		
interested in	مهتم ب	replace with	يستبدل بـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

			The state of the s		
Present		Past simple	Past participle		
burst	ينفجر	burst	burst		
drive	يقود/يسوق	drove	driven		
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken		
steal	يسرق	stole	stolen		





Definitions

التعريفات

burst (n/v) انفجار/ینفجر	break open suddenly, or make something do this
عمل business (n)	a place that makes or sells things or services
camera operator (n) مشغل الكاميرا	a person whose job is to control a television camera
editor (n) محرر	a person whose job is to choose what should be in a newspaper, magazine, etc. and who checks the information and language
journalist (n) صحفه	a person whose job is to research and write news articles
media (n) ועָבער	newspapers, magazines, radio, television, the internet, and other forms of communication that give news
newsreader (n) قارئ الأخبار	a person whose job is to read the news
photographer (n) مصور فوتوغرافہ	a person whose job is to take photographs
pipe (n) ماسورة	a long, thin piece of metal or plastic, used to carry water, gas, etc. often under the ground or through buildings
presenter (n) مقدم/مذیع	someone who introduces the different parts of a television or radio show
radio presenter (n) مقدم برامج إذاعية	a person whose job is to talk on a radio programme
stuck (adj) عالق	unable to move or to be moved
warning (n) تحذير	something that tells you about something dangerous of bad that might happen
web designer (n) مصمم مواقع	a person who decides how a web page should look
witness (n) شاهد	a person who has seen an accident, crime, etc. and can tel the police about it

Suffix اللاحقة

Word d	الكلمة	اللاحقة Suffix	الوظيفة Function	The new word الكلمة الجديدة	
design (v)	تصمع			معمم designer (n)	
own (v)	يملك		was to solid Warnes	owner (n) مالك/صاحب	
photograph (n) صورة فوتوغرافية		-er	تحويل الفعل/الاسم لاسم فاعل	photographer (n) مصور فوتوغرافہ	
present (v)	يقدم			presenter (n) مقدم/مذیع	
read (v)	يقرا			reader (n) قارئ	
edit (v)	يحرر			editor (n) מבرر	
operate (v)	يشغل	-or	تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	operator (n) مشغل	
journal (n)	مٰجلة	-ist	تحويل الاسم لاسم فاعل	journalist (n) صحفه	
normal (adj)	طنتعب	-ly	تحويل الصفة لظرف	normally (adv) بشکل طبیعہ	

Language

would prefer to + (inf.) + rather than + (inf./n.)

یفضل (شیئًا علی شیء آخر)

• Fatma would prefer to work in radio rather than work for a newspaper.

Expressing preference:

التعبير عن التفضيل:

- want to + inf.
 - Fatma wants to study media.
- like/love + to + (inf./v + ing)

- Ali likes/loves taking photos.

would like/love to + inf.

پود أن

يريد أن

يحب

- Samer would like/love to be on TV.
- would prefer to + inf.

يفضل أن

- I would prefer to go for a walk.
- prefer (to + inf. / v-ing)

يفضل

- I prefer working as an editor.

steal rob

يسرق (يأتب بعدها الشبء المسروق)

يسرق (يأتب بعدها الشخص أو المكان المسروق منه)

- The thief stole the wallet and ran away.
- The thief robbed the man/the bank and ran away.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 1

- What job would you like to do in the future?

Listen to Fatma and Reem. Which of the jobs from Exercise 1 do they talk about?

SB page 45





Fatma What job do you want to do when you are older, Reem? I've been thinking about studying media⁽¹⁾. I love writing and I'm interested in the news, so I think a journalist⁽²⁾ would be a good job for me.

الإعلام (1)	صحفہ (2)
متوتر (3)	مصمم (4)

Reem You'd be amazing at that, Fatma! I think you would be good on the TV as a newsreader, too!

Fatma No way! I'd hate to be on TV, I would be so nervous(3).

Reem A radio presenter then? That would be cool! I'd like to do that.

Fatma Yes, I'd quite like to have a radio show, but I think I'd prefer to work for a newspaper.

Online news is the future I think. No one will buy newspapers in a few years. I'm going to study to be a web designer⁽⁴⁾.

Fatma Hmmm, well, maybe I will work for online news then. I'll write the stories and you can design the website!

Reem Great! And your brother can be the photographer, he likes taking photos!

Fatma Good idea!



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

journalist /dʒɜːrnəlIst/

nervous /na:rvas/

Post-listening question: - Do you want to work in media? Why/Why not?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 2

- What type of media do you think is most interesting for news? Why?



Read the texts quickly and answer the questions.

Wednesday 3rd May

FLOOD(1) IN CITY CENTRE

Yesterday morning, part of the city centre was under water for more than six hours after a large water pipe burst(2). The road and all the shops in the shopping centre were closed all day.

A local witness(3) said: "There was a lot of water in the road and the shops. Some people were still trying to drive on the road. I saw a man on a new, blue motorbike(4) who was stuck(5). He was really cross."

The water has now gone and the road is open. They will replace⁽⁶⁾ the pipe today with a new, strong pipe. Some of the shops are still closed while the owners clean their businesses.



فیضان (1)	انفجار أنيوب (2)
شاهد محلی (3)	دراجة بخارية (4)
عالف (5)	يستبدل (6)
ماسورة مياه (7)	عمال (8)

Newsreader: "Welcome to the lunchtime news. This is Mariam El-Shazly. This morning at around 10 am, a water pipe(7) burst outside the Shabana Supermarket. The road is closed while workers⁽⁸⁾ try to fix the pipe. Some of the local shops are flooded and some cars are stuck in the road."

Police Officer: "An old water pipe in the city centre has burst. People are working to fix it as quickly as possible and we hope to open the road soon."

Omar Zaki - Today, 10:30 a.m.



WARNING!

The street outside the shopping centre is closed! There is water everywhere. A big, old red car is stuck in the middle of the road.

DON'T TRY TO GO THERE!



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

flood /flad/

burst /barrst/

pipe /parp/

Post-reading question: - Why do you think the water pipe has burst?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Read and comple	ete the text with word	ds from the follow	ing list:	أسوان ٣
informati	on – media – become	- job - becomes	- solutions	
A journalist co	ollects and presents (1) as a ne	ews story. This car	n be
	gh newspapers, maga			
	2) opportunit			
	newspapers, magazii			
1994 proper and self-filler properties and encountry	d like to (4) a j			
	ct answer from a, b,		§	
	erson who reads the r		or on television	THE INLES
2:	4 4		er d) journalist	L Dings
a) designer	vhere. He isi		77-75	
Z. He call t go ally v	VIICIC. I IC 13	ii iiis iiouse becau	۲۰۲۳ قبا	helewill
a) busy	b) full	c) stuck	d) free	ar damp
	cross because I was lat		1 2	aced
by "".	cross because i mas ia			gman
(F)	b) easy	c) quiet		STATE OF THE PARTY
	get our news from tru			gman
a) websites	73	c) operations		- Carrier
	everything online. The	7.		
a) closed	b) locked	c) offline	d) connected	t
-	site of "interested", we	The state of the s	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
a) in-	b) un-	c) dis-	d) re-	
	mally takes about two	hours. The synony	m of "normally"	
is "".	Foliation of the second			
a) usually	b) abnormally	c) nationally	d) happily	
8. A is so	mething that tells you	about something	dangerous or bad	that
might happen.				
a) newsreader	b) journalist	c) warning	d) witness	
9. My friend works	for a famous daily ne	wspaper. He tries	to true r	iews
everywhere.			Lone	gman
a) look at	b) look for	c) worry about	d) consist	
10. To get the noun f	for a person from the n	oun "journal", we a	dd the suffix"	
a) -or	b) -er	c) -ist	d) -ing	
11. To is to	break open suddenly	, or make somethi	ng do t <mark>h</mark> is.	
a) research	b) control	c) replace	d) burst	

Language



The past simple tense

من الماضى البسيط

Usage

الاستخدام

- We use the past simple tense to talk about actions that started and ended in the past. نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط لنتحدث عن فعل بدأ في الماضى وانتهى أو حدثين متتابعين في الماضى.
- Mazin did his homework two hours ago.

التصريف الثانب للفعل + Subject

Form التكوين I arrived late for school yesterday.

Subject + did not (didn't) + inf.

Amira didn't walk to school. She cycled.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

- فه العاضي in the past - فيذ ago - فيذ in the past - أمس (yesterday) (in 2010)) سنــة في العاضي + in

I bought this laptop in 2019.

I was at the zoo yesterday.

Question

السؤال

Did + subject + inf. ...?

A: Did you watch the match last night?

B: Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

Wh-word (أداة استفهام) + did + subject + inf. ...?

A: What time did you go to bed?

B: I went to bed at 10 o'clock.

Was there + singular/ uncountable noun? A: Was there an accident yesterday?

مل كان يوجد (للعفرد)؟

Were there + plural noun?

B: Yes, there was.

A: Were there floods in Europe last week?

مل كان يوجـد (للجمع)؟

B: No, there weren't.

🤀 Got it 🕯

- (1) Did you (swam) in the sea when you were in Alex?
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (swim) لأننا نستخدم الفعل فب المصدر مع السؤال بـ Did.
- 2).....(Were) there a party at your house last Friday?
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (Was) لأن الفاعل مفرد والجملة في زمن الماضي البسيط.



Language Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the sentences	with the	correct form of	f the word(s)) in brackets:
------------------------	----------	-----------------	---------------	----------------

1. My friends	(not/catch) the bus this morning because the	ney woke
up late.		
2. People	(live) in caves a long time ago.	الوادى الجديد ۲۳
3. Marwa's fath	ner(buy) a big motorbike last week.	(WB)
4	(be) there a lot of people in the mall yesterday?	WB
5. My uncle	(not/drink) coffee when he visited us yesterday	<i>/</i> .
6. He	(plants) vegetables in the garden yesterday.	
7. Did you	(found) your mobile?	Longman
8. He	(build) a sandcastle last summer.	
9. They	(not/travel) to Asia last year.	
10	(Do) you meet your friends last weekend?	
11. We	(weren't) watch the last match.	
12.1	(watched) the film with my friends because I was busy	
studying.		(Longman)
13. The actor	(wear) expensive sunglasses in yesterday's sho	WB)
14. When	(does) your father arrive last night?	
15. He	(opens) the window to let in fresh air this morning.	
16 . l	(forget) my keys at home last Wednesday.	
17. Why	(don't) you come to school yesterday?	Longman
18. She	(sings) her favourite song last concert.	
19. Sandy didn'	t(ate) her sandwiches yesterday.	
20. When my fa	ther was young, he usually (walks) to school.	(Longman)





مناقشة أنواع الأخبار Discussing the types of news

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جعلة الرد









Which type of media do you trust the most? Why?

ما أكثر نوع من وسائل الإعلام تثقين به؟ لماذا؟

I trust a TV news programme because it's always accurate.

أثق في أخبار البرامح التلفزيونية لأنها دائمنا دقيقة.



What type of media do you think is most interesting for news? Why?

برأيك، ما هو النوع الأكثر تشويقًا في وسائل الإعلام؟ لماذا؟

I think online news is the most interesting because people won't buy newspapers. أعتقد أن الأخبار عبر الإنترنت هم الأكثر تشويقًا، لأن الناس لن تشتري الجرائد.





Which job would you like to do in the media? Why?

ما الوظيفة التب تودين أن تعملت بما فت الإعلام؟ ولماذا؟

I would like to be a web designer because I like designing.

أود أن أكون مصممة مواقع لأننب أحب التصميم.



A Remembering A Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

	Hana	and	Karin	210	discussing	tunes	Fnows
ı	riana	and	narin	are	aiscussing	types of	r news.

Hana: Hi, Karin! Do you like watching the news on TV?

Hana: I prefer reading news online or in the newspaper. TV news can be too fast.

Karin: That's true. (3).....?

Hana: Science news is the most exciting. What about you?

Hana: I like sports news, too.

Karin: Do you think it's important to know about all types of news?

happening in the world.

Karin: You're right.





How to write a review of social media

كيفية كتابة نقد عن مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي

- How many people use social media?
- Why do many people use social media?
- What are the disadvantages of social media?
- How does the news on social media affect people?
- What do you think of news on social media?

Writing tips

Think about the topic you are writing about and consider what the most relevant ideas or issues related to that topic.

فكر فم الموضوع المطلوب منك الكتابة عنه مع مراعاة أكثر الأفكار ملاءمة وارتباطًا بالموضوع.

Example

"Social media"

Social media has become the main source of news. These days, sixty-eight percent of people who have internet access get their news from social media. Although this means that we can find news easily and get regular updates on our phones, I think that social media has a negative impact on news and society. The news, which is often bad, can make people stressed and worried. A recent survey found that more than half of Americans say they get anxious and sleep badly because of the news. Furthermore, not everything we read or see on social media is true. If we share it before checking the facts, we might spread false information. In turn, this means that the public stops trusting journalists and the news in general.

oint	Write a paragraph about:
eck Poi	"A short news story you heard"
hec	
	2000-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00

TEST YOURSELF



Unit 11 Lessons (1 & 2)



Tinish the following	ng dialogue:		الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
Nada and Hany a	re talking about a jo	ob advertisement.	allegane in
Restar service takes	ead the newspaper to		
Hany: (1)			nt's in the newspaper?
	t advertisement abou		
Nada: (3)		•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	
	ant job is a good cha		
Nada: (4)		?	
Hany: Yes, I will. V	When can we apply fo	r it?	
Nada: Next Sunda	ay. (5)		?
Hany: Of course.	We can go together.		
2 Read and comple	te the text with wor	ds from the follow	ing list: Longman
do-n	nake – for – newsrea	der – since – nres	enter
	zem hopes to find a a long time. He do		
	be nervous. Instead,		
	, he will work hard to		
by all means.	, he will work hard to	(T) IIIOIE 3	access III IIIs Hew Job
		Service	
	ct answer from a, b,		
1. I was late for wor	k because I was	in a very busy	street in the city
centre.			(Longman)
a) stored	b) allowed	c) stuck	d) started
2. I you w	ill be successful. You'r	re very good.	
a) research	b) trust	c) fix	d) damage
	gazines, television, th		
communication	are all types of	······································	الفيوم "۲۰۲
a) mountain	b) medicine	c) meteorite	d) media
4. Ais a lo	ong, thin piece of met	al or plastic, used to	carry water, gas, etc.
a) warning	b) camera	c) pipe	d) web

5. To get the nou	n for a person from the	verb "operate", ac	ld the suffix "".
a) -ing	b) -ist	c) -er	d) -or
6. He couldn't co	ntrol his feelings. The sy	nonym of "contro	اسوان ۲۰۲۳
a) manage	b) design	c) mend	d) depend
Complete the se	entences with the corr	ect form of the v	vord(s) in brackets:
1. We were stuc	k because the bus	(break) dow	n in the middle of
the street.			(WB)
2. He didn't	(played) the guita	r at the concert.	
3. The teacher	(explains) last l	esson well.	
4. The cat	(jumps) off the tabl	e when it saw the	e mouse.
5. (Wa	s) Kady visit her grandp	arents last weeke	end?
S Write ONE HUN	DRED and TEN (110) w	ords on:	
Witte Otta Hote	"A review of so		
	A Teview of 30	ciai incara	

***************************************	***************************************		
	9		
Challenging Quest	Out the page of the control of the c		200000000000000000000000000000000000000
	correct answer from a,		مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب
S A	shows the op		
a) ab-	b) un-	c) re-	d) both a & b
	w is open. I feel some wi e is a/an	nd coming from t	the window. The word
a) verb		c) adverb	d) noun
	e sentences with the co		
	(finished) reading the no		
	ne zoo and(se		
		0	





Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 48 - 50 | WB pages 102 & 103

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary			لمفردات الرئيسية
award (n)	جائزة	linguist (n)	عالم لغويات
broadcast (n)	بث إذاعى	literature (n)	الأدب
career (n)	الحياة المهنية	novel (n)	رواية
Egyptian radio broadcas	ting (n) الإذاعة المصرية	poetry (n)	الشعر
elementary (adj)	ابتدائب	radio news report (n)	تقرير إخبارى إذاعى
English literature (n)	الأدب الإنجليزى	the Arab world (n)	العالم العربب
Faculty of Arts (n)	كلية الآداب	tourism (n)	سياحة
governor (n)	محافظ/حاكم	tournament (n)	دورة مباريات
guardian (n)	حارس/حامٍ	voice (n)	صوت (أدمى)
housewife (n)	ربة منزل	water park (n)	مـــلامِ مائية

Additional Vocabulary

area (n)	منطقة	explain (ed) (v)	يشرح
building (n)	مېنۍ/بناء	include (d) (v)	یشمل/یتضمن

Check Point

Choose and complete: linguist - poetry - housewife - includes

- 2 The bill _____ tax and service.
- 3 He was already a good, understanding both Latin and Chinese.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للعفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

المفردات الإضافية

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word قلكامة	مرادفها (Meaning) عرادفها	Antonym (Opposite) عكسما
female (adj) انثه	woman/lady سيدة/امرأة	شڪر male
noisy (adj)	اوت عالِ	calm/quiet هادئ
pleased (adj) مسرور	happy/glad سعید/مسرور	unhappy/sad حزین
special (adj) خاص/صميز	unique فرید	شائع common
true (adj) حقیقب	real حقیقہ	false خطأ
warm (v) يسخن	heat يسخن	یبرد/یجمد cool/freeze

Prepositions حروف الجر

click on	ينقر على	on fire	مشتعل به النيران
for free	מجاننا	on the internet	على الإنترنت
need for	يحتاج من أجل	problems for	مشاكل لـ
go into	يذهب إلى	at a water park	فَى مِـلَاهِ مَائِيةً

Choose and complete:

for - on - pleased - common

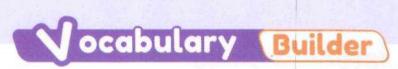
- 1 Click this icon to open the program.
- 2 You don't have to pay anything. It's _____ free.
- 3 He passed his exams. He is very

كيهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للكلمات ومرادفها وعكسها والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Pres	sent	Past simple	Past participle
break down	يتعطل	broke down	broken down
hurt	يضر/يؤذى/يجرح	hurt	hurt





Definitions التعريفات

article (n) مقالة	a piece of writing that is published in a newspaper or magazine	
broadcasting (n) إذاعة	the business of making television or radio programmes	
broadcast (v) يبث/يذيع	to send a programme or some information by radio or TV	
وحافظ governor (n)	a person who rules a city or an area	
linguist (n) عالم لغوى	a person who specialises in languages	
retire (v) يتقاعد	to leave a job or stop working because of old age	
voice (n) صوت بشری	sound produced by a person when they speak	
water park (n) ملاهِ مائية	a large area with swimming pools, water slides, and similar amusements	

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	اللاحقة Suffix	الوظيفة Function	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
broadcast ث	(n/v) بي /مداغا ثب	-er	تحويل الفعل/الاسم إلى اسم فاعل	broadcaster (n) مذيع الراديو
culture (n)	ثقافة	-al		cultural (adj) ثقافہ
education (n) التعليم		-di da	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	educational (adj) تعلیمہ
govern (v)	يحكم	-or	تحويل الفعل إلى	governor (n) محافظ/حاکم
guard (v)	يحرس	-ian	اسم فاعل	guardian (n) حارس/حامِ

Language

take + وقت + to + inf.

يستغرق

- That bridge took three years to build.
- v + ing مفعول + see

يرى (جزءًا من الحدث)

- Tourists said that they saw the big animal swimming in the Nile near Cairo.
- look forward to +(v + ing/n)

يتطلع إلى

I'm looking forward to visiting the park with my friends.

Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 3

- Is there a water park in your city?

Listen to the radio news report. What is it about? Choose the correct answer. SB page 48

News reporter: This is the 12 o'clock news.

Today a new water park⁽¹⁾ opened in Sharm El-Sheikh. The governor⁽²⁾ of the town said the park was the biggest in Egypt and would be great for tourism(3) in the area. The owner of the new park explained that there would be over one hundred new jobs for people at the park. The park has restaurants and the owner is going to build a new hotel next year. The owner also told us that the



السياحة (3) مجانا (4)

park had taken over three years to build. The first fifty visitors today can go to the water park for free⁽⁴⁾.



governor /gʌvərnər/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

restaurant / resteront/

Post-listening questions:

- 1. How many new jobs are there at the park?
- 2. How long did the park take to build?

Listen to five girls talking about a water park. Put what they say in the correct order.

WB page 102

Lesson 3

Narrator:

"I want to go to the new water park," said Lama.

"I went there last week," said Malak.

"I haven't been yet," said Hanan.

"I'm going with my family on Saturday," said Dina.



"Aya won't go because she doesn't like water parks!" said Injy.

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 4

- What do you think of the area where you live?

Listen to some people talking about what they think about the new water park and answer the questions.

SB page 49

Narrator Maged

Journalist What do you think about the new water park, Maged?

I think it's great! I've got a new job working Man in one of the restaurants and I'm looking forward to(1) visiting the park with my friends.



Narrator Heba

Journalist What do you think about the new water park, Heba?

Well, I'm happy now they've finished because Woman there has been a lot of building and it has been noisy!



Narrator Nadia

Journalist What do you think about the new water park, Nadia?

We need more jobs and visitors to the area. I have a shop in the town and so the more tourism⁽²⁾, the better! It looks cool too.



Narrator Kareem

Journalist What do you think about the new water park, -Kareem?

I don't know. I'm not sure that we need more Man water parks. It's getting very busy around this area. But more jobs will be a good thing, we need them for the young people here.



يتطلع الب (1) السياحة (2)

Post-listening question:

- Who hopes that the park will bring more tourism to the area?

Lesson 4

- What's your favourite radio programme?



Read the article quickly and discuss the questions in pairs.

SB page 50

The Mother of All Broadcasters

Egyptian radio broadcasting(1) started in 1934.

It was the first broadcast(2) in Africa and in the whole Arab world(3). Safia el Mohandes was the first female voice(4) on the radio.

Safia was born in 1922 in Cairo. Her father was a famous linguist⁽⁵⁾. He encouraged Safia to read Arabic books and novels⁽⁶⁾. Safia also studied English literature⁽⁷⁾ at the university and graduated from the Faculty of Arts(8) in 1945.

In 1947, Safia joined the Egyptian radio, and she was the first female radio presenter(9). Safia presented programmes for women and for children. Her most famous programme, 'Housewives'(10), presented news, educational(11) advice and drama for the whole Egyptian family.

Safia was very kind and helpful to all radio broadcasters(12).



الإذاعة المصرية (1)	بث إذاعہ (2)
العالم العربہ (3)	صوت نسائب (4)
عالم لغوی (5)	روايات (6)
الأدب الإنجليزى (7)	كلية الأداب (8)
مقدم برامج (9)	ربات البيوت (10)
تعلیمی (11)	مذيعو الراديو (12)
يتقاعد (13)	

She helped everyone, and so she was called 'the mother of all broadcasters'. Safia was head of the radio broadcasting from 1975 until she retired⁽¹³⁾ in 1982.



literature /lItrət[ə^r/

faculty /'fækəlti/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: broadcast /'bro:dkg:st/

Post-reading questions:

- 1. What was Safia's most famous programme?
- 2. Why was Safia called 'the mother of all broadcasters'?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson L

- Who's your favourite radio presenter?

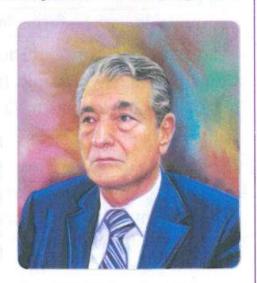


Read the article and write the titles in the correct place. WB page 103

Farouk Shousha is a well-known radio presenter and a famous poet.

Early life

Shousha was born in Damietta in 1936. He went to a nearby elementary school(1). He went to the local library at a very early age, and was able to read many books in the Arabic language. Later on, Shousha went to Cairo University and graduated from the Faculty of Dar al-Ulum in 1956.



مدرسة ابتدائية (1)	الحياة العمنية (2)
الشعر (3)	أمسية ثقافية (4)
حارس/حامِ (5)	جائزة النيل للأدب (6)

Career(2)

Shousha worked as a radio presenter in 1958 and later on as a TV presenter, too. He always liked poetry(3)

and Arabic literature. He presented many programmes like 'Our Beautiful Language' on the radio, and 'Cultural Evening'(4).

Awards

In his programmes, Shousha always talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and its rich literature. For this reason, he was called 'the guardian⁽⁵⁾ of the Arabic language. He won the Nile Prize for Literature (6) in 2016.



elementary /elə mentəri/ graduate / grædzuət/ guardian /'ga:diən/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Post-reading questions:

- 1. Where did Shousha first read Arabic books?
- 2. Where did Shousha graduate from?
- 3. What do you think of Shousha?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

I read a news story, but I don't know if it's true or not. It said that the (1).

would build a new n	vramid It also said t	hat the government	(2) going to
The process of the court of the state of the	50 cm	nem to come to Egy	
		len to come to Egyp	ot and to (4)
our national income		1.0	
2 Choose the correct			
> 1. The is a po			لوادى الجديد ٢٠٢٣
	b) governor		d) writer
2 is the boo			
The Control of the Co		c) Education	
3. In Egypt, the people	e working in govern	ment places usually	at the age
of sixty.			Longman
	b) resign		d) retire
4. The government is	75 76		change "education"
	hen we add the suffi		Longman
a) -al			d) -ist
5. A is a larg	e area with swimmir	ng pools, water slide	s, and similar
amusements الترفيه,			
a) voice	b) hill	c) water park	d) governor
6. He was the best pla	yer in the	•	
a) radio		c) novel	d) poetry
7. The opposite of "sp	ecial" is "".		
a) common	b) attractive	c) private	d) glad
8. To is to se	nd a programme or	some information b	y radio or TV.
a) broadcast	b) include	c) click	d) guard
The house soon wa	rms up with the hea	iting on. The antony	m of "warm"
is "".			
a) heat	b) freeze	c) dry	d) burst
10. Does the price	the transport a	and food?	
a) govern	b) share	c) explain	d) include
11. There is nothing like	e a true friend. The s	ynonym of "true" is "	
a) false	b) real	c) wrong	d) ugly
12. Farouk Shousha is v	vell-known. He's a/a	n radio pre	esenter.
a) unpopular	b) unknown	c) famous	d) unkind

anguage

Reported speech

الكلام غير المباشر (المنقول)

- الكلام المباشر "Direct speech" هو الكلام الذي قاله الشخص بنفسه، ويكون الكلام موضوعًا بين علامتي التنصيص "":
- "It is raining," Ali said.
 - الكلام غير المباشر "Indirect/Reported speech" هو الكلام المنقول على لسان شخص آخر، ولا يوضع بين علامتم التنصيص.
- Nada said, "I'm ill today."

Nada said that she was ill that day.

(Direct speech)

(Indirect/Reported speech)

How to change from direct to indirect:

Statements

الحمل الخبرية

للتحويل من مباشر إلى غير مباشر في الجملة الخبرية نتبع الآتي:

القيول كالآتم:

say/says say/says say to/says to tell/tells said said said to told

نحذف الأقواس.

« نربط بين فعل القول والجملة الخبرية بـ (that)، ويمكن الاستغناء عنها كالأتم:

said + (that) + المتحدث فعل ماض 🕂 فاعــل

Kamal said that he would travel to Aswan the following week.

+ told + مفعول + (that) + لحاف + المتحدث فعل ماضٍ

Manar told me that she was going to watch a film that night.



أننا نستخدم في الكلام غير المباشر (said) إذا لم يذكر المفعول (المخاطب) بعدها. وتحول في الكلام غير المباشر إلى (told) إذا ذكر المفعول (المخاطب) بعدها.

انغير الضمائر حسب المتحدث والمخاطب كالأته:

I > he - she	we >they	our > their
you > I - he - she	my > his - her you > they - we	your > my - his - her - our - their
me > him - her	mine> his - hers	yours> mine - his - hers - ours - theirs

🛐 يتم تغيير الروابط الزمنيــة كالآتــە:

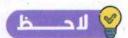
مباشـر Direct	غيـر مباشـر Indirect	مباشـر Direct	غیر مباشر Indirect
next (week)	the following (week)	today	that day
tomorrow	the following day the next day	last (week)	the (week) before the previous (week)
yesterday	the day beforethe previous day	ago	before
tonight	that night	this	that
now	then .	these	those
here	there		

👩 نغير الأزمنـة إلى الماضى الأبعـد كالآتى:

Direct	Indirect	
Present simple: مضارع بسيط	Past simple: ماضِ بسيط	
He said, "I like fish."	- He said that he <mark>liked</mark> fish.	
Present continuous: مضارع مستمر	Past continuous: ماضِ مستصر	
• Marwa said, "l' <mark>m talking</mark> to Sara."	Marwa said that she <mark>was talking</mark> to Sara.	
Present perfect: مضارع تام	Past perfect: ماض تام	
"I've ironed the skirt," said Sara.	- Sara said that she <mark>had ironed</mark> the skirt.	
Past simple: ماضٍ بسيط	Past perfect: ماضِ تام	
Ali said, "I arrived late."	Ali said that he <mark>had arrived</mark> late.	
can - will - may - shall - must "I'll see you later," he said.	could - would - might - should - had to He said that he would see me later.	
(Be) going to: "I'm going to learn French," she said.	(was/were) going to: She said that she was going to learn French.	

Got it ?

- 1 Basmala said that she(is) going to visit her grandmother. - الإجابة الصحيحة (was) لأن فه غير المباشر نستخدم فعلًا ماضيًا.
- 2 My father (said) me that I had to work hard.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (told) لأنه يوجد مفعول (مخاطب).



- إذا كان المخاطب داخل الأقواس نجعله بعد فعل القول عند التحويل إلى غير المباشر.
 - إذا كان فعل القول بعد الجملة الخبرية نجعله قبلها عند التحويل إلى غير المباشر.
- "I'm going to travel to London next month, Adel," said Amani.
- Amani told Adel that she was going to travel to London the following month.
 - الجمل التى تتحدث عن الأشياء التى لا تتغير أو الحقائق الثابتة تظل فى زمن المضارع.
- "The Earth goes round the sun," said the teacher to the students.
- The teacher told the students that the Earth goes round the sun.
 - إذا كان فعل القول مضارعًا، لا نحوِّل الأزمنة وتظل كما هم.
- "I'll see you later," he says.
- He says that he will see me later.



- عند التحويل من غير مباشر إلى مباشر نقوم بعكس الخطوات السابقة كما في الأمثلة التالية:
- 1. The newsreader said that a new sports centre was opening that weekend.
 - The newsreader said, "A new sports centre is opening this weekend."

تم:

ه تحويل (was opening) إلى (is opening).

ترك فعل القول كما هو.

- وضع الجملة بين علامات التنصيص.
 - ه تحویل (this) الی (this).
- 2. Hassan's mum told me that there would be a lot of rain that day.
 - Hassan's mum said to me, "There will be a lot of rain today."

تم:

ه تحویل (would) إلی (will).

• تحويل فعل القول (told) إلى (said to).

- وضع الحملة سن علامات التنصيص.
- ه تحویل (that day) إلى (today).

🔀 Got it 🤋

- 1 Heba (said) me that it had been a busy day.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (told) لأنه يوجد مفعول (مخاطب).
- 2 Nadia said that she (thinks) the film was exciting.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (thought) لأنه في غير المباشر نستخدم فعلًا ماضيًا.



Language Exercises



ARemembering A Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

1. The governor said that the tower(will) be the tallest in Africa	سوهاج ۳۰۲۳	
2. A witness (said) the police that the building was on fire.	الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣	
3. He said that he(be) eating.	البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٣	
4. Sagda said that she (has) met the new manager.	Longman	
5. Hamza told me (this) he had visited his uncle in the village.	Longman	
6. Mostafa said that he (be) tired.	شمال سيناء ٢٠٢٣	
7. Leila told her friend that she (can) swim.		
8. Aya (told) she wanted to play with her toys.		
9. Sami said that he had seen a bird in the park (yesterday).		
10. "The sun (was) shining brightly," said Sara.		
11. Walid said that he (can't) go to school because he was ill.	(Longman)	
12. My mum (told) me, "We will go to the club tonight."		
13. Nour said that she (will) draw a picture for me.		
14. Lina said, "It is my birthday (that day)."		
15. Leila said that she (is going) to visit her grandma the following	ng week.	
16. Aya told me(I) would help me clean up the toys.		
17. Kareem said that he(see) a bird on the tree the day before.		
18. Malik said (this) he would share the sandwiches with his sister.		
19. They said that their brother (write) that book the day before		
7.1	أبناؤنا فَمَ الخَارِجِ ٣٣	
20. Youssef said that he (visit) his uncle the following day.	الفيوم ٢٠٢٣	





Write it right

How to write a biography

كيفية كتابة سيرة ذاتية

Example

"A biography of Farouk Shousha"

Farouk Shousha was born on January 9th, 1936. He was an Egyptian poet. He presented the popular television programme Umsiya Thaqafiya (Cultural Evening) from 1977 through 2006. Shousha was born in Damietta, where he went to Kuttab. Shousha read poetry in his free time. He began reading Arabic poetry at the local library, where he read everything from the pre-Islamic period through modern poets. Shousha joined Dar al-Ulum, where he was known as the Students' Poet. After he had graduated, he began working as a radio presenter. He became the head of the Egyptian Radio. Then he moved to television and was named "the guardian of the language". He died on October 14th, 2016.

Example

"A biography of Safia el Mohandes"

Safia el Mohandes was the first female voice on the radio. She was born in 1922 in Cairo. Her father was a famous linguist. He encouraged her to read Arabic books and novels. Safia also studied English literature at the university and graduated from the Faculty of Arts in 1945. In 1947, Safia joined the Egyptian radio, and she was the first female radio presenter. She presented programmes for women and for children. Her most famous programme, 'Housewives', presented news, educational advice and drama for the whole Egyptian family. She was very kind and helpful to all radio broadcasters. She helped everyone, and so she was called 'the mother of all broadcasters'. She was head of the radio broadcasting from 1975 until she retired in 1982.

TEST YOURSELF





Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

told - about -	get - said -	journalist - grow

We like our social studies teacher very much. He always says to us, "Everyone must be careful (1) the job they choose." Last week, he said to me, "Which job will you prefer when you (2) up?" I (3) him that most people, especially the famous.

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Damietta is famous for its great thinkers, writers and poets. One of them is Farouk Shousha, who is a well-known poet and a famous radio presenter. He was born in Damietta in 1936. At his early age, he used to go to the local library and was able to read a lot of books in the Arabic language. In 1956, he graduated from the faculty of Dar al-Ulum at Cairo University.

Farouk Shousha always liked poetry and Arabic literature. He worked as a radio and a TV presenter. He presented many famous programmes which most people liked so much, like "Our Beautiful Language" and "Cultural Evening", which both lasted for about 15 years without stopping. In his programmes, he talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and showed its rich literature. For this reason, he was called "the guardian of the Arabic language". Shousha won the Nile Prize for Literature in 2016. We all still remember his great works, even after his death.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

ciroose tire co	receamoner mom	۵, ۵, ۵	
1. The main ide	a of the passage is	about	
a) New Dami	etta	b) Cultural E	evening
c) Farouk Shousha		d) Our Beautiful Language	
2. The underline	ed word "its" in the	third paragraph i	refers to
a) the Arabic language		b) the English language	
c) TV programmes		d) radio programmes	
3. Farouk won t	he Nile Prize for Lit	terature in	
a) 1936	b) 1956	c) 2016	d) 2000
Answer the fol	lowing questions	•	

B)

- 4. Name a famous programme that Farouk Shousha presented.
- 5. Summarise the second paragraph in the text in one sentence.....
- 6. Where did Farouk use to read books in the Arabic language when he was voung?.....

Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c	or d:	ři.
1. A/An	s a person whose job	is to understand, des	cribe, and analyse
a language.			Longman
a) engineer	b) discoverer	c) foreigner	d) linguist
2. To "" is to	leave a job or stop w	orking because of old	d age.
a) heat	b) govern	c) broadcast	d) retire
3. Egyptian radio	started in 1934	4. It was the first in Afr	ica and the whole
Arab world.			Longman
a) news reading	b) photography	c) broadcasting	d) writing
4. I don't understand	d what you mean. Ple	ase,it again	
a) explain	b) build	c) broadcast	d) move
To get the opposi	te of "happy", add the	prefix "".	
a) re-		c) un-	d) dis-
	ad" as "" is to		
a) cool	b) warm	c) freeze	d) explain
Complete the sent	ences with the corre	ect form of the word	(s) in brackets:
1. He (tells	s) me that his best frie	nd at school was Ahn	ned. ۲۰۲۳ الوادي الحديد
	nat the event		
	her (be) bea	20	
	old) Samira, "I will go t		
	ey (don't go		before. (Longman)
Mrite ONE HUNDR	ED and TEN (110) w	ords on:	
	"A famous person	in the media"	

Challenging Question	FD		
**			
1 Choose the co	rect answer from a,	b, c or d:	مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب
1. "Special" and	'unique" have a/an	meaning.	
a) opposite	b) similar	c) antonym	d) far
2. We wear jacke	ets in winter to keep v	varm. "Warm" here is a	/an
a) adjective	b) adverb	c) verb	d) noun
2 Complete the s	entences with the co	rrect form of the wor	d(s) in brackets:
	as doing) my homew		Longman
	hat she(pre		(Longman)
	THE STATE OF THE S	ported for the tree to	(株式の) 日子 かままり 1.5 mm (中央 1.5 mm) (中央 1.





Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 51 - 53 | WB pages 104 - 106

Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية **Key Vocabulary**

according to (prep)	وفقًا لـ	nature reserve (n)	محمية طبيعية
festival (n)	ممرجان	news story (n)	قصة إخبارية
film (ed) (v/n)	يصور فيلمـُا/ فيلم	path (n)	طريق/ممر
apparently (adv)	بوضوح/ فيما يبدو	climber (n)	متسلق
government (n)	الحكومة	skill (n)	م هارة

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

decide (d) (v)	يقرر/يحدد	Lebanese (adj)	لبنانب
facts (n)	حقائق	spelling (n)	هجاء
garage (n)	جراج (مكان انتظار السيارات)	water tower (n)	برج المياه
national news (n)	أخبار وطنية	sports star (n)	نجم ریاضہ

Choose and complete: according - garage - path

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للعفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

- 1 My father always leaves our car in a nearby
- 2 We have English and maths to the timetable.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Oppos	ite) اعکسما
famous (adj)	مشمور	well-known	معروف	unknown	غير معروف
local (adj)	محلب	national	قومى	international	مهالد
prefer (v)	يفضل	choose	يختار	dislike	يكره
unfortunately	(adv) لسوء الحظ	unluckily	لسوء الحظ	fortunately	لحسن الحظ

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

do	>	an interview	يقوم بإجراء مقابلة	havo		a meeting	لديه اجتماع
get	>	lost	يضل الطريق	have	1	a picnic	يقوم بنزهة خلوية
go on	>	the website	يدخل على الموقع	put on	>	the news	يضع على الأخبار

Prepositions			حروف الجر
ask for	يطلب	reply to	رد علی
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ	report on	يىلغ عن
for a while	لفترة من الوقت	work for	يعمل لدى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Pre	sent	Past simple	Past participle
spend	يقضہ/ینفق	spent	spent
take back	تسيعتد	took back	taken back



ادرس المفردات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Definitions

التعريفات

festival (n) احتفال/مهرجان		a day or time for people to celebrate something
interview (n) مقابلة/حوار		if you interview someone, you ask them questions about themselves
meeting (n) اجتماع		a situation when groups of people meet to discuss something
teenager (n) مراهق		someone who is between 13 to 19 years old

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	اللاحقة Suffix	الوظيفة Function	ديدة The new word	الكلمة الج
photograph مية	(n) صورة فوتوغراذ	-er	تحويل الاسم/الصفة	photographer (n)	مصور
teenage (adj	سن المراهقة (1 (care)	لاسم فاعل	teenager (n)	مراهق
festive (adj)	احتفالب	-al	تحويل الصفة لاسم	festival (n)	ممرجان

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 5

- What do people do at the food festival?

Listen to three teenagers talk about a festival. Tick the two things that they talk about in the photographs.

SB page 51

Adel Fawzi, did you know that they are having a new food festival⁽¹⁾ next month in our village?

Fawzi Really? That's good. Why are they having it?

Adel According to⁽²⁾ the newspaper, it is to celebrate⁽³⁾ the opening of a new restaurant. It's opening next to the water tower.

Fawzi That's good news.

Adel Have you heard that they think more tourists will visit the village, too?

Fawzi Yes, tourists like visiting traditional villages like ours. What type of restaurant will it be?

Wael Apparently⁽⁴⁾ it's going to be a modern Egyptian restaurant.

Adel Wow, it'll probably be expensive. But we should go to the food festival.

Fawzi Yes, all our friends want to go, too.

Wael I heard that you need to buy a ticket. I'll find out how much it is.

Fawzi Good idea.











مهرجان (1)	طبقًا لـ (2)
يحتفل (3)	على ما يبدو (4)



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

celebrate /selibreIt/ apparently /əˈpærəntli/

Post-listening questions:

- 1. Would you like to attend a food festival? Why/Why not?
- 2. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

Pre-reading question:

- What skills do you need to get the job you dream of?

Read the magazine article. What job do you think Shaimaa does?

SB page 52

(1) What is a normal working day like?

I start my day early. We have a meeting at 8 am and we decide which new stories we will put on the news that day. After that, I normally (1) spend a long time on the internet and talk to people on the phone. Then I go out with a camera operator(2) and we do some interviews(3) and I write about what I'm going to say.



- بصورة طبيعية (1)
- مشغل الكاميرا (2)
- مقابلات صحفية (3)
- نقوم بعمل تقرير (4)

(2) What do you like about your job?

I like meeting different people and finding out more about the world and the things that are happening in it. At first, it was exciting to be on the TV, but it is normal for me now!

(3) What don't you like about your job?

I don't like the long hours and sometimes we report(4) on bad news and that can be very difficult.

(4) How did you get your job?

I studied media and Arabic at university and then I worked for a newspaper for a while. Someone at the newspaper thought that I would be good on TV and told me about a job working in TV news.

(5) What skills do you need to do your job?

I think you have to be interested in the world around you and also like meeting lots of different people. You need to be good at listening and writing.



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

normally /'no:məli/

interview /'intəvju:/

Post-reading question:

- Do you think that Shaimaa will accept the job in TV news? Why/Why not?

Lesson 6

- What job do you want to do in the future?

Read the article and write the sentences a-c in the right places.

WB page 105

I work for an English language news website⁽¹⁾. I started at a newspaper, but I think more people read news online now, so I prefer this job. Lots of different journalists⁽²⁾ send me their articles, and I have to decide which ones are the most important. These will be the first ones that our readers will see.



صحفيون (2) موقع علم الإنترنت (1) الإعلام (4) حقائق (3)

Before the article goes on the website, I also have to check the facts⁽³⁾ that are in it. I look at two or three different websites that I trust to do this. Then, I check

the writing. Sometimes, there are spelling mistakes or the language is not very easy to understand. It is my job to make the article as easy to understand as possible. Finally, I have to choose photographs to go with the article. Sometimes a photographer sends these, but usually we get them from other websites.

I studied English and media⁽⁴⁾ at university. First, I wanted to be a journalist, but then I decided that I preferred this job. It is very interesting because I can look at so many people's articles.



journalist / dz3:nəl-ıst/

تعلم كيفية <mark>نط</mark>ق الكلمات التالية:

language / længwidz/

Post-reading questions:

- 1. What's the job of the article's writer?
- 2. What do you think of this job?

Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

SB page 53

esson '

Last week, we decided to spend the weekend in Sharm El-Sheikh. We took our friend's car. Unfortunately, the car broke down. We asked a mechanic from the nearest village to come as soon as possible. He checked the car well. Then, the mechanic decided to take the car back to the garage. It was pulled all the way to our city!





Work in pairs.

SB page 53

A) NEW NATURE RESERVE

This weekend, a new nature reserve will open on the coast. The reserve will protect many fish, birds and sea animals, including turtles. The nature reserve will be a good place for families to walk and have a picnic. A scientist said, "We hope people will visit to learn more about the environment of our wonderful coast."

B) CLIMBERS FOUND!

Two men who got lost when climbing a mountain have been found. The climbers took the wrong path by mistake and then one of them fell and broke his leg. They were on the mountain for four days. A police officer said, "They are tired and hungry but happy to be home."

Complete the talk by a camera operator called Salma with these words.

WB page 106

"I've always liked taking photographs. However, I never wanted to be a photographer. I have always wanted to be a camera operator. It is a great job and it is always different. Today, I am working at a sports stadium. Tomorrow, I will be working inside. I am filming a meeting with some important people! I have never met the Governor of Cairo before. I am looking forward to it!"

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

said - Apparently -	traditional -	- tradition -	told - festival

٢				
			next week. The go	
	celebrate the openin			
	city. They will also vi	sit our (2)	restaurant that se	rves Egyptian food.
	Journalists (3)	that we had to	buy a ticket to enter	it. (4), it's
	going to be a wonder	ful one.		
1	2 Choose the correct	answer from a. h. c	ord:	
	1. "" means a			
i			c) Normally	
	2. I walked down the			
	a) teenager			d) path
	3. A/An is so			ld.
	a) teenager	b) adult	c) climber	d) governor
	4. To form the noun fo		otograph", add the s	uffix "".
	a)-ion	b) -or	c) -er	d) -ist
	5. "Prefer" can be the	same meaning as "		
	a) choose	b) dislike		d) prevent
	6. Her dream was to b	e a famous singer. T	he antonym of "famo	ous" is "
	a) local	b) national	c) unknown	d) well-known
	7. I bought a camera t	to the who	ole party.	
	a) push	b) drag	- 10-10 m	d) film
	8. To form the noun o	f "festive", add the s	uffix "".	1920
	a) -ion	b) -er		d) -al
	9. If you son			
	a) interview	b) prefer	c) choose	d) decide
	10. Unfortunately, the	old man wasn't save	ed. "Unfortunately" ca	in be replaced
	by "".		N	Longman
			c) Interestingly	d) Lately
	11. Sorry, I took your u	72,651 32		al) have
	a) on	b) for	c) at	d) by
	12. A nature	is an area of land	that is protected to	r some endangered
	species.	h) recense	el procorvo	d) service
	a) serve	b) reserve	c) preserve	W) Sel VICE





Reporting news

الإبلاغ عن الأخبــار

A) Reporting news

الإبلاغ عن الأخبــار

- Have you heard that an Egyptian scientist found a cure for COVID-19? - هل سمعت بأن هناك عالمًا مصريًا وجد علاجا لفيروس كورونا؟
- Did you know that Mohammed Salah scored 3 goals in the last match? - هل علمت أن محمد صلاح أحرز ٣ أهداف في المباراة الأخيرة؟
- I heard that there would be a lot of rain today.
 - أنا سمعت أنه سوف تكون هناك أمطار غزيرة اليوم.
- Apparently, two men who got lost when climbing a mountain have been found. - على ما يبدو أنه تم العثور على شخصين كانا قد ضلا أثناء تسلق جبل.
- According to the newspaper, there were lots of cars waiting on the road to Tahrir Square. - وفقًا للأخبار، كان هناك العديد من السيارات المنتظرة على الطريق المتجه لميدان التحرير.

B) Responding to n	ews		الرد على الأخبــار
Really?	حقًا؟	Wow!	!919
I didn't know that.	لم أكن أعلم ذلك!	That's good news.	إنها أخبار جيدة.
That's bad news.	إنها أخبار سيئة.	Good idea.	فكرة جيدة.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

WB

Noha is telling Hania about Randa's cousin, the famous newsreader.

Noha: Did you know that Randa's cousin is a famous newsreader?

Noha: Apparently, he reads the local news every night at 10 p.m.

Hania: (2) ?

Noha: According to my mother, he is very good at his job.

Hania: (3).....

Noha: I heard that he might work for the national news soon.

Noha: (5).....?

Hania: No, I haven't heard that he is visiting Randa tomorrow! We should try to meet him.

Takeatest

Finish the following dialogue: Saher is telling Wessam about the scientist who is visiting their school to give a talk about a recycling project.

give a	talk about a recycling project.	
Saher	: Have you heard the latest news?	
Wessar	n: (1)	
Saher	: According to the head teacher, a famous scie	entist is visiting our school.
Wessar	n: (2)	! Why?
Saher	: He is going to give a talk to the school.	
Wessar	n: That's good news. (3)	?
Saher	: He is going to talk about a recycling project	t.
Wessar	m: (4)	?
Saher	: We should join this project.	
Wessar	m: (5)	·······••

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

to - with - mistakes - facts - tells - says

I work for a news website. My job is to check the article and the (1).

that are in it. My manager always (2) _____ me that I should look at two or three websites that I trust to do this. Sometimes, I find spelling (3) _____.

I must make the article easy to understand and choose photographs to go (4) _____ the article.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The state of the s			
1. A is a situa	ation when group	s of people meet to o	discuss something.
a) nature reserve	b) meeting	c) festival	d) teenager
2. Mohammed Salah i	s a sports star. He's	s very all ov	er the world.
a) infamous	b) ugly	c) unknown	d) famous
3. We add the prefix".	to "fortu	nately" to get the op	posite meaning.
a) in-	b) ab-	c) dis-	d) un-

4. A is a day	or time for people t	o celebrate somet	hing.
a) festival	b) holiday	c) picnic	d) weekend
5. Most local people so	upport the idea of tr	affic-free streets. T	he synonym of "loca
is "			= gr - 7
a) famous	b) international	c) global	d) national
6. He had no map who	en he went walking	in the forest, so he	elost.
a) did	b) gave	c) had	d) got
Complete the sente	nces with the corre	ect form of the wo	ord(s) in brackets:
1. She said she	(be) upset and sh	ne didn't stop cryir	ng.
2. Faten told us that sl	he (has) alr	eady received a re	ply to her complain
3. He added that he	(can) see me	e at 2:30.	
4. Hamza told me	(this) he had v	risited his uncle in	the village.
5. He explained that h			
	×	121121 (210 2121	
Write ONE HUNDRE	D and TEN (110) wo	ords on:	
	"A job in the	media"	
***************************************	***************************************	*****************************	***************************************
*************************	***************************************		
***************************************		***************************************	***************************************

*******************************		•••••	
***************************************	*******************************		
Challenging questions			
Choose the correct a	answer from a b c	or d:	باتحال غيام نامني
1. It's the			لجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.
a) photograph	who is usic to take	b) photographs	
c) photographer		d) photographing	r
2. She prefers tennis,	but she doesn't		
The state of the s		c) refuse	d) choose
3. The words "unfortu	unately" and "unluck	ily" are	
		c) opposite	d) similar

/ocabulary

پث إذاعی
الفجار
غاض غاض
īalion
مهرجان
विंद
محافظ/حاكم
طحقی
مقال إخباري
تقرير اخبارى
بشكل طبيعي
مالك/ماحب
र्चराकु/कर्ज
مصور فوتوغرافب
ماسورة/أنبوبة
يحل محل…/يستبدل
يقوم بعمل بحث
مهارة
وسائل التواصل الاجتماعم
يسرق
الصحافة
سياحة
يسخن/ترتفع درجة حرارته
تحظر
ملاهب مائية
वयक्व वहाँबर

Language

1. The past simple tense

- This man stole a brown leather bag.
 Manal didn't wash the dishes.
 - Did Andrea travel to Spain last year?
 - Where did you go last weekend?

2. Reported speech

Indirect	Past simple ماض بسیط He said thất he liked fish.	Past continuous நம் வய்வு - Marwa said that she was talking to Sara.	Past perfect ماضِ تام Sara said that she had ironed the skirt.	Past perfect ماض تام Ali said that he had arrived late.	could - would - might - should - had to - He said that he would see me later.
Direct	Present simple البييط • He said, "I like fish."	Present continuous مضارع مستفر • Marwa said, "ا'm talking to Sara."	Present perfect متارع آلم • "ا've ironed the skirt," said Sara.	Past simple ماض بسيط • Ali said, "ا årrived late."	can - will - may - shall - must - "I'll see you later," he said.

III V

- 1. Discussing the types of news
- Which type of media do you trust the most? Why?
- I trust a TV news programme because it's always accurate.
- What type of media do you think is most interesting for news? Why?
 - I think social media is the most interesting because it has too many sources.
- 2. Reporting news
- Have you heard that an Egyptian scientist found a cure for COVID-19?
- Apparently, two men who got lost when climbing a mountain have been found.
- According to the news, there were lots of cars waiting on the road to Tahrir Square.

موقع إلكتروني



Al-Adwad Test on Unit







Language Functions

L	Complete the following dialogue:
	Zeinab is telling Khadija that a group of Egyptian scientists found a cure

for COVID-19.

Zeinab: Have you heard that a group of Egyptian scientists found a cure for COVID-19?

Khadija: (1) ?

Zeinab: According to the newspaper, they were working on this project for two years.

Khadija: (2)......

Zeinab: Did you know that the government will produce it all over the country?

Khadija: (3)......

Zeinab: Apparently, it achieved great results.

Khadija: (4).....?

Zeinab: I heard that it will be for free for all people!

Khadija: (5)......

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

told - garage - broke - sat - Unfortunately - said

lalways go to work in my own car. Yesterday, I decided to take a bus. (1) the bus (2) down. The driver called a mechanic from the nearest village and (3) him that he should come as soon as possible to check it. He decided to take it to the (4) as soon as possible, so he pulled it.

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Fatma Nabil Abdel Azim Hassan Al-Samni is the first TV presenter appears on screen with a headscarf, wearing a dark suit coat and an off-white hijab that covered her hair and neck. She was delighted to appear on the 12 noon news broadcast. "It is a historic day for me," she said. Fatma graduated in English literature from Ain Shams University. She has worked as a news editor for Egyptian State Radio. She moved to state television in 2002 and became head news editor in 2005. She appeared in 2012 with the headscarf (hijab), and accordingly, she is the first veiled newsreader in Egypt. After that women are allowed to appear on TV wearing a headscarf or hijab.

Fatma Nabil is the daughter of Nabil Abdel Azim Hassan Al-Samni, the editor of the Egyptian television, and the granddaughter of Abdel Azim Hassan Ali Al-Samni, known as Sheikh Farid Al-Sindoni, the reader of the Holy Quran Radio.

371			
Al-Samni, known as	Sheikh Farid Al-Sind	doni, the reader of the	Holy Quran Radio.
A) Choose the corr	ect answer from a,	b, c or d:	
1. This text is a kir	nd of a		3
a) letter	b) poem	c) story	d) biography
2. She started to v	work in the media o	n the	
a) television	b) radio	c) newspaper	d) office
3. The underlined	word "delighted" m	eans	8
a) happy	b) sad	c) calm	d) ugly
B) Answer the follo	wing questions:		
4. What is Fatma's	father's job?		
5. What is "hijab"?			
6. How do you thi	nk Fatma felt when	she wore the headsca	arf?
J			
C	Vocabulary	and Structure	
Choose the correct	answer from a, b,	or d:	
1. A is a pe	erson whose job is to	o research and write	news articles.
a) designer			
	() 1	, radio, television, the	internet, and other
	ication that give ne		
a) Meeting			d) Festival
The second second		w that I didn't pass m	
	177	c) warm	
		it with another go	
a) heat	b) govern	c) replace	d) steal

A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH	ess your rogress	< 50% Study again	50:	64%	65:84°	Marine Committee	35:100%
• Ass	ess your						

		***************************************			******************************	*************	
			************	**************	*************	**************	
	*******************	***************************************	***********	*************	****************	************	
		**************		***********	***************		***********
*********		*****************	************	***********	************		************
	****************	*****************	**********	***********	************	***********	***********
******************	*******************************	**************			**************	***********	
*************************	***************************************	*****************		***********		************	
******************	***************************************	**************	*******			*************	
*****************	******************				***********	************	
***************************************			***********	************			
***************************************	***************************************	******************			***********		
***************************************	***************************************	*************	************	*********	•••••		
	"A re	eview of y	our dre	eam job	"		
							L - L M F
Write ONE HU	NDRED and	TEN (110)	words				
		D	Writi	ng			
5. My friend sa							et his und
4. Mayar							
3. Nelly said th							
2. Walid said th						ne was ill	
1. Three men						(3) 111 (3)	acnets.
SOUTH DIFFE FILE	sentences v		rrect f	THE STATE OF	the word		
	b) -	al		c) -ic	the sum	d) -ive	
a) -ous	ajective non	r caacatio	II, WE	an auu		, 11	"
		ordinarily n "educatio			arently		



Into the future

Objectives of the unit

Reading A text about future technology; a blog about personal goals; an article about future cities in

Africa; a text about driverless cars

Writing A paragraph about personal goals and ambitions; a short report about a future technology

Listening A conversation about future predictions; a radio programme about learning in the future;

students talking about their goals; talking about a city in the future

Speaking Making predictions; discussing future ability; discussing personal goals; expressing certainty

and uncertainty about the future

Language will/won't be able to

Life Skills Critical thinking and self-management

الشير الأسئلة كتاب التدريبات (SB) تشير الأسئلة كتاب الطالب (Longman) تشير الأسئلة لونجمان المنافئة الم





Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 54 - 57 | WB pages 107 & 108

المفيدات المناهدة



- 💿 قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- 💿 قم باختبار حفظك للعفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

key vocabulary			تمعردات الرئيسية
3D (three-dimensional) (ac	ثلاثم الأبعاد (jj	hero (n)	بطل
apply (y-ied) for (v)	يتقدم بطلب	floating farms (n)	مزارع عائمة
challenge (d) (v/n)	یتحدی/تحد ً	pandemic (n)	جائحة/وباء
coronavirus (n)	فيروس كورونا	percent (n/adv)	فى المائة
cycle lane (n)	مصر (حارة) للدراجان	remind (ed) (v)	يُذكر
device (n)	جهاز	robotics engineer (n)	مهندس روبوتات
energy (n)	طاقة	temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة
e-sports (n)	رياضة إلكترونية	transport (n)	مواصلات/نقل
exist (ed) (v)	يتواجد	virtual reality (n)	الواقع الافتراضي
firefighter (n)	رجل الإطفاء	sea level (n)	مستوى البحر

يختفى

Additional Vocabulary

disappear (ed) (v)

المفردات الإضافية

أوتوبيس كهربائب

business meeting (n)	اجتماع عمل	during (prep)	أثناء
change (d) (v)	يغير	oil (n)	زيت/بترول
charge (d) (v)	يشحن	passport (n)	جواز سفر
check (ed) (v)	يفحص	taste (d) (v)	يتذوق
energy (n)	طاقة	renewable (adj)	قابل للتجديد
farmland (n)	أرض زراعية	equipment (n)	معدات

Choose and complete: pandemic - percent - during

2 Shaza swims every day the summer.

electric bus (n)

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective

(v) = verb

(adv) = adverb

(prep) = preposition (conj) = conjunction لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite	عکسما (ع
advantage (n)	ميزة	benefit	فائدة	disadvantage	عيب
float (v)	يطفو	drift	يعوم	sink	يغوص
give (v)	يعطب	hand over	يسلم	take	يأخذ
leave (v)	يغادر	depart	يرحل	stay/remain	يبقى
rise (v)	يعلو/يرتفع	increase	يزداد	decrease	يقل/ينخفض
safe (adj)	آمن	secure	آمن	dangerous	خطير
simple (adj)	بسيط	easy	سمل	difficult/ complex	صعب/ معقد

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

		online learning	يدرس عبر الإنترنت	find	>	a solution	يجد حلاً
do	>	presentations	يعمل عروضا			designs	يقوم بعمل تصميمات
Vi C.		projects	يعمل مشاريع	make > predi	predictions	يقوم بعمل تنبؤات	
produce	e >	electricity	ينتج الكهرباء	collect	>	information	يجمع معلومات

Prepositions

حروف الجر

by 2050	بحلول عام ۲۰۵۰	in about a year's time	فہ غضون عام تقریبـًا
expert in	خبیر فی	into the future	إلى المستقبل
hear of/about	يسمع عن	move up	يتحرك لأعلى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Pr	esent	Past simple	Past participle grown	
grow	يزداد/ينمو/يزرع	grew		
throw away	یرمہ/پتخلص من	threw	thrown	



ادرس المفردات اللغوية جيداً لأنَّما موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Definitions

التعريفات

3D printer (n) طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد		a machine that can make copies of whole objects
assistant (n)	مساعد	somebody who helps a person do their job
cycle lane (n) معر (حارة) للدراجات		a special place where people can cycle on roads
device (n)	جهاز	a machine or equipment for a particular job

electric bus (n) الأتوبيس الكهربه	a bus that works with electricity
e-sports player (n) لاعب رياضہ إلكترونہ	a player of online video games
firefighters (n) رجال الإطفاء	people whose job is to put out يطفئ fires
online learning (n) التعلم عبر الإنترنت	education or teaching that you can have on the internet
population (n) السكان	the population of a country or area is all the people who live in it
robotics engineer (n) مهندس الروبوتات	a person whose job is to design or work with robots
solution (n) حل	a way to solve a problem or answer a question
temperature (n) درجة الحرارة	how hot or cold something is
transport (n) النقل	vehicles that you can travel in or carry goods in
virtual reality (n) الواقع الافتراضي	when a computer makes you think that you are in a real place using pictures and sound

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	اللاحقة Suffix	الوظيفة Function	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
hero (n)	بطل	-ic	vi evalentile	heroic (adj) بطولب
robot (n)	إنسان آلب	-10	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	robotic (adj) آلية
assist (v)	يساعد	-ant	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	assistant (n) عدساعد
driver (n)	سائق	-less	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	driverless (adj) بدون سائق
electric (adj)	كمربائى			electricity (n) کھرباء
real (adj)	حقيقى	-ity	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	reality (n) الواقع
populate (v)	يسكن	-ion		population (n) عدد السكان
predict (v)	يتنبأ	-1011	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	prediction (n) تنبؤ
present (v)	يقدم	-ation		presentation (n) عرض تقدیمی
Spain (n)	إسبانيا	-ish	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	Spanish (n/adj) اللغة الإسبانية

البادئة Prefix

البادئة Prefix	Word	الكلمة	الوظيفة Function	The new word الكلمة الجديدة	1
dis-	appear (v)	يظمر	تعطى عكس المعنى	disappear (v) يختفى	

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 1

- What type of transport do you think we'll all use in the future?

Listen to the conversations and put the news articles in the correct order.

SB page 55

(1) Girl 1: Look, this article says that cities across the world are building new cycle lanes⁽¹⁾. This one is in Beijing. It goes above the city.

Girl 2: That looks amazing!

Girl 1: According to the article, the most popular way to travel in future won't be by fast train or driverless car⁽²⁾, it will be by bike.

Girl 2: Do you think that's possible?

Girl 1: Not really. It's good that some cities are building new cycling lanes, but I think there will always be quicker and easier ways to travel.

Girl 2: Hmm ... I think you're right.

(2) Boy 1: So, this article is about the energy (3) that we will use in future.

Boy 2: What does it say?

Boy 1: It says that we will all be using more renewable energy. In fact, by 2050, all of our energy will be renewable.

Boy 2: I agree. We have to change to renewable energy to protect the planet.

(3) Girl 3: It says here that we will need a lot more scientists in the future.

Girl 4: Well, there are already a lot of jobs that people need science for.

And in the future, science will be more important.

Girl 3: Why?

Girl4: Well, with problems like climate change, we will need new ideas and new technology. We need scientists for this.

Girl 3: Oh yes. I see what you mean.

(4) Boy 3: Look at this e-sports tournament (4). 60 million people watched it online.

Boy 4: Yes, e-sports are becoming really popular.

Boy 3: It says here that e-sports will be more popular than football by 2030.

Boy 4: I don't think that will happen. Billions of people watch football matches. E-sports are popular, but they won't be more popular than football.

Boy 3: No, I don't think they will.

Post-listening question:

- What's the second dialogue about?



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: tournament/ tʊənəmənt/ billion /ˈbɪljən/

ممرات للدراجات (1)

سيارة بحون سائق (2)

طاقة (3)

بطولة الألعاب الرياضية الإلكترونية (4)

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 2

- Can you imagine how our life will be in the future?
- Discuss this question in pairs. Read the article quickly to check your answers. SB page 56

THE TECHNOLOGY OF TOMORROW

Here are three things that could be part of our lives in the future.

Floating Farms

One of the biggest problems we will have in the future is how to feed the world. As the population(1) grows and sea levels rise(2), we won't be able to grow the food we need on the farmland(3) we have. One solution(4) is to build floating farms (5) on the sea. The farms will have solar panels (6) so they will be able to produce their own electricity (7).



Have you heard of a shirt that can charge your phone? Scientists have made a new fabric that produces electricity as it moves. This means that we'll be able to charge our devices as we run or walk outside.

Robot assistants

When we go to hospital in the future, we may see doctors, nurses ... and robots! During the coronavirus pandemic(8), robot assistants (9) worked in hospitals in Rwanda. They checked people's temperatures(10), collected information and even reminded people to wear masks! More importantly, they helped to keep hospital workers safe.



population /pppjvleI[ən/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: pandemic /pæn'demik/

Post-reading question:

- Which type of technology will keep people safe and healthy?







- عدد السكان (1)
- ارتفاع مستوى سطح البحر (2)
- الأراضى الزراعية (3)
- حل (4)
- مزارع عائمة (5)
- ألواح الطاقة الشمسية (6)
- كمرباء (7)
- جائحة فيروس كورونا (8)
- مساعد إنسان آلب (9)
- درجات حرارة (10)

- Do you think we won't need teachers in the future?

Listen to the radio interview. Tick the things that Dr Leila Hamed thinks we will be able to do or have in schools in the future. SB page 57

Interviewer Well, we've all got our own ideas about what life will be like in the future. Perhaps we'll be able to control devices(1) with our eyes or travel in planes that go into space ... But what will education(2) be like? Dr Leila Hamed, an expert(3) in education and technology, is here to tell us more. So, Dr Leila Hamed. How do you think education will be different in the future?





Dr Leila

Well, recently, all students have been doing more online learning. And I'm sure that they'll do more of their learning this way in the future.



Interviewer So what are the advantages (4) of online learning?

Dr Leila

The great thing about online learning is that you don't need lots and lots of books, so you can work anywhere. Students will be able to complete a school project wherever they are. And they won't be able to lose their homework!



التعليم (2)

خبير (3)

مزایا (4)

طابعات ثلاثية الأبعاد (5)

مواد خام (6)

Interviewer

That's true! ... And what kind of new technology could we see in the classroom?

Dr Leila

I think 3D printers (5) will be very important in the future. Students will be able to use these to make all kinds of things.

Interviewer

So will they be able to print anything they like?

Dr Leila

No, they won't be able to print very large things or objects made from certain materials (6), but they will be able to print models and even make their own designs.

Interviewer

Great! ... I've heard that some places, such as restaurants, shops and even hospitals are starting to use robot assistants. Do you think that we could use robot assistants (7) in schools?

Dr Leila

No, I don't think so. I think that in future, robots will help with simple (8) jobs in some places, but it would be very difficult to make a robot that could teach a lesson! So, I don't think that we will see robots in the classroom.



Interviewer

That's a pity. It would be fun to have a robot teacher!

(8) huu

مساعدون آليون (7)

Dr Leila

Well, lessons in the future will definitely be fun! Teachers already use the internet for videos and educational games (9). In the future, it's going to be even more exciting. Students will be able to use virtual reality(10) to discover(11) new things or explore(12) places that are far away or that existed(13) in the past.

- ألعاب تعليمية (9)
- الواقع الافتراضي (10)
- يكتشف (11)
- ىستكشف (12)
- بتواجد (13)
- عروض تقديمية (14)

Interviewer

So you think that in a history lesson, students will be able to visit ancient Egypt?

Dr Leila

Yes, they will! Of course, the students won't be able to taste the food or smell the flowers, but they will be able to see the people and places.

Interviewer

That does sound exciting! ... But what about traditional teaching? Will students still listen to the teacher and answer questions? Will they do talks, projects and presentations(14)?

Dr Leila

Yes, of course! These things will always be important. It's the teacher's job to present the lesson and make sure that students understand. But technology will help to make them more exciting.

Interviewer

Well, it's been really interesting talking to you, Dr Leila Hamed.

Thank you!

Dr Leila

You're welcome.

Post-listening question:

- What's the main idea of the text?



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

material /məˈtɪəriəl/ virtual /'v3:t[uəl/ presentation / prezən'teɪ[ən/



Vocabulary Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Read and complete the text with words from the following
--

Longman

rid	e - will	- drive -	solution -	won't -	lanes
-----	----------	-----------	------------	---------	-------

Scientists have a lo	ot of expectations f	or the future. They ex	xpect they will find
a (1) to the p	roblem of pollutio	n. The government v	vill build new cycle
(2)	3) do a lot o	of things to have a cle	eaner environment.
They will (4)r	nodern, fast bikes a	and plant more trees t	o reduce pollution.
2 Choose the correct a	nswer from a, b, c	or d:	
1 reality is w		200 0 0 0	u are in a real place.
a) Educational	A POST AND	c) Popular	
2. A/Anis a p		The state of the s	
			(Longman)
a) port	b) airport	c) highway	d) cycle lane
3 buses don'	t pollute the enviro	nment.	Longman
a) Traditional	b) Electric	c) Old	d) Oil-powered
4. To makeis	to expect what wil	happen depending	on the reasons.
			Longman
a) predictions	b) contributions	c) inventions	d) discoveries
5. If you throw a piece	of wood into water	, it floats." Float" is an	antonym
for"".			Longman
a) appear	b) swim		d) come
6. To get the adjective			
a) -ment		The state of the s	d) -ful
7is the vehic	El Branches St		CONTRACTOR CONTRACTOR
a) Equipment			d) Oil
8. Trees absorb carbon			
a) produce	b) remind		d) float
9. It's an easy lesson, I'll			
a) complicated		c) cheap	d) simple
10. To get the opposite			D. P.
a) re-	b) en-	c) un-	d) dis-
11. To get the noun fron			
a) -or	b) -er	c) -ist	d) -ant
12. I have to leave early			
a) depart	b) take	c) sink	d) drift

.anguage

Usage الاستخدام Use will/won't + inf. to make predictions with no evidence about the future.

يتم استخدام زمن المستقبل البسيط لعمل تنبؤ بحدوث شهء فه المستقبل بدون وجود دليل.

- I think it will rain tomorrow.
- In the future, we will use renewable energy.

Form

Subj.

will (won't)

inf.

التكوين

- I will eat my lunch after I go home.
- E-sports are popular, but they won't be more popular than football.

Key words الكلمات

الدالة

,...القادم (وقت) + next بعد الغـد the day after tomorrow ,غـدًا the day after tomorrow فَمَ غَضُونَ (وَقَـت) + in أَفِي المُستقبِل in the future ,قريبًا soon ,قريبًا

- Ali will wash the car in two hours.
- I will go to the zoo next week.

Ouestion

Yes/No question:

Will + subj. + inf.?

Wh- question:

Q. word + will + subj. + inf.?

A: Will you go to the seaside next summer?

A: How will he go to the park?

B: Yes, I will.

B: No, I won't.

B: He will **go** to the park by bus.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 In the future, I think Egypt will(wins) the World Cup.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (win) لأن (will) يأته بعدها فعل في المصدر.
- 2 Do you think we (live) in underwater cities in the future?
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (will live) لأن الجملة تعبر عن تنبؤ فب المستقبل.

Usage الاستخدام

Use will/won't be able to to talk about ability in the future.

نستخدم will/won't be able to للحديث عن القدرة فم المستقبل.

I don't think we'll be able to live on other planets.

Affirmative

الإثبات

- The farms will be able to make their own electricity.
- In the future, I think we'll be able to live under the sea.

Subj. + will not (won't) be able to + inf.

Negative النفی

- We won't be able to grow the food we need on the farmland we have.
- It's very rainy today, so we won't be able to go to the beach.

Question

الســـؤال

Yes/No question:

A: Will scientists be able to find solutions for many diseases?

B: Yes, they will.

B: No, they won't.

Wh- question:

Q. word + will + subj. + be able to + inf.?

A: How will we be able to **travel** in the future?

B: I think we will be able to travel on a shuttle.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 In the future, I think we will be able(have) trips to the moon.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (to have) لأن (able) يأتم بعدها (to + inf.).
- 2 In 2030, we (able) to learn online.
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (will be able) لأنها تعبر عن قدرة فى المستقبل.
- 3 Will people(able) talk to animals in the future?
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (be able to) لأنه سؤال عن القدرة على عمل شيء في المستقبل.



Language Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the sentence	with the correct form	of the word(s) in brackets:
-----------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------------

1. Do you think it (rained) tomorrow?	Longman
2. It's very windy, so we(not/able/go) to the beach today.	WB
3. I hope my father (will/able) use this old car again; it always	
breaks down.	Longman
4. Dad will (taught) me how to swim at the pool.	
5. Dalia hopes she will be able (pass) the final exam.	Longman
6. Will the babies (able) to walk by themselves?	
7. I will(playing) with my new toy tomorrow.	
8. Where (we/will) have a picnic at the park?	
9. What do you think we will be able(do) at school in the futur	e? SB
10. Will the astronaut (able) walk on the moon?	
11. I am not sure our team will (wins) the match.	Longman
12. Hamid can't find his passport. He (not/able) to travel to the	business
meeting in England tomorrow.	WB
13. My little brother(not/start) school next year.	
14. We'll(visited) grandma the day after tomorrow.	
15 (you/will) draw a beautiful picture for me?	
16. I won't (eating) sweets before dinner tonight.	
17. Adam has hurt his leg, so he (able/play) football on Saturday	/. WB
18 (we/will) be able to solve the problem of pollution?	Longman
19. In the future, we (able/travel) to other planets.	
20(Are) you be able to ride a bike without training wheels soon	1?
21. My baby sister is six months old, so she (able/start) speaking	in about
a year's time.	WB







Making predictions and discussing future ability

عمل تنبؤات ومناقشة القدرة فى المستقبل

- I think that more people will ride bikes in the future. We won't have as many cars on the road.
 - أعتقد أن مزيدًا من الأشخاص سوف يركبون الدراجات فى المستقبل. لن يكون هناك هذا العدد من السيارات.
- By 2100, 95 percent of people will live in tall buildings.
 - بحلول عام ۲۱۰۰ سوف یعیش ۹۵٪ من الناس فب مبان مرتفعة.
- I think that we'll be able to make 3D models, but I don't think we'll be able to play games in our lessons.
- I think we won't be able to grow the food we need on the farmland we have. أعتقد أننا لن نستطيع زراعة الطعام الذي نحتاجه في الأرض الزراعية التي نملكها.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

>	Zena thinks that we'll be able to use a flying car.
	Zena: Look at this picture of a flying car. It's so cool.
	Arwa: (1)
	able to fly in cars someday?
	Zena: (2)
	able to fly in cars.
	Arwa:(3)?
	Zena: We wouldn't have to worry about traffic or pollution.
	Arwa: Do you think we will have accidents?
	Zena: (4)
	Arwa: I hope so. I don't want to crash or get stuck in traffic.
	Zena:(5)?
	Anne al think it will be for to fly in a gar



2. Write it right

🜀 يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write a review of future technology

كيفية كتابة نقد عن التكنولوجيا في المستقبل

- How will life be like in the future? كيف ستبدو الحياة في المستقبل؟
- What kinds of technology will we use?

ما أنواع التكنولوحيا التي سنستخدمها؟

- How will our houses be different?
- كيف ستختلف المنازل؟
- ما أنواع السيارات التب سنستخدمها؟ • What kinds of cars will we use
- Who will do the housework?

من سيقوم بالأعمال المنزلية؟

Writing tips

Review your paragraph for spelling and grammar mistakes.

- راحع الأخطاء الاملائية وأخطاء القواعد في فقرتك.

Example

"Future technology"

I think life will be easier in the future. We will use modern technology more and more in our daily lives. In the future, houses will be different from our houses today. We'll need more gardens in the future, but there won't be much space. So, the garden will be on the roof. People will all use electric cars in the future, so there'll be chargers for electric cars next to each house. There'll be lots of solar panels and wind turbines. They'll make electricity. There will be robots to do all the housework. We will all have driverless cars. They will be safer and there won't be any accidents. Students will read a book or watch TV while a computer in the car drives them to school!

4.04 M	 rev	
	 F 64 1/	ART AN IN STANK

"Wha	t we will/won	't be able t	to do in the	e future"

	1-7-1			privat gueba est. 1
			***************************************	······································
*		*		THE DITTER

TEST YOURSELF



Unit 12 Lessons

Longman

Longman

d) increase

d) lens

Finish the following dialogue: Ahmed is telling Youssef that e-sports will be more popular than football by 2030. Ahmed: Did you read the article in the news today? Youssef: (1)...... Ahmed: What does it say? Youssef: (2)...... Ahmed : (3)? Youssef: They think so because 60 million people watch e-sports online. Ahmed: Do you think that's possible? Youssef: (4) Ahmed: (5)? Youssef: I don't think that because billions of people watch football matches. Read and complete the text with words from the following list: Longman renewable - popular - won't use - change - have used - charge Nowadays, we have a hotter world than before. We should try to avoid climate means of transport. The most (4) way to travel in the future won't be fast trains. Perhaps, we will use electric cars or modern bikes. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. A/An bus is a bus that works with electricity. b) assistant c) online d) electric a) virtual 2. Does life on other planets? Are there any living things there? b) disappear c) exist d) apply a) produce 3. Prices are rising all over the world. "Rise" here is similar in meaning to "......".

b) move

a three-dimensional digital model.

4. Ais a machine that allows us to create a physical object from

b) 3D printer c) camera

c) decrease

a) improve

a) photocopier

To form the adjecti	ve of "robot", add th	ne suffix "".	
a) -ant	b) -ity	c) -ish	d) -ic
6. I accepted his	to a game of c	hess.	
a) temperature	b) transport	c) coronavirus	d) challenge
4 Complete the sente	nces with the corr	ect form of the wor	d(s) in brackets:
1. We will (h	naving) a picnic at th	ne lake next month.	
2. I'm sure we	(visit) the museu	m tomorrow.	or from a
3. My friends	(not/come) to my	birthday party next	month.
4. I hope I will be able	e(learn) h	ow to swim this sum	mer.
5. In the future, robot	ts(help) u	s do our housework.	
Write ONE HUNDRE	D and TEN (110) w	ords on:	WB
All Charles and the label to the label to the		o do in school in the	future"
,	,		
žy –			
		-207 Edita	IFE 151 151
***************************************	***************************************	***************************************	
***************************************	*************************	***************************************	
Challenging Questions	A		
	ect answer from a,		مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.
	nes are used everyw nange it into a/an "	vhere. When we add ".	the suffix "-ity" to
a) verb	b) adjective	c) noun	d) adverb
2. The job doesn'		m. The word "challen	ge" here is
a) adjective	b) adverb	c) noun	d) verb
2 Complete the se	ntences with the co	orrect form of the wo	ord(s) in brackets:
Maria Carac		(saw) the elephants	next week.
2. I hope	(join) the universi	ty next year.	





Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 58 - 60 | WB pages 109 & 110

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

ambition (n)	الطموح	expert (n/adj)	خبير
architect (n)	مهندس معمارى	gate (n)	بوانة
capital (n)	العاصمة	join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى
distance (n)	مسافة	rainwater (n)	مياه الأمطار
district (n)	مقاطعة	skill (n)	م هارة
experience (n)	خبرة	technical (adj)	فنب
accountant (n)	محاسب	goal (n)	ھدف
achieve (d) (v)	يحقق/ينجز	internship (n)	تدریب داخلہ
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	marathon (n)	ماراثون/سباق جری
professional (adj/n)	مهنہ/محترف	qualification (n)	المؤهل
cashless (adj)	غیر نقدی	monorail (n)	قطار معلق

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

apartment (n)	شقة	engineering (n)	المندسة/مندسى
business person (n)	رجل أعمال	running race (n)	سباق جری
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية	sports person (n)	شخص ریاضہ
dictionary (n)	قاموس	training (n)	تدريب
dream job (n)	وظيفة الأحلام	ability (n)	قدرة

Choose and complete: joined - dictionary - training - architect

1 I asked a good to design my house.

3 I've just the local tennis club.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للعفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها (Antonym (Opposi	te) اعسکد
ability (n)	قدرة	skill	عهارة	inability/disabilit	عدم القدرة y
achieve (v)	يحقق/ينجز	succeed	ينجح	fail	يفشل
improve (v)	يحسن	develop	ینمہ/یطور	fail	يفشل
link (v)	يصل/يربط	join/connect	يربط	disconnect	يفصل
professional	محترف (adj)	qualified/expert	مؤمل/خبير	amateur	هاوی
protect (v)	يحمى	save	ينقذ	harm	يضر

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

achieve	>	goals	يحقق أهدافأ	explore	> space	يستكشف الفضاء
		a course	يقوم بأخذ دورة	set	> goals	يضع/يحدد أهدافًا
do)	marathon	يشارك فى الماراثون	work	> as a volunte	يعمل كمتطوع er
set up	>	business	ينشئ عملًا	get	> an internsh	یحصل علی تدریب ip

Prepositions

حروف الجر

at the entrance to	عند مدخل	good with numbers	جيد فى الأرقام
at weekends	فى عطلات نهاية الأسبوع	home to	موطن لـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle	
meet	يقابل	met	met	
set up	يۇسس/ينشئ	set up	set up	



ادرس المفردات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Definitions

التعريفات

cashless (adj)	غیر نقدی	done without using money you can hold
distance (n)	مسافة	how much space is between two things
district (n)	منطقة/مقاطعة	an area of a town, city or the countryside
expert (n)	خبير	a person who is very skilled at doing something or who knows a lot about a particular subject

internship (n) فترة تدريب	when you work, often without pay, to learn about a job			
marathon (n) ماراثون	a running race of around 42 kilometres			
monorail (n) قطار معلق	a railway system that uses a single rail, usually high above the ground			
professional qualification (n) التأهيل الصهنب	something that shows you have special training to do			
set up (v)	start a business			
skill (n) مهارة	the ability to do something well			

اللاحقة Suffix

Word ä	الكله	اللاحقة Suffix	الوظيفة Function	كلمة الجديدة The new word	
account (n)	حساب	-ant	تحويل الاسم إلى اسم فاعل	accountant (n) محاسب	
administrate (v)	يدير	-ive	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	administrative (adj) إدارى	
profession (n) مهنة		-al	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	professional (adj) مهنه/محترف	
success (n) م	النجا	-ful	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	successful (adj) ناجح	

البادئة Prefix

البادئة Prefix	Word	الكلمة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة أ
re- do (v) write (do (v)	يفعل	تعطب معنب الإعادة	redo (v) يكرر/يعيد عمل الشہء		
	write (v)	يكتب		rewrite (v)	يعيد الكتابة	



1 with

ذو/لديه

 Technology schools help students with the skills that they will need to work well.

2 Places

أماكن

Dakar

مدينة داكار (فى السنغال)

Diamniado Lake City

مدينة بحيرة ديامنيديو (فب السنغال)

New Administrative Capital

العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة

the Gate Towers

أبراج البوابة

Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 3

- What job would you like to do in the future?

Listen to four students discussing their goals. Match each speaker to SB page 58 the photos.

I'm Injy. I know which job I want to do. I'm going to Injy study very hard for many years, but when I finish, I'll get a good job. I'm going to design some amazing buildings. They'll all use renewable⁽¹⁾ energy.



My name's Hany. I'm also going to study hard for Hany many years. I want to learn how to help people who are sick. I think this is a really important job. I'll probably work in a hospital.



I'm Hoda. When I was little, my grandparents Hoda bought me a toy. It could walk and talk. I'm going to do a job which will make toys like this even better in the future. I'm going to design machines (2) that will walk and talk and also be able to help people do things.



I'm Amir. Before I take a job that pays (3) me, I'm Amir going to do something to help people. There are many people who do not have homes or enough to eat. I'm going to help a charity (4) that makes these people's lives better.





charity /'t[ærəti/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: design /dɪzaIn/

Post-listening questions:

- 1. What is Injy going to design?
- 2. What job do you think Hany wants to get?

- متجدد (1)
- (2) آلات
- يدفع (3)
- جمعية خيرية (4)

Pre-listening question: - What does an architect do?

Lesson 3 WB Page 109

The stant is a sum in the same in the second in the second in the same in the

Taha First of all, I want to finish my education and do well in my exams. But when I leave school, I don't want to become a business person⁽¹⁾ or an accountant⁽²⁾. My dream is to become a professional⁽³⁾ basketball player. I've been playing basketball since I was six and I love it. I play for my local team. I practise every evening, because I want to improve⁽⁴⁾ my skills. My ambition⁽⁵⁾ is to join the national team and play for my country.



Fatma

My ambition is to become an architect (6). I think it would be amazing to look at buildings in a city that I had designed. I know it won't be easy, so I'm going to work very hard. I need to pass my exams to go to university. When I've finished university, I'm going to get an internship (7) with a good company.

Khaled I love computers, so when I finish school, I'd like to work for an IT company. I'm going to do an online course and to get some professional qualifications⁽⁸⁾. That will mean that I can get a really good job one day. I could even set up⁽⁹⁾ my own business one day!

Malak
I'm not sure what I want to do when I'm older, but I'd like to do something
to help other people or to help protect the environment. I think it's
important to get a good education so I'd like to go to university, but I'm
also going to work as a volunteer. I think it will be a good way to find out
more about what kind of job I want and to meet new people.



architect /a:rkitekt/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: /qualification /ˌkwɒlɪfɪˈkeɪʃən/

Post-listening questions:

- 1. Which jobs does Taha say he doesn't want to do?
- 2. Why does Khaled want to get professional qualifications?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 3

- What's your dream job?

Read Hussein's blog. Which three things does he want to do in the SB page 59 future?

My goals for the future By Hussein

I love maths and science, so when I leave preparatory school, I'd like to go to a technology⁽¹⁾ school. My dream is to become a robotics engineer (2). Robotics engineers can create anything from machines for hospitals to robots that go into space.

Technology schools help students with the skills that I will need to work well with this technology, although it won't be easy. You need to pass a test to get into a technical school. Students who are successful often work in factories and businesses to get experience, and often get jobs there when they leave school.

Sport is also a big part of my life. I like playing handball and football, but my favourite sport is running. I'm in a local team(3) and we usually run 10 kilometres per day, but we're going to train (4) to

run longer distances (5). I'd love to do the Egyptian marathon (6) when I'm old enough.

Finally, I want to do something to help other people. When I'm older, I'm going to work as a volunteer (7) at weekends. There is a children's hospital near my apartment. Volunteers go to the hospital to read to the children and play games with them. I think that would be a great thing to do, so I'm going to ask how I can help.



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية: robotic /roobptIk/

Post-reading questions:

- 1. What sports does Hussein like to do?
- 2. How do technical schools help students?



- تكنولوجيا (1)
- مهندس روبوتات (2)
- فريق محلی (3)
- يتدرب (4)
- مسافات (5)
- سباف جری (6)
- (7) ordes

Look at the photos and read the article quickly. Which cities will have the following? SB page 60

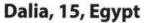
Our cities of the future

Africa's population(1) is growing quickly. Experts believe that by 2050, there will be twice as many people in Africa as there are today. Many African countries are planning exciting new cities, where people can live, work and study.

What will these cities of the future be like?

My country is planning for a new administrative capital (2) in the desert, east of Cairo. The New Administrative Capital is going to have modern universities, offices and hotels.

There will be a monorail (3) passing through the business districts (4). Electric trains will link the city to other cities around Egypt. The city is designed to work with smart technology. Roofs will be covered in solar panels. The shops will be cashless and they will have more green spaces to walk round in the city.



My country is planning an amazing new city: Diamniado Lake City. It will have modern apartments, offices, hotels, shopping centres and sports stadiums.

There will be schools and universities. A new train will connect the new city with our capital city, Dakar, so people will be able to travel between the cities easily.

Oumar, 16, Senegal

I live in the capital city (5) of Rwanda, Kigali. It's a beautiful city and a lot of people come here to live. Now, there is a plan to create a new part of the city: Green City Kigali. The buildings will use renewable energy and reuse rainwater⁽⁶⁾. There will be cycle lanes⁽⁷⁾ and good public transport⁽⁸⁾, but it will also be easy to walk around the city. I think there will be lots of cities like this in Africa one day. Note:

Alice, 15, Rwanda

Post-reading question:

- Which new city would you like to live in? Why?







- السكان (1)
- العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة (2)
- قطار معلق (3)
- مقاطعات (4)
- العاصمة (5)
- إعادة استخدام مياه الأمطار (6)
- معرات للدراجات (7)
- المواصلات العامة (8)

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية: administrative /ædmɪnɪstrətīv/ monorail /'mpnəʊreɪl/ district /'distrikt/

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 4

- How do you think cities will be in the future?

Read the article and write the missing sentences a-d in the right places.

WB Page 110

Cities of the future

What will cities be like in the future? Architects(1) are already planning how city life could be better for all of us. Here are some of their ideas(2).

Cities need water, but at the moment, most rainwater(3) is taken away from our cities. In the future, cities will have areas which will collect water when it rains. Then people will be able to use the water for plants, cleaning, etc.



مهندسون معماريون (1)	أفكار (2)	
مياه الأمطار (3)	الأسطح (4)	
خلايا الطاقة الشمسية (5)	بدون سائف (6)	
إعاقات (7)		

Cities will have houses for many people,

but they will also have big parks. The trees and other plants will give us clean air, and also give a home to animals and birds. There will also be city farms. People will grow their own food in gardens on roofs (4).

The city will only use renewable energy. This won't come from outside the city, but will be made by solar panels (5) and wind turbines on buildings.

Transport will be very fast, safe and cheap. Cars will be driverless (6). That means there will be more space for people to walk or cycle. People will be healthier, and life will be easier for people with disabilities (7).

Post-reading questions:

- 1 What's your opinion of the architects' ideas?
- 2 What other ideas can you add?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

wiii – goi	ng to – qualificatio	ns – ambitions – make	e – do
I will set up my ow go to a good unive	n business one day rsity. After I graduat	. I dream to be a busir . That's why I'm (2) e, I'm going to (3)	study hard to
some professional	(4) I want to	improve my skills.	
2 Choose the correct	answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. We add the prefix	to the verk	"write" to mean write	something again.
			جنوب سيناء ٢٠٢٣
a) re-	b) im-	c) ir-	d) il-
2. I have the ability to	o solve this problem	. "Ability" is opposite in	meaning
to "			Longman
a) income	b) desire	c) power	d) inability
3. The best way to	the countrysi	de is on foot. You will e	njoy walking there.
a) add	b) explore	c) invent	d) invite
4. A/An is s	omeone who keeps	records of money rece	ived, paid,
and owed by a cor	npany or person.		Longman
a) engineer	b) accountant	c) keeper	d) manager
5. Khaled is going to	do a/an	to get some professi	onal qualifications.
One day, he would	l like to do his own b	ousiness.	كفرالشيخ ٢٠٢٢
a) professional	b) internship	c) volunteer	d) online
6. A/An is s	omeone who has a s	special skill or special k	nowledge of
a subject gained a	s a result of training	or experience.	(Longman)
a) expert	b) trainer	c) trainee	d) student
7. The word	refers to how much	space is between two	things.
a) expert	b) skill	c) distance	d) entrance
8. A is a lon	g race of about 26 n	niles or 42 kilometres.	Longman
a) speed	b) marathon	c) competition	d) way
9. Her was 1	to be a famous singe	er, but she is a teacher i	now.
a) ambition	b) internship	c) capital	d) monorail
10. The climbers succe		e top of the mountain.	
a) protect	b) fail	c) save	d) harm
50 TO THE RESERVE THE TOTAL THE TOTA	arts of the city toget	her. The synonym of "li	
a) passes	b) fails	c) joins	d) disconnects

Language

Future with (be) going to

لمستقبل باستخدام (going to)

Usage

الاستخدام

Use "(be) going to" to talk about plans that you have made.

للحديث عن الخطط التي وضعتها.

When I'm older, I'm going to work as a volunteer at weekends.

Use "(be) going to" to express a prediction with evidence.

لعمل تنبؤ قائم على وجود دليل.

Ahmed is playing really well. He's going to win the match.

+ am/is/are(n't) + going to + inf. Subj.

Form

I'm going to go on holiday next week.

التكوين

- You're going to pick up all of those toys right now.
- We're not going to paint our bedroom tomorrow.

Question

Yes/No question:

Am/Is/Are + subj. + going to + inf.?

A: Are you going to watch the match? B: Yes, I am. B: No, I am not.

🙆 Wh- question:

Q. word + am/is/are + subj. + going to + inf.?

A: Where are you going to travel on holiday?

B: I'm going to travel to Hurghada.



Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 You're late. You're going (miss) your train!

- الإجابة الصحيحة (to miss) لوجود (going) التب يأتب بعدها (to + inf.).

2 Donia is going (buy) a new laptop.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (to buy) لوجود (going) التب يأتب بعدها (to + inf.).

3 What are you (go) to do at the weekend?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (going) لأنها يسبقها (verb to be).



Language Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Which athlete do you think (going to) win the race?	an
2. What(you/are) going to study when you join the university? Congret	an
3. We(going) to buy a bigger house in our village.	an
4. I(spend) the holiday in Hurghada as planned.	an
5. I'm going(learn) how to ride a bike next summer.	
6. After dinner, we're (watch) a film together as planned.	
7. I(going) to make a drawing for you as a present.	
8. Dad(going/teach) me how to ride a bike. He decided that with me.	
9. Tomorrow, we're(go) to have a fun day at the park.	
10. Mum is(going/bake) cookies for us this afternoon.	
11. I'm(share) my toys with my little sister. I've decided that.	
12. She (not/come) to the meeting. She's sick.	
13. What time(do) they going to arrive?	
14. Look at those dark clouds! It(rain) soon.	
15. She's(study) hard for her exams next week. She has an intention to d	ob
that.	
16. I (not/go) to the party tonight. I'm too tired.	
17. How is he(go) to get to the airport? By taxi or by bus?	
18. I (make) a cake for her birthday. It's my plan.	
19. She(not/going/wear) that dress. It's too small for her.	
20. When(you/ going) to meet your old friends?	





Discussing personal goals

مناقشة الأهداف الشخصية

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



What's your dream job?

ما هب وظيفة أحلامك؟

My dream job is a robotics engineer.

وظيفة أحلامى أن أكون مهندسة روبوتات.



What are your other goals?

ما هم أهدافك الأخرى؟ -

I'd like to start my own business.

أود تأسيس شركتى الخاصة.



What can you do to achieve them?

ماذا يمكنك أن تفعلى لتحقيقها؟

I'm going to do an internship to get some professional qualifications. سأقوم بأداء تدريب داخلى للحصول على بعض المؤهلات الاحترافية.



Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

Rogia and Asmaa are discussing personal goals.

Rogia: Hi, Asmaa! Do you have any dreams or goals?

Rogia: That's wonderful! (2).....?

Asmaa: I want to be a teacher to help children learn and grow.

Rogia: That's so nice! What subjects do you enjoy the most?

Asmaa : (3)......

Rogia: That's great! Do you have any other goals?

play the piano.

Rogia: That sounds fun! (5).....?

Asmaa: I am going to achieve these goals by hard work.



How to write a review of cities in the future

كيفية كتابة نقد عن المدن في المستقبل

- Cities will become greener.
- Buildings will produce their own energy from renewable sources.
- Cities will have houses for many people.
- Trees and other plants will give us clean air.
- People will grow their own food in gardens on roofs.

Writing tips

Remember to check your writing for mistakes. Make sure that grammar, spelling and punctuation are correct. تذكر مراجعة فقرتك لاكتشاف الأخطاء. تأكد من صحة القواعد اللغوية والهجاء وعلامات الترقيم.

·Example

"Cities in the future"

How will cities be like in the future? By 2050, cities' services will increase. The internet will be the main service which will make the city smart. Cities will become greener and have more cycle lanes and walking spaces. Buildings will produce their own energy from renewable sources and their design will be improved. Buildings will also get their energy sources through solar panels and wind turbines. Cities will have houses for all people, but they will also have big parks. The trees and other plants will give us clean air, and also give us a home to animals and birds. People will grow their own food in gardens on roofs.

ŧ	Write a review of:	
ck Poi	"How life will be like in the future"	
Che		

TEST YOURSELF



Unit 12

Lessons



Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

roof - be able to - able - solar - turbines - rainwater

Our cities will b	e different in the future. Cities will have a	reas which will collect
	vill (2) use it for plants and clea	
have a big (3)	so that we will be able to grow food	I in our gardens. These
	ewable energy made by (4) pan	
on buildings.		

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Have you ever imagined life without cell phones? People who are fifty or more will find this question surprising as they used to live without mobile phones. Younger generations, on the other hand, think that they cannot live without mobile phones. 50 years ago, if someone had said that people would be walking around with small wireless telephones in their hands, we would have called him or her mad. However, almost everyone now has at least one of them. The phones are even being used for more than just communication. People use them for many different purposes. Mobile phones are used to play games, watch films, listen to music, pay money online and find information. They have become a very important part of our lives. Before we had mobile phones, it was hard to reach a friend that was away from home. But thanks to these small devices, people can now get in touch with anyone at any place and at any time. To conclude, they have made us reachable wherever we are and whenever anyone likes.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Thanks to mobile phones, a) we cannot find information c) it is harder to reach a friend
- b) our lives are shorter
- d) our lives are easier
- 2. About fifty years ago, we
 - a) did not have mobile phones
 - c) used mobile phones

- b) had mobile phones
- d) were mad
- 3. The underlined word "them" refers to
 - a) younger generations

b) mad people

c) wireless telephones

d) old people

B) Answer the following questions:

- 4. What is the best title for this passage?
- 5. How was life before we had mobile phones?
- 6. What are mobile phones used for?

Choose the correc	t answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. A is an a	area of a town or the	e countryside.	Longman
a) continent	b) city	c) lane	d) district
2. A/An is	a person who desig	ns buildings and ad	vises on their
construction.			(Longmar
a) architect	b) builder	c) doctor	d) trader
3. If you want to	your goal, yo	u should work hard.	
a) pass	b) achieve	c) fail	d) succeed
4. I don't say that I'm	ı an in this	s subject. I don't kno	w anything.
a) accountant	b) engineer	c) expert	d) architect
5. The prefix "	" is added to the	verb "use" to mean u	ise again. دربية
a) un-	b) dis-	c) re-	d) im-
Recycling is impo	rtant to protect our	environment. The s	ynonym of "protect
is "".			
a) save	b) harm	c) develop	d) explore
4 Complete the sent	ences with the cor	rect form of the wo	rd(s) in brackets:
1.1(nc			
2.1(gc			year.
3. (Doe			
4. They are going			
5. He(ow.
5 Write ONE HUNDRI	W(30)		
Write ONE HONDKI			
	"Your futu	ire job"	
		•••••••••••••••••	
Challenging Questions			
1 Choose the corr	ect answer from a,	b, c or d:	مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.
1. There is a hug	e statue at the entr	ance of the temple	"Entrance" here is
a/an	•		Longman
a) verb	b) pronoun	c) noun	d) adverb
2. She never achie	eved her ambition o	of becoming a famou	ıs writer. She
a) failed	b) passed	c) developed	d) improved
2 Complete the se	ntences with the co	orrect form of the w	ord(s) in brackets:
	st. He(sco		
2. It's windy. I	(close) the wi	ndow.	





Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 61 - 63 | WB pages 111 - 113

ocabulary

Key Vocabulary			لمفردات الرئيسية
aircraft (n)	طائرة	likely (adv)	محتمل
controls (n)	أدوات التحكم	passenger (n)	مسافر/راكب
drone (n)	طائرة بدون طيار	perhaps (adv)	ربما
flying car (n)	سيارة طائرة	research (ed) (v)	يقوم بعمل بحث
law (n)	قانون	sign (n)	لافتة/علامة
means (n)	وسيلة/وسائل	spacecraft (n)	مركبة فضائية
particular (adj)	معین/ محدد	vehicle (n)	مركبة (أى وسيلة نقل)
difficulty (n)	صعوبة	slightly (adv)	طفیفًا/قلیلًا

المفردات الإضافية **Additional Vocabulary** even (adv) فہ أي مكان anywhere (adv) حتى however (conj) company (n) شركة ومع ذلك worry (y-ied) (v) ىقلق engine (n) محرك/ متور

Choose and complete: | law - means - vehicle - anywhere

- 1 We searched for John, but we couldn't find him
- 2 Are you the driver of this
- 3 We must follow the rules. No one is above the

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للعفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

الكلمة Word	مرادفها (Meaning) مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)
agree (v) يوافق	accept يقبل	disagree لا يوافق
completely (adv) تمامـًا/ڪليًا	absolutely إطلاقا/كليئا	slightly/partially قليلاً/جزئيـُّا
orrect (adj) عحیح	right/accurate صحيح/دقيق	wrong/false خطأ
likely/probably (adv) ربما/محتمل	maybe محتمل	improbably/unlikely غیر محتمل
positive (adj) إيجابہ/مؤكد	useful/certain مفید /مؤکد	negative/uncertain سلبي/غير مؤكد
ready (adj) جاهز/مستعد	prepared مستعد	unready غير مستعد
strongly (adv) بقوة/بشدة	greatly بقوة/بدرجة كبيرة	weakly بشکل ضعیف
develop (v) مطور/ینمہ	improve يحسن	neglect يهمل
sure (adj) متاڪد	مۇكد certain/definite	uncertain/doubtful غیر مؤکد/مشکوک فیہ

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

become	> busier/worse	يصبح أكثر انشغالا/أسوأ
take	> a journey	يقوم برحلة

عروف الجرِ عروف الجرِ

begin with	يبدأ بـ	solution for/to	حل لـ
land on	ىمبط على	take off	تقلع الطائرة

neck Point

Choose and complete:

positive - with - for - became

- 1 A journey of a thousand miles begins _____ a single step.
- 2 With that bad storm, the weather worse.
- 3 You should be more about your work.

ًيهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للكلمات ومرادفها وعكسما والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.





Definitions التعريفات

controls (n)	أدوات التحكم	things used to operate a vehicle or machine	
correct (adj)	מحيح	has no mistakes	
drone (n)	طائرة بدون طيار	a type of aircraft that does not have a pilot	
laws (n)	قوانین	rules we must follow	
likely (adv)	محتمل	probably going to happen or probably true	
traffic (n)	العرور	all the vehicles that are moving along the roads in a particular area	

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	اللاحقة Suffix	الوظيفة Function	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
definite (adj)	مؤكد			definitely (adv) قطعنا/بالتاكيد
complete (adj) مکتمل		l.		completely(adv) تمامـًا/كليـًا
slight (adj)	طفیف	-ly	تحويل الصفة لظرف	slightly(adv) طفیفًا/قلیلاً
strong (adj)	قوی			strongly(adv) بقوة/بشدة
difficult (adj)	صعب	-у	تحويل الصفة لاسم	difficulty (n) صعوبة

البادئة Prefix

البادئة Prefix	Word	الكلمة	الوظيفة Function	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
im-	possible (adj)	ممكن	-:!!	impossible (adj) مستحیل
dis-	agree (v)	يوافق	تعطى عكس المعنى	disagree (v) لا يوافق



B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 5

- How do you think buildings will be like in the future?

Listen to Huda and Amal. Which map matches Huda's ideas? SB page 61

Amal What do you think our city will be like in 2050, Huda?

Huda Hi, Amal ... Well, I think there will definitely be more people in our city.

Amal So will there be lots of smart new apartments in the city centre for them to live in?

Huda Hmm ... I'm not sure.

Amal Really? Why not?

Huda There might be some new apartments in the city centre, but these could be very expensive.

Amal So where will everyone live?

Huda I think there will probably be new apartments around the city.

Amal And what about shops and restaurants?

Huda Yes, I'm sure that there will be more of these. Perhaps there will be a new shopping centre, too.

Amal And what will the city look like? Will there be more tall buildings?

Huda Yes, I think that's very likely. Tall buildings are a good idea in cities because there isn't much land to build on.

Amal But with tall buildings, a new shopping centre and restaurants, our city could look completely different.

Huda I don't think so. There are lots of historic buildings in the city, and it's important to protect these.

Post-listening question:

- Why do you think we should protect historic buildings?







Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية: definitely /defɪnItli/

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 5

- Do you think we won't go to school in the future?

Listen to a guiz and put the expressions in the order that you hear them.

WB Page 111



Aya	Look at this quiz about the future. Shall we do it, Lina?
-----	---

Lina OK, Aya. What's the first question?

Aya One: In the future, everyone will go to university. Nobody will leave school at 18. What do you think?

Lina I don't think so. Some people will find university too difficult. They will learn different skills instead(1).

طبيعي (3) طاقة (4)

الريام (5)

بدلًا من ذلك (1)

بدون سائق (2)

Yes, I agree. Two: All cars will be driverless⁽²⁾. Nobody will be able to Aya drive their own car anymore.

Lina I'm not sure. There will definitely be driverless cars, but there will probably be normal⁽³⁾ cars too. What do you think?

Yes, I agree. There might be a few normal cars that important people Aya can drive. Last question: All energy (4) will be from the sun.

I think that's very likely, don't you? Lina

Well, I'm sure that we'll all use renewable energy. But perhaps there will Aya be other forms of energy, such as wind (5).

Post-listening question:

a) energy

b) cars

c) future predictions

d) the wind

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 6

- Do you think that driverless cars will improve our life?



Read the text and match to make sentences.

SB page 62

A technology that will change our lives

By Munir Osman

1 In future, driverless cars(1) will change all of our lives. We will be able to travel anywhere without touching the controls or even looking at the road! Driverless cars will also be better for the environment(2) because they will be electric.



2 However, there are still some problems. Car companies will have to do lots of testing to make sure(3) that the cars are completely safe. We will also have to make new laws and we might even have to change some of our road signs so that the cars' computers can read them.

- سيارات بدون سائق (1) البيئة (2) يتاكد (3) خبراء (4) رحلة (5)
- 3 So when will we be able to travel in driverless cars? Some experts⁽⁴⁾ believe that we will have to wait until 2030 at the earliest. Others think that driverless cars will be here much sooner, but we may still need people at the controls to begin with.
- 4 It's impossible to know who is correct, but we can be sure of one thing: driverless cars will be part of our future. I'm looking forward to taking my first journey(5) in one.



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

environment /Invaiaranmant/

Post-reading questions:

- 1. Why will driverless cars be better for the environment?
- 2. How do you think road signs will be like if we have driverless cars?

Lesson 6

Pre-reading question:

- Do you think flying cars will be good for the environment? Why/Why not?
- Put the paragraphs in this text about flying cars in the correct order.

WB page 112

سيارات طائرة (2)

يقوم بعمل بحث (1)

Flying cars

- 1 For this week's project, I researched(1) flying cars. We now have the technology that will be able to make flying cars⁽²⁾. In fact, engineers think that flying cars will be more like helicopters than planes. That is because helicopters can take off(3) because electric engines are not very noisy.
- from small areas in cities. They will use electricity, تقلع (3) المرور (4) بعيدًا (5) كهربائه (6) 2 Although there are difficulties, flying cars might طائرات بدون طیار (7) be the answer to a lot of problems. Cities are
 - becoming busier and traffic⁽⁴⁾ on the ground is becoming worse. If there were flying cars, people could fly to work from far away(5). They would not have to live in big cities. Flying cars could land on the roofs of buildings, and that would mean more space in the streets for people to enjoy. Electric (6) flying cars would make less pollution, too.
- 3 Already, a company in Germany has developed a flying taxi. It will be able to carry one passenger and might start flying in 2022. However, journeys will be very expensive. People also worry that flying cars might not be very safe. If there were a lot of flying cars above a city, it could be very dangerous! For example, what would they do in bad weather, or if there were a lot of birds? And what about planes?
- 4 In conclusion, we already have the technology to make drones and other things that can fly. I think that it's very likely we will see flying cars in the future.

Post-reading question:

- Do you think flying cars will be more useful in cities? Why/Why not?

Lesson 7

Pre-reading question:

- What do you think we will be able to do in the future?



Read and complete the texts with will/won't be able to.

SB Page 63

In the future, I think there will be new types of transport(1) so that we will be able to travel everywhere faster. This means we will be able to save time and do more things in a day.



Magda

It's important to help protect the environment⁽²⁾, but we won't be able to get all of our energy from solar farms and wind turbines(3) for many years. We will need to build more of them. We will also need more cycle lanes(4) in cities so people will be **able to** travel without using energy at all.



Fares

I'm sure that in the future, we will be able to send more spacecraft⁽⁵⁾ into space. But the planets in our solar system⁽⁶⁾ are too far away for people to travel to, so astronauts won't be able to visit them.



Nasser



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

turbine /'ta:rbən/ spacecraft /'speis-kra:ft/

Post-reading question:

- Do you think we will be able to send more spacecraft into space in the future?

- وسائل النقل (1)
- (2) atult
- توربينات الرياح (3)
- معرات (حارات) للدراجات (4)
- مركبة فضائية (5)
- النظام الشمسى (6)

PRACTICE

a) accept

Vocabulary Exercises



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

signs - driv	verless – complete	ly – difficulty – going	- be able
Scientists think	we will have (1)	cars in the future	. We will (2)
		ls. They will be electric	
		ompanies will have to	
		We will make new law	
(4) to mal		We will make new lat	ivs and change road
(¬/ to mai	Re them sale.		
Choose the corre	ct answer from a, l	o, c or d:	
1. What are the neg	ative sides of learn	ing at home? "Negative	e" is opposite in
meaning to "			Longman
		c) positive	d) possible
		el abroad next week. He	
next week.	* goodweenil		" mistroreak
a) impossible	b) likely	c) unlikely	d) sure
		e if they don't play wel	
a) -ed			d) -ly
4. A is a ro	ocket or other vehic	cle that can travel in sp	ace.
a) spacecraft	The state of the s	c) helicopter	
5. I strongly advise	you not to do this. \	We can replace "strong	ly" with "".
a) slightly	b) likely	c) weakly add the suffix "	d) greatly
To get the adverl	o of "complete", we		* ۲۰۲۳ قیلیدلمس
a) -tion		THE RESERVE THE PARTY OF THE PA	d) -ment
7. I'm afraid I have t		and the control of th	
a) dis-		c) un-	d) il-
		does not have a pilot.	
a) helicopter	b) drone	c) passenger	d) spacecraft
	ace without <u>difficul</u>	<u>t</u> . To correct the under	lined word, add the
suffix			. I conserved
a) -y	b) -ness		d) -ence
10are the			n = .
a) Laws			d) Engines
		They are all	
a) false		c) wrong	d) far
. We should help i	mprove our commu	nity. This means we sho	ould help it

b) develop

c) remove

d) decline





Expressing certainty and uncertainty about the future

التعبير عن التأكد وعدم التأكد فى المستقبل

التأكيد

- I think there will definitely be more tall buildings.
- I'm sure that there will be smart apartments in the centre of the city.

عدم التأكيد عدم التأكيد

- Everyone will have a driverless car. I think that's very likely. اعتقد أن هذا محتمل جدًّا.
- I think everyone in the world will speak English. I'm not sure.
- There might be a garden on the roof of each house. ربما یکون
- There will probably be robots to clean our houses.

Agreeing	الاتفاق فى الرأى	Disagreeing	عدم الاتفاق فى الرأى
I very strongly agree.	أتفق بدرجة قوية جدًّا.	I disagree.	لا أتفق.
I strongly agree.	أتفق بقوة.	I don't agree.	لا أتفق.
Lagree slightly.	أتفق بدرجة طفيفة.	I don't think so.	لا أعتقد ذلك.

Speaking Exercise A Remembering A Understanding Applying A Analysing Evaluating Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

Roaa thinks our schools will have more modern classrooms in the future.

Ashrakt: What do you think our school will look like in the future, Roaa?

Ashrakt: Do you think we'll have robot teachers?

Ashrakt: I don't think so.

Roaa : (3) ?

Ashrakt: Because we need real teachers to teach us.

Roaa : (4) ?

Ashrakt: I think we will travel by flying cars. Everyone will have a flying car.

definitely be more flying cars.



2. Write it right





How to write about a review of your dream means of transport

كيفية كتابة نقد عن وسيلة المواصلات التب تحلم بها

- My dream means of transport is (الوسيلة).
- It will be moved by (نوع الطاقة).
- (عدد) people can sit on it in one journey.
- It will look like (مع تشمه).
- It will be good for the environment.
- (الوسيلة) will be able to avoid traffic jam and pollution.
- I hope it won't cause any problems.

Writing tips

Before writing, you need to think of ideas relevant to the topic.

> - قبل البدء في الكتابة، يجب أن تبحث عن أفكار مرتبطة بالموضوع.

Example

"My dream means of transport"

I'd like to write about my dream means of transport. Traffic jams have caused problems in many places of the country. So, in the future, we will invent many interesting means of transport. My dream means of transport is sky-cycling. ln my opinion, it will be powered تدار by solar and wind energy to avoid pollution and save fuel. Two people can sit on it. We can use it anytime and anywhere. lt won't take up تشغل a lot of space. I think it will look like a big tube. People will pedal to move tubes on sky-rails. With the use of modern technology, skycycling will be able to help us in many ways and it will make our lives better. Skycycling will enable us to avoid traffic jams and pollution. In the future, I hope it won't cause any problems.

ŧ	Write a review about:
ck Point	"Transport of the future"
Check	

TEST YOURSELF



Unit 12 Lessons (5 & 6)



II Finish the following dialogue:

Batoul and Re	em are talking about	the school party.	
Batoul : What o	do you think our schoo	ol party will be like i	next month?
Reem : There	will definitely be game	es and delicious foo	d.
Batoul : (1)		······································	Perhaps there will be
some f	food.		
Reem : Do you	u think they will give a	concert?	
Batoul : (2)			They were training on
	all last week.		
Reem : (3)			I don't think they will
give a	concert.		
Batoul : (4)		?	
	they will definitely sh		
Batoul : (5)		?	
Reem : I think	so because many stud	dents joined a play	last month.
Read and comp	olete the text with w	ords from the follo	wing list:
	be - engines - flying	– being – traffic –	laws
			cars. They will use
electricity beca	ause electric (2)	aren't noisy an	d make less pollution
			eople could fly to work
from far away. I	Roads and (3).	will be better. The	re will (4) more
space in the str	eets for people to enj	oy.	
Choose the cor	rect answer from a, b	o, c or d:	
1. The teacher as	sked us to th	e most important i	nvention.
a) become	b) worry	c) agree	d) research
2. A bike is the b	est of transp	ort. It doesn't pollu	ite the environment.
a) passenger		c) sign	d) law
3. To get the opp	oosite of "likely", add tl	ne prefix "	
a) dis-	b) im-	c) in-	d) un-

4 are the th	7.		
a) Laws	b) Solutions	c) Drones	d) Controls
5. The synonym of "po	ositive" is "		
a) false	b) uncertain	c) certain	d) worried
6. A is a type	e of aircraft that do	es not have a pilo	t.
a) drone	b) law	c) means	d) sign
Complete the senter	nces with the corre	ect form of the w	ord(s) in brackets:
1. Tom (will) go to South Af	frica. He wants to	go to China.
2. Baher			- Committee of the comm
3. Uncle Mohammed			The second secon
4. Watch out! You			
5. I think you	(are going to)	like this film.	
	"Life in fifty year	's from now"	
	"Life in fifty year	's from now"	
	"Life in fifty year	's from now"	
	"Life in fifty year	's from now"	
	"Life in fifty year	's from now"	
	"Life in fifty year	······································	
		······································	
		······································	
		······································	
		······································	
Challenging Questions			

Challenging Questions	answer from a, b, c	or d:	***************************************
Challenging Questions Choose the correct a 1. The plane is a) mean	answer from a, b, c of transport tha b) a mean	or d: t goes very fast.	***************************************
Challenging Questions Choose the correct a 1. The plane is	answer from a, b, c of transport tha b) a mean	or d: t goes very fast.	جاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.
Challenging Questions Choose the correct a 1. The plane is a) mean	answer from a, b, c of transport tha b) a mean	or d: t goes very fast.	جاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

on Unit

3D printer	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	-
accountant	محاسب	
ambition	الطموح	
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	
architect	مهندس معماري	~
challenge (d)	تحدِّ/يتحدي	
cycle lane	ممر للدراجات	
drone	चींगू वे प्रवेश चाँग् चींगू वे प्रविश्व	
e-sports player	لاعب رياضه إلكترونه	
expert	Elif	
explore (d)	يستكشف	
floating farms	व्हादि योक्ट	160
internship	تحريب داخله	1
law	قانون	
marathon	ماراثون/سباق جرى	
pandemic	جائحة/وباء	
population	عدد السكان	
prediction	3	
presentation	عرض تقديمه	
professional	مهنہ/محترف	
qualification	المؤهل	

Language

.The future simple tense

- I will eat my lunch after I go home.
 - They won't play tomorrow.
- Will you go to the seaside next summer?
 - How will he go to the park?

2. will/won't be able to

- The farms will be able to make their own electricity.
- We won't be able to grow the food we need on the farmland we have.
- Will scientists be able to find solutions for many diseases?
- How will we be able to travel in the future?

3. (be) going to

- When I'm older, I'm going to work as a volunteer at weekends.
- You're going to pick up all of those toys I'm going to go on holiday next week. right now.
 - We're not going to paint our bedroom tomorrow.
- Are you going to watch the match?
- When are you going to go on holiday?

مركبة فضائية مستوى البحر

الواقع الافتراضب

virtual reality

spacecraft sea level

- 1. Making predictions and discussing future
- I think that more people will ride bikes in the future.
- By 2100, 95 percent of people will live in tall buildings.
- I think we won't be able to grow the I think that we'll be able to make 3D models.
- food we need on the farmland we have. 2. Discussing personal goals
- A: What's your dream job?
- B: My dream job is a robotics engineer.
- 3. Expressing certainty and uncertainty about the future
- I think there will definitely be more tall buildings.
- There will probably be robots to clean our houses.



Al-Adwaa Test on Unit









Language Functions

Finish the following dialogue:

Omar is sure the weather will definitely	be sunny and warm.
Hady: What do you think the weather wi	
Omar: (1)	
Hady: (2)	.The clouds outside make me
think it might rain.	
Omar: (3)	
Hady: Maybe you're right. I heard it woul	
Omar: There might be clouds, but I'm sur	15
Hady: (4)	?
Omar: If it rains, I'll stay at home.	
Hady: (5)	?
Omar: I'm going to watch TV at home.	

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Longman

wherever - disadvantage - were - online - advantage - will be

Some experts believe that education will be different in the future. Students don't need lots of books. They can study anywhere and complete their schoolwork (3)..... they go. Above all, they (4)..... able to use 3D printers to print models or even make their own designs.

Read the following, then answer the questions:

We now have the technology that will be able to make flying cars. Engineers think flying cars will be more like helicopters than planes because helicopters can take off from small areas in cities. They will use electricity because electric engines are not very noisy.

Flying cars will be highly expensive and probably out of the reach of the public. They will also need an expert driver who can fly them. However, we hope they will likely reduce the price in the future.

Just like a plane, flying cars would use more energy during take-off journeys. This means that there are more disadvantages of flying cars for short trips than the advantages of less pollution. That's why the short journeys could cause even higher pollution.

Flying cars must be lightweight to cover more distance and travel faster to take off. They will be for one person, so they can't be used for public transport. They won't be used even by the public.

A) Choose the correct answer fro	m a, b, c or d:	
1. This text is about the	of flying cars.	
a) advantages	b) disadvantages	
c) benefits	d) goods	
2. Flying cars are like		
a) motorbikes	b) planes	
c) spacecrafts	d) helicopters	
3. Flying cars aren't good for	journeys.	
a) short	b) long	
c) the public	d) a & b	
B) Answer the following question	ns:	
4. Mention one disadvantage of	flying cars.	
5. Summarise the third paragrap	oh.	
6. Why do you think it's better fo	or one person to fly flying cars?	***

C Vocabulary and Structure

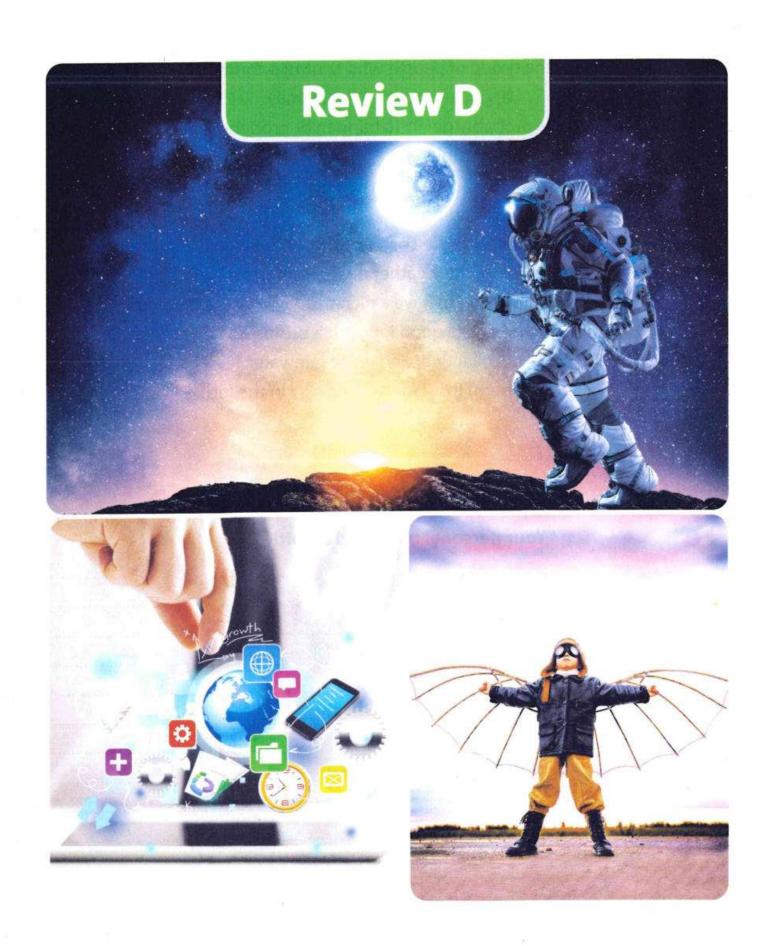
1. Suddenly, the	of the car st	opped and it didn't i	move.
a) sign	b) drone	c) engine	d) law

2. To get the language of "Arab", add the suffix

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- a) -ic b) -ian c) -ese d) -y
- 3. The synonym of "expert" is ".....".
 - a) possible b) lazy c) amateur d) professional

131	progress	Study again		Solve more exams	Contract of the Contract of th
1	Assess your progress	< 50%	50:64%	65:84%	85:100%
ű.a					
		************************		***********************	**************
**************	*****************************	***********************			********************
***************************************					***************************************
*****************			****************		****************
		*************************	****************		***************************************
*************	***************************************		******************	***************************************	**********
************					*********************
10575544444448666	***************************************		***************************************	***************************************	
***************************************		**********************	+×+×+++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++		
*****************	***************************************		***************************************	••••••	
***********	***************************************		***************************************	*******************	
************	*******************		***************************************	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
	"Your	personal goa	ls and ambi	tions"	
Write ONE	HUNDRED ar	nd TEN (110) v	vords on:		
			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
		(D) V	Vriting		
5. We	(not/b	urn) fossil fuel	ls for energy	in the future.	
	II	and the same of the party of th			
	(going				•
2. They	(not	/able) to have	a picnic toda	y because it's	raining heavi
1. What	(goi	ng) the weath	er be like tor	norrow?	
Complete	the sentence				The state of the s
) flooding			floating
	ution is to build				Strongly
	" means pro	Completely		200	
a) team		government			garage
				a country or	



Units 10, 11 & 12



Pre-listening question:

Lesson 1

- Have you ever dreamt of travelling to space?

Listen to the radio programme. What was Sputnik 1 doing as it was orbiting the Earth? SB page 64



The world's first satellite was sent into space by Russia on the 4th October, 1957. It was named Sputnik 1 after the Russian word for satellite. It was about twice the size of a football and it weighed 83 kilograms. It orbited the Earth once every 96 minutes and travelled at about 29,000 kilometres an hour. Satellite had orbited the Earth before that moment. As Sputnik 1 was orbiting the Earth, it sent radio signals back. It had been in space for only three months before the batteries died and it fell back to Earth on 4 January 1958.

The Russian satellite surprised the Americans who had thought their country would be the first to launch a satellite. Since 1957, more than 10 countries have sent over 11,000 satellites into space. Today, there are about 7,300 satellites orbiting the Earth. Some have been orbiting the Earth for many years.

Post-listening questions:

- 1. When was the world's first satellite sent into space?
- 2. How many satellites are orbiting the Earth nowadays?

- What type of news do you like?

Read the newspaper article quickly. How many buildings were damaged in SB page 64 2018?

CITY CENTRE FLOODS⁽¹⁾



Hundreds of people in a city in Germany were surprised to see flood water running through the streets of their neighbourhood(2) last night. Heavy rains flooded this part of the city in less than an hour. Many people had to leave their homes and 15 people were taken to hospital.

فيضانات (1)

(2) 5

رجل أعمال (3)

يتلف (4)

Mr Muller, a local businessman(3), said, "I saw the water going down our big, wide street. I was very frightened." Mrs Werner, who also lives in the neighbourhood, said, "The floods have damaged(4) our beautiful home and our business. We don't know what we'll do." This flood wasn't the only one to hit the area in recent years. In 2018, a flood damaged over 1,000 buildings. Mr Wagner, who owns the local bakery, said, "The weather is getting worse. We've seen floods on the TV, but now we have them here!"

Post-reading questions:

- 1. Why did many people have to leave their homes?
- 2. What happened in 2018?

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 1

Do you like reading online news?

Listen to a conversation. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences. WB Page 114

Hamid Did you see this online news story, Kamal?

Kamal No, what does it say, Hamid?

Hamid A scientist said that we will all be able to have holidays on the moon soon.



Kamal Really? What website says that?

Hamid It's called Cool Space Stories. Apparently, the scientist had tried to send tourists to space before, but it was too expensive. Now they've found an inexpensive way to send tourists.

Kamai How do they travel there? On a space shuttle or spacecraft?

Hamid No. The scientist is sending special planes there which can fly through space.

Kamal Hmm. Who is this scientist? Is he famous?

Hamid I don't know. It says here that he used to be a journalist.

Kamal Hamid, I don't think this news is true. You shouldn't believe it. Perhaps there will be holidays on the moon one day, but we won't be able to go there for a long, long time. We just don't have the technology.

Hamid Perhaps you're right, Kamal.

Post-listening question:

- Why does Kamal think that we won't be able to go to the moon for a long time?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 1

- How do you think our cities will be in the future?

Read the article. Choose the correct words.

WB Page 114



Today in history, we learned about cities. Our teacher **said** that cities were usually built in safe places where there was water. However, he told us that people **had** chosen some **strange**⁽¹⁾ places for some cities. For example, he told us that people had **built** Venice on 124 small **islands**⁽²⁾. They had to put lots of long pieces of wood into the wet soil. Then they built the houses on top of the wood. **According to** our teacher, the wood is still there, under the houses!

غريب (1)	
جزر (2)	
تربهٔ (3)	
جبال (4)	

He also told us about Mexico City. **Did you know** that the city was first built in a lake called Lago de Texcoco? They put a lot of soil⁽³⁾ in the lake, and built a city on this! I think that in the future, we will **be able** to build cities in many different but safer places. For example, we will have the technology to build cities on mountains⁽⁴⁾.

Post-reading questions:

- 1. Where did people usually use to build cities?
- 2. Why was Venice a strange place to build a city?
- 3. What is surprising about the houses in Venice today?

Lesson 2

Pre-reading question:

- How do you think robots will help us in the future?

Read the blog. Which jobs does the writer think robots will do for us in the future?

SB Page 65

In the next ten to 20 years, life will be very different compared to life today. Our cities, the way we study and the way we work will all be different⁽¹⁾. People like you or me will be able to go into space, but the biggest change will be at work. Soon, robots will be able to do most of the jobs.



Robots can already think for themselves. With the right computer programs, robots journalists⁽²⁾ will be able to write sports reviews⁽³⁾ and newspaper articles. Robots will fly our planes and drive our cars. Robot doctors will soon replace⁽⁴⁾ human doctors. You will describe your illness to your robot doctor, which will then be able to look at people with the same illness, and choose the best medicine⁽⁵⁾ for

(1) مختلف (2) الصحفيون (3) مقالات نقدية يستبدل (4) يستبدل (5) دواء

you. Robot doctors won't be able to do everything. They just have to be better than human doctors. We won't be able to stop robots from being a big part of our lives in the future.

Post-reading questions:

- 1. What will robot journalists be able to do?
- 2. Do you agree with the writer that robot doctors will replace human doctors? Why/Why not?

Challenging Questions Answers



Lessons 1 & 2

- 1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. c) oasis
 - 2. d) day
- 2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
 - 1. is done
 - 2. are caught

Lessons 3 & 4

- 1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. a) surprise
 - 2. c) family
- 2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
 - 1. cleaned
 - 2. took

Lessons 5 & 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) gold-coloured
- 2. a) goals
- 3. d) -ion



Lessons 1 & 2

- 1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. a) re-
 - 2. b) -ing
- 2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
 - 1. play
 - 2. not to touch

Lessons 3 & 4

- 1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. d) waste
 - 2. c) inexpensive
- 2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
 - 1. not to come
 - 2. Doing

Lessons 5 & 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) -ly
- 2. a) synonyms
- 3. c) planet



Lessons 1 & 2

- 1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. d) -able
 - 2. c) antonyms
- 2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
 - 1. could fly
 - 2. wouldn't

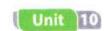
Lessons 3 & 4

- 1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. a) renewable
 - 2. b) tiny
- 2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
 - 1. told
 - 2. wasn't
 - 3. could

Lessons 5 & 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1) b) adverb
- 2. a) damage
- 3. d) dis-



Lessons 1 & 2

- 1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. d) make
 - 2. a) successfully
- 2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
 - 1. known
 - 2. solved

Lessons 3 & 4

- 1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. a) allowed
 - 2. b) antonym
- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
 - 1. Had
 - 2. have been

Lessons 5 & 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) dark
- 2. b) almost
- 3. d) informative



Lessons 1 & 2

- 1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. d) both a & b
 - 2. b) adjective
- 2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
 - 1. didn't finish
 - 2. saw

Lessons 3 & 4

- 1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1.b) similar
 - 2. a) adjective
- 2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
 - 1. am doing
 - 2. was preparing

Lessons 5 & 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c) photographer
- 2. b) like
- 3. d) similar



Lessons 1 & 2

- 1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. c) noun
 - 2. d) verb
- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
 - 1. see
 - 2. to join

Lessons 3 & 4

- 1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. c) noun
 - 2. a) failed
- 2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
 - 1. is going to score
 - 2. will close

Lessons 5 & 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. d) a means
- 2. c) weak



Contents

Part	1)	Ongoing Assessment
THE RESIDENCE OF THE PARTY OF	-	

5...

1. Check Your Vocabulary

إملاء خاص بكل درسين

2. Lessons Quiz

نموذج اختبار قصير خاص بكل درسين

Part 2 Final Revision

42-

1. Vocabulary Revision on Each 2 Units

مراجعة عامة على أهم الكلمات الخاصة بكل وحدتين

2. Language Revision on Each 2 Units

مراجعة عامة على أهم القواعد الخاصة بكل وحدتين

3. Speaking Revision on Each 2 Units

مراجعة عامة على أهم المحادثات الخاصة بكل وحدتين

4. Writing Revision on Each 2 Units

مراجعة عامة على أهم المواضيع الكتابية الخاصة بكل وحدتين

5. Al-Adwaa Monthly Test

اختبار الأضواء الشهري

SB & WB General Exercises

76...

1. SB & WB General Exercises

مجموعة مختارة من أهم الأسئلة في كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

2. End of Term Practice

اختبارنهاية الفصل الدراسي

Part 4) Final Exams

90-

Governorates Exams

اختبارات المحافظات.

Specifications

Marks: 30 Time: 2 hours



Language Functions (5 Marks)

Finish the following dialogue:

A dialogue of TEN (10) exchanges with FIVE (5) deletions is provided (2 stimuli & 3 responses). The topic of the dialogue should be related to the students' everyday life, interests, hobbies, events and so on ... The situation in which the dialogue takes place is described briefly but clearly. The students are required to fill in the deletions completely with the appropriate language forms without providing them with any part of the answers. The first exchange should be in full. (One mark each)

Reading Comprehension (10 Marks)

- Read and complete the text with words from the following list: (4 Marks) An unseen text from 50 to 60 words with FOUR (4) gaps is provided. Students are asked to fill in the FOUR (4) gaps (3 vocabulary & 1 structure) from a list of SIX (6) words (4 vocabulary & 2 structures). (One mark each)
- Read the following text, then answer the questions: (6 Marks) An unseen text from 140 to 160 words is provided. This can be a short story, a factual text, or an email. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be from the Set Books. Students are asked to answer:
 - A. THREE (3) MCQ questions with FOUR (4) options each dealing with the following reading comprehension skills:
 - Determine the main idea of a text.

(1 question)

Skim and scan grade appropriate text.

(2 questions)

- B. THREE (3) open ended questions the following reading comprehension skills:
 - Make inference about grade appropriate text.

(1 question)

- Summarizing a text.

(1 question)

- Make prediction about upcoming events in a story or information in a text. (1 question)

(One mark each)

Vocabulary and Structure (8 Marks)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(3 Marks)

SIX (6) vocabulary multiple-choice questions based on what students studied before are provided. They are asked to choose the correct answer out of the FOUR (4) options given. The questions should test students' knowledge of:

- Definitions

(2 questions)

Synonyms / Antonyms

(1 question)

- Suffixes / Prefixes

(1 question)

- Guessing meaning from the text

(2 questions)

(Half a mark each)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

(5 Marks)

FIVE (5) structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. The given word(s) in brackets could be verbs, adjectives, adverbs, etc. related to what students have studied. (One mark each)



Writing (7 Marks)

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following: (7 Marks) Students are asked to write from 100 to 110 words on a specific topic related to the Set Books in **ONE** of the following writing forms:

- A review
- A short story
- A Biography

(One mark for organization-Two marks for relevance of ideas -One mark for related vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar "Three mistakes are accepted. Repeated mistakes are marked once only")

Part 1

Ongoing Assessment



Check Your Vocabulary املاء خاص بکل درسین Lessons Quiz نموذج اختبار قصیر خاص بکل درسین





Vocabulary					
***************************************	سور/سیاج	***************************************	<u> </u>		
	ساحلى		الحياة البرية		
***************************************	غابة مطيرة	***************************************	عجائب		
	أرض عشبية		نيزك		
	محيط		السكان المحليون		
	جبل		ينابيع مياه		
Words	Synonym	s and Ant	onyms		
Word	Syno	nym	Antonym		
wet					
important			***************************************		
destroy					
protect					
Conju	gations of	Irregular	Verbs		
تضع البيض	***************************************				
يختبئ					
	Defin	itions			
a large animal wit	h long red h	air and long	arms, which lives in the trees		
a habitat which is always cold and is often covered by ice					
: an area in the des	ert where yo	ou can find v	vater		

Quiz in (1)





Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:

	Vocabulary	answer from a, b, e o		6
	1. A is a larg	ge area of land where t	here is almost no wa	ter, rain, trees, or
	plants.			
	a) wetland	b) rainforest	c) lake	d) desert
	2 habitat is	a habitat that is alway	s cold and is often c	overed by ice.
	a) Coastal			d) Polar
	3. Don't touch! That	paint is still wet. It isn't	t	
	a) rainy	b) dry	c) ugly	d) tiny
	4. We form the nour	of "appear" by adding	the suffix ""	الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
	a) -tion	b) -ancy	c) -ance	d) -age
	5. A is a ver	y high area of land wit	h steep sides.	
	a) mountain	b) lake	c) desert	d) wetland
	6. Ice covers the lan	d in polar habitats. The	e word "habitat" is th	ne same as
				الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
	a) school		c) factory	
		elped his village withou	ıt taking any money.	He always
	to help them.			
	a) polluted		c) covered	d) protected
		te of "natural", we add		
	a) dis-		c) re-	d) un-
2	Complete the sent	ences with the correc	t form of the word(s) in brackets:
	Language			
		(make) by rol		دمیاط ۱۰۲۳ دمیاط
		are taught		
		(are washing) us		p.
		(doesn't play) by mai	5	T-77 Hā
		(make) in Egyp		اسوان ۲۰۲۲
		. (do) the experiments		
	/(IS) you	ur mum cook dinner fo	or your family?	





	Vocab	ulary	
***************************************	ينشر (كتابًا)		إمبراطور
	فصيلة/فصائل		مالك/صاحب الشمء
	باحث		تمثال
	يعامل		إصطبل
	آثار		حفریات
Words	, Synonym:	s and Antor	nyms
Word	Synor	nym	Antonym
cruel			
ancient			
lucky			
amazing			
remote			
Conju	gations of	Irregular V	erbs
يحرق			
All the state of t	Defini	tions	
something that p	eople travel i	n, that is pulle	ed by a horse
the land that is be	elow the area	around it	
kept safe from be	ing damaged	d	





Finish the following dialogue:

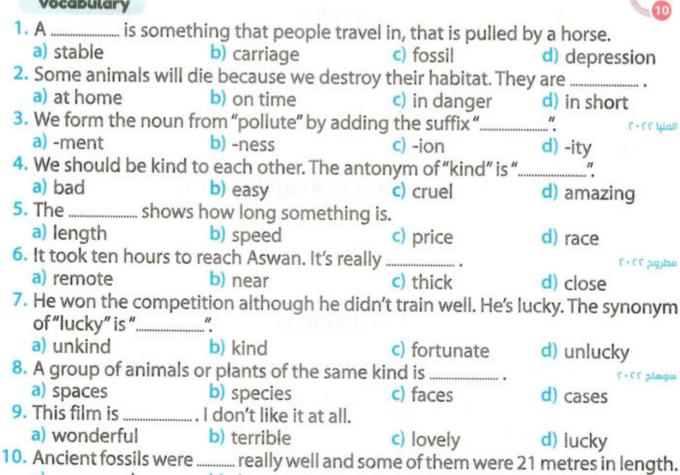
Speaking

Hedaya	in Dalia are talking about the new Seven Wonders of the World. Did you read about the new Seven Wonders of the World? (1)
Hedaya Dalia	: They're amazing new things people think that they are really special. : Can you name some of them?
Hedaya	: (2)
Dalia Hedaya	I read an article about the Great Wall of China before. (3)
Dalia	: (4)
Hedaya Dalia	: (5)? : Yes, of course. I hope to visit it with my family.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

a) preserved



b) damaged

d) lost

c) destroyed





	Vocab	ulary	
***************************************	تجسيد		ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ
	توضيح		يتجنب
	صعوبة فب النط		يهدف/هدف
	أسلوب/نمط الحي		عدد السكان
	إزالة الغابات		ذهبى اللون
	فقدان/خسارة		أصداف البحر
	بری		بذور
Words	, Synonym	s and Anto	onyms
Word	Syno	nym	Antonym
active			
organise			***************************************
confused			
Conju	ugations of	Irregular \	/erbs
يفهم			
يعض		***************************************	
	Defin	itions	
a word or phrase	to explain th	ings in a pict	cure, diagram, etc
and Asia	ith a long boo	dy and tail, w	hich lives in Africa
: the thick hair tha	t covers the b	oody of an an	nimal





Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



Reading Comprehension

live - lived - during - habitats - when - appear

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language



- As a popular game, football(play) by millions of people every day.
- F-FF diagonli

- 2. Nobody (tell) about the last exam results.
- 3.(Was) she read these lines?
- 4. The game _____(not/play) well. It wasn't exciting.
- 5. The telephone (invent) by Alexander Graham Bell.
- 6. Hundreds of people(kill) in accidents every year.
- 7. This nice picture(is) taken by my sister three days ago. القريبة ٢٠٠٢
- 8. A list of the new Seven Wonders (make) in 2007.
- 9. All the fruits(eat) up by the guests last night.
- 10. The best cookies(is sold) here.
- 11. My house(is) built in 2005.

الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

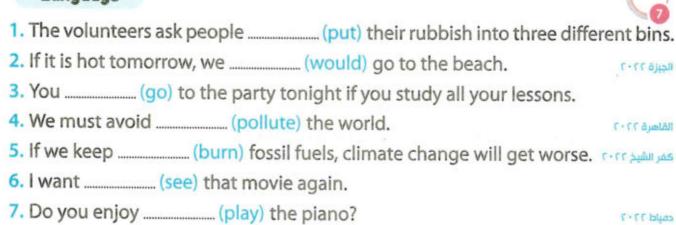




Vocabulary					
	الشعاب المرجانية	***************************************	حرائق الغابات		
	طاقة الرياح		الصناعة قدانصا		
***************************************	مواد كيميائية		غازات الاحتباس الحرارى		
	قمامة	***************************************	ثانہ أكسيد الكربون		
	ذوبان الجليد	***************************************	طاقة شمسية		
	القطب الجنوبى		<u>ـــــــ</u>		
Wor	ds, Synonym	s and Antor	nyms		
Word	Sync	onym	Antonym		
serious	erious				
absorb					
waste					
melt					
	Defini	itions	h. The telephone		
a place where	rubbish is taken	, often to be b	ouried under the ground		
a long period of time during which no rain falls					



Choose the correct a	answer from a, b, c or	r d:	
Vocabulary			8
1. Trees are good for	the environment as th	ey carbon	dioxide.
a) breathe in	b) increase	c) pay for	d) breathe out
2. He has a serious lui	ng disease. The synon	ym of "serious" is "	
a) dangerous		b) warm	
c) damaged		d) environmenta	al
3. The population of	the city continues to i	ncrease. The antony	m of "increase"
is "".			
a) raise	b) reduce	c) boost	d) rise
4. The energy we get	from the sun is called	***************************************	القاهرة ٢٠٠٢
 a) fossil fuels 		b) solar energy	
Ibrahim works for a	charity for free. This i	means he is a	چنوب سيناء ۲۰۲۲
a) volunteer	b) power		
6. If there is a		ater suddenly goes	to a dry land.
a) pollution		c) air	d) water
7. Pollution is a globa			
a) solution	b) trouble		500 May 100 May
8. If there are too man	130,		
a) high house	b) blue house	c) white house	d) greenhouse
Complete the sente	nces with the correct	form of the word	(s) in brackets:
Language			
 The volunteers ask 	people(put)	their rubbish into t	hree different bins.







Vocabulary					
ببر) الطابعة	خرطوشة (وعاء ح		النسيج		
	مدير المدرسة		ثقافة		
č	مدونة إلكترونية	***************************************	نسيج القماش		
	مواد خام		جلد		
تدوير	صندوق إعادة ال				
,	يصمم	ة صيد يصمم			
Words, Synonyms and Antonyms					
Word	Sync	onym	Antonym		
connected					
lovely					
expensive					
traditional					
broken					
Definitions					
a machine used for weaving					
: a person who makes cloth by weaving					
a long piece of cotton, silk, etc. which people can use to sew or make clothes					





IJ	Finish the following	dialogue:		
	Speaking			
	Asmaa is discussing	the problem of pla	stic waste with he	r friend Sally.
	Asmaa: We should d			
	Sally : Which proble	em do you mean?		
	Asmaa: (1)			···············• •
	Sally : What kind of	waste do you mear	1?	
	Asmaa: (2)			
	Sally : (3)			
	Asmaa: Plastic is a bi			
	Sally : (4)			?
	Asmaa: Why don't w			
	Sally : (5)			
2	Choose the correct a	inswer from a, b, c	or d:	
•	Vocabulary			10
	1. The artist used mar	ny different paints to	create ap	icture.
			c) terrible	
	2. The towns are conr	nected by train and l	ous services. "Conne	cted" is similar in
	meaning to	•		
			 d) undamaged 	
	3. A is a teach			
	 a) head teacher 	b) teacher	c) nurse	d) student
	4. The bag which I bou			
	a) cool	b) beautiful		
	5. My mother bought			
	a) ink		c) weaving	
	6. We add the suffix ".		-	
	a) -ful		c) -less	
	7. People will design "latest" is "		the latest technolo	gy. The antonym of
	a) new		c) updated	d) old
	8. A is a mac			
			c) knife	
	9. We add the suffix ".			
	a) -ism		c) -ist	d) -ian
	10. To get the opposite			
	a) un-		c) il-	



Vocabulary					
الغسيل	الماء المتبقى من		يُذكر		
	فرد/عضو		درجة الحرارة		
	نباتات عنكبوتية		نعائح		
	يدعو		سمكة صغيرة		
	ورقة/أوراق (نبات)		ם מפב		
Word	ls, Synonym	s and Anto	onyms		
Word	Synd	onym	Antonym		
attractive	4				
water	***************************************				
careful					
familiar					
Definitions					
plants whose leaves are used in cooking to add flavour to food, or as a medicine					
a plant which lives in the sea, usually near the coast					



		_		
	-		ъ	
	g p		-	
_			м	
	€.			7

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

15	
11	1
1	
1	- (4)

Reading Comprehension

		ωö	
•	 		-

must - environment - renewable - mustn't - fossil - environmental

We should do our best to keep the environment clean. We (1)......cut down trees because they absorb carbon dioxide. Also, we mustn't burn (2)..... fuels to avoid climate change. That's why we should use (3)..... energy such as solar energy and wind power. So, we will be able to live in a safe (4)......

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language



- 1. He suggested(stay) at the Grand Hotel.
- 2. If we keep building houses in the same way, global warming (continue).
- 3. It's too late. That is _____ (because) she wants to leave home to go to college.
- 4. What do you need (buy) from the shop, Mum?

سيناء شمال ۲۰۲۲

5. We can avoid (cut) down the trees.

- الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
- 6. What _____(you/do) if you don't catch the train?
- الدقملية ٢٠٢٢
- 7. Alaa smiled _____ (however) she was pleased to see us.
- 8. He cried _____ (nevertheless) he had hurt his knee.
- 9. Amany didn't do her homework. (Why) the teacher punished her.
- 10. Tomorrow is her birthday. (Nevertheless) I'll buy her a present.
- 11. I feel a bit tired. (Because), I can work for more hours.





Vocabulary					
	منتج	***************************************	عالم بيئب		
	الكهرباء	***************************************	يؤثر على		
	بصمة كربونية		عاصفة		
	فرشاة الشعر		محاصیل		
***************************************	يوصل بالكهرباء		شتلة/نبتة		
	مجتمع	***************************************	رياح		
	حقل		بذرة		
Words	, Synonym	s and Anto	nyms		
Word	Synonym Antonym		Antonym		
sustainable					
rise					
turn on					
and the second s	Defin	itions			
a cup made from	a tall, strong	grass			
in or near the coa		the ground, w	hich grows		
: when the sea becomes higher because climate change melts the ice at the Poles					
a glass object that uses less electricity than usual to give light					
: something that gives power to a machine, toy, car, etc. and which you can continue to add energy to, so they continue to work					

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

Vocabulary

1. A	is	a	small	young	plant.
------	----	---	-------	-------	--------

- a) jungle
- b) forest
- c) seedling
- d) palm

- is a cup made from a tall, strong grass.
 - a) Light bulbs

b) Saving energy

Mangrove trees

- d) Bamboo cup
- 3. Don't forget to take your reusable shopping bags! The synonym of "reusable" is ".....".
 - a) usual
- b) recyclable c) unserviceable d) damaged
- 4. Recycling is important to help protect our environment. The antonym of "protect" is ".....".
 - a) defend
- b) harm
- c) claim
- d) calm
- 5. The new factory makes healthy food for kids.

تورسميد ۲۰۲۲

- a) products
- b) crops
- c) levels
- d) powers
- 6. The noun for the person for "farm" is formed by adding the suffix "......".
 - a) -or

b) -er

- c) -ist
- d) -ian
- - a) surrounded
- b) simple
- c) sustainable
- d) rechargeable
- 8. We can get the opposite by adding the prefix "......".
 - a) re-

b) un-

- c) en-
- d) mono-

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language

1. I used to (rode) my bike to school when I was a child.



2. We would have fewer storms if climate change(stop).

الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٢ القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

3. That old building used to(is) a theatre.

- 4. Did your mother (used) to help you with your homework?
- 5. If we lived in Alexandria, we (go) to the beach every weekend. المنوفية
- 6. Emad(not/use) to play football when he was young.

الفيوم, ٢٠٠٢

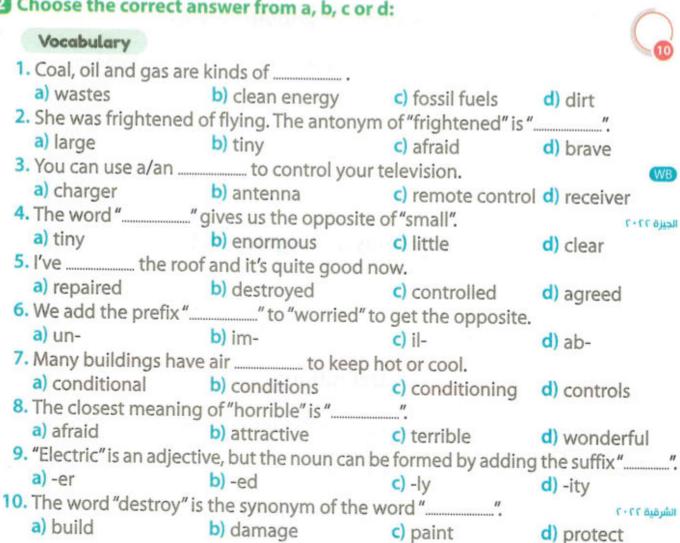




Vocabulary					
	توربينات الرياح	***************************************	يحرق/يحترق		
***************************************	ألواح شمسية		رسم تخطيطى		
***************************************	عامل		حادثة		
	حديد		تدفئة/تسخين		
	مميز/خاص		سيارة كهربائية		
Words	s, Synonym	s and Antonyms			
Word	Syno	nym	Antonym		
renewable					
repair					
frightened					
worried					
Conj	ugations of	Irregular Verbs			
يصبح	***************************************				
يحضر					
	Defin	itions			
say you will do so	omething				
special ability to	do somethin	g			
damage someth	ing so badly t	hat you cannot repa	ir it		
: a machine that n	nakes the air i	n a room stay cool o	r warm		
a device that hel	ps you contro	ol and deal with a ma	chine from far away		



Finish the follo	owing dialogue:
Speaking	
Judy: What do	Dina about the story of the Iron Woman. you think of the story of "The Iron Woman", Dina? . I liked it so much.
Judy: I agree, b	out I don't think that's right to destroy the factory.
Judy: Because	we wouldn't have so many things to buy in the shops. . How do you think
they mad	de the river clean once more?
Dina: You're rig	ght. If they could use renewable energy, it wouldn't produce
Judy: (5)	?
Dina: The mess	sage is that factories should not produce pollution.
Choose the cor	rrect answer from a, b, c or d:
	The state of the s





Check Your Vocabulary (25)



	Vocab	ulary	
	مقابلة شخصية		التصحر
	منظم		الزراعة النراعة
	السياحة		تقرير إخبارى
***************************************	مصدر		يبتكر/يخلق/ينتج
	الريف		شہء/کائن حہ
ى الكلام)	يقاطع (شخصًا ف		رئيس الجعمورية
	محطة طاقة		منطقة
Words	s, Synonym	s and Anto	nyms
Word	Syno	nym	Antonym
advantage			
agree			
improve			
Conj	ugations of	f Irregular V	/erbs
يۇسس/يېنى			***************************************
تسطع			
signing the principle	Defin	itions	
: an area with ma	ny solar pane	ls that provid	e electricity
a view showing	an area of lan	d	
: something to im	prove a diffic	ult situation	



Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Reading Comprehension

create – panels – to burn – burning – build – farm

The country decided to (1)..... a solar park on a farmland in the countryside. They want to (2)...... clean, renewable energy that doesn't the countryside. Farmers can still keep their sheep in the fields. Also, they produce money for the community. We should stop (4)..... fossil fuels.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

	Language	
	1. I (use) to walk to school when I was a child.	الأقصر ٢٠٢٢
	2. If I(have) more time, I would read more books.	اسوان ۲۰۲۲
	3. If Nadeen read the story, she(enjoy) it.	المنيا ٢٠٢٢
	4. We (not/use/like) maths lessons – our teacher was horrib	ole!
	5. If Ali(studies) well, he would pass the exam.	السويس ۲۰۲۲
	6. She didn't(used) to be very tall when she was in school.	
	7. If we both(save) enough money, we could go to Japan.	
	8. What(do) you use to wear at school?	
	9. If you ate more sweets, you(have) bad teeth.	الأقصر ٢٠٢٢
1	10. What(do/you) if you found a lot of money in the street?	
1	11. I never(use to) go to bed very late when I was young.	



Vocabulary					
	معدات		يستكشف		
	منظار/تلسكوب		ينشر (كتابًا)		
	تيارات هوائية		نفایات		
	عالم الفلك	***************************************	يدور (فۍ مدار)		
	قمر صناعب		مركبة فضائية		
Words	, Synonym	s and Anto	nyms		
Word	Syn	onym	Antonym		
popular					
land					
retire					
alive					
Conju	gations of	f Irregular V	erbs		
يطير			***************************************		
يحلم بــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ					
stedar of ob pines ex	Defin	itions			
a person who trav	vels into spa	ce			
all the planets and	d their moor	ns which go ar	ound the sun		
a force which attr	acts things o	or people to th	e centre of the Earth		
a piece of glass us bigger or smaller	ed in camera	as or on glasse	s, that can make things look		
: somebody who helps a person do their job					



1	Choose the correct a	nswer from a, b, c or	d:		
	Vocabulary				8
	1is a force wi	hich attracts things or	people to the ce	ntre of the Eart	h.
	364			r-rr	القليوبية
	a) Solar system	b) Gravity	c) Shuttle	d) Satellite	
	2. A/An is a pe	erson who studies son	nething carefully	and tries to	
	discover new facts a	bout it.	1500		
	a) sailor	b) inventor	c) researcher	d) lecturer	
	3. She was found live a	after the accident. Add	the prefix "	"to correct t	he
	underlined word.				
	a) sur-	b) dis-	c) re-	d) a-	
	4. A/An is the	person who travels in			
	a) dentist		-		القاهرة ا
	5. The noun for the per	rson from the verb "as	sist" is by adding	the suffix"	"
	a) -ist	b) -ian	c) -ant	d) -er	
	6. We add the suffix "	"to make an ac	lverh from the ad	iective "success	· f]"
		so mand an ac	ivers from the ad		
	a) -ic	b) -ly	c) -V	d) -al	ہنہ سویۂ
	7. Mr Kamal retired last	t vear because of old a	age The verh "reti	red" means the	
	he	y an accuracy of old t	ige. The verb leti		
	a) died		b) continued wo		הנו יויי
	c) stopped working		d) travelled	orking	
	8. The plane landed sai	fely. The antonym of "I	anded" is "took	,,	
	a) up	b) after	c) over	d) off	
				A STATE OF THE STA	
	Complete the senten	ces with the correct i	orm of the word	(s) in brackets	
	Language				
	1. Has she ever	(be) to Aswan?			السويس
	2. Before I came to scho		homework.		
	3. They have been	(talk) about their	holiday plans for	hours	اسیوط
	4. He didn't telephone	me until he	nas) heard the ne	ws	
	5. I opened the door, ar	nd(go) inside	indicate the ne	1.11	الشرقية
	6(Do) you eve				
	100,700,000	. Dear to the beach t	a suring day!		

7. What have you been(do) at school this week?

البحيرة٢٠٢٢





Vocabulary						
***************************************	مهمة أدائية		إشارة			
	خوذة		حبة (بذرة)			
	جماز استشعار		كادح			
	سماعات الرأس		زميل/رفيق			
	لاسلكى		اختصار المسسسس			
Words,	Synonym	s and Anto	onyms			
Word	Syn	onym	Antonym			
in vain						
invent						
allow						
comfortable						
possible						
Conju	gations o	f Irregular	Verbs			
بهن بهت						
يسقط						
	Defin	itions	tova shizzili .			
one of the large areas of land in the world, such as Africa, Asia or Europe						
something that p	eople can w	ear to make	their teeth straight			
a machine which can receive or read information that is sent by a satellite						



Finish the follow	ving dialogue:			
Speaking				6
Mohamed and I	Fady are talking abo	ut their life experie	nces.	
Mohamed : Let'	s talk about our life ex	periences.		
Fady : (1)			he coolest thi	na
you	've learned at school?	}		9
	coolest thing I have le		ning about din	osaurs!
Fady : Din	osaurs! Have you ever	been to the beach?	9	
Mohamed : (2)			been there b	efore?
Fady : Yes,	me too. (3)		?	
	nt to be an astronaut			
Fady : (4)		?		
	j <mark>oy playing vide</mark> o gan			
Fady : (5)				
2 Choose the corr	ect answer from a, b	, c or d:		
Vocabulary				0
 Australia is the 	smallest in the	he world.		r-rr 110
a) city	b) country	c) continent	d) town	
The doctor adv	rised me to use	for my teeth.		ازهر ۲۰۲۲
a) verse	b) prices		d) space	
	osite of "clear", add th	e prefix "".	•	
a) im-	b) en-	c) dis-	d) un-	
4. A is so	meone who is workin	g hard.		
a) toiler	b) fellow		d) signal	
5. We can get the	adjective of "wire" by	adding the suffix "		
a) -less	b) -ing	c) -ive	d) -ful	
Many people u	se social media to	They talk to ea	ch other.	دمیاط ۲۰۲۲
a) eat	b) play	c) sleep	d) commu	nicate
7. My parents dor	n't allow me to watch	TV late. The synonym	of the word "	allow"
is "				الاسماعيلية ٢٢
a) let	b) prevent	c) reject	d) find	
8. A is the	e part of a radio or te	levision that picks up	signals and c	hanges
them into soun				
a) GPS	b) satellite receiv	/er c) comet	d) helmet	
J. The word "	means a seed or	seeds from a plant th	at you can ea	t.
a) neadphone	D) neimet	c) grain	d) harbour	ê
on the opposite of	f"comfortable" is "			5 45 42 M
a) awake	D) probable	c) relaxed	d) uncomf	artable

b) probable

d) uncomfortable

c) relaxed





Vocabulary			the following district and dist		
القبة السماوية			نص غنب بالمعلومات		
	معرض		التواصل		
	سكة حديد		انجاز		
	مرشد		المواصلات العامة		
***************************************	روبوت فضائب		ڪويڪب		
We	Words, Synonyms and Antonyms				
Word	Syn	onym	Antonym		
win					
nearly					
public			***************************************		
bright					
Definitions					
: something you can use to follow directions					
: someone who works on a ship or sails a boat					

7 1		
j		
n F	Sec.	
When I		

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Reading Comprehension



country – were designed – designed – century – from – solve

The histo	ry of comput	ers goes ba	ck over 200 ye	ears. D	uring	the	19 th (1)	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
mechanical	calculating	machines	(2)	and	built	to	(3)	the
complex nu	mber challen	ges. Techn	ology has dev	elope	ed by t	he	early 20 th ce	ntury,
			erful. Today,					
(4)	the beginni	ng.						

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

	Language	
	1. I didn't go out until I (finish) my homework.	قاهرة ۲۰۲۲
	2. As soon as Maha (watch) TV, she slept.	(سکندریة ۲۰۲۲
	3. My school team(score) two goals before the match ended.	منوفية ٢٠٢٢
	4. When I opened the fridge, I noticed that someone (eat) my cake.	
	5. Astronomers(have) studied space with their eyes before the t	elescope
	was invented.	لفربية ٢٠٢٣
	6. I(know) my friend Adel since 2010.	
	7. Heba(do) her homework for two hours. She hasn't finished y	et.
		الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
	8. The boy was cold because he(forgot) his jacket.	
	9. Omar and Aser (learn) English this year.	
1	0. l(be) to India by 1986.	
	1. We left the town 7 years ago because my parents (find) bette	ar iobs





arali miniwollot ed	Vocab	ulary	
	وسائل الإعلام		وسائل التواصل الاجتماعب
برنامج إخبارى تلفزيونى			تحذير
	موقع إلكترون		يثق فى
	مجلة		شاهد
	مقال إخبارى		ماسورة/أنبوبة
Words,	Synonym	s and Anton	yms
Word	122	onym	Antonym
interested			
online			
fix			
cross			
Conjug	gations of	f Irregular Ve	erbs
ينفجر			
	Defin	itions	
a person whose jo	b is to resea	arch and write	news articles
a person whose jo		- AN	
unable to move or			
a person whose jo	b is to choo	ose what shoul	d be in a newspaper, tion and language
show			



1 Choose the correct	answer from a, b	c or d:		
Vocabulary	\ dis			
1. A radio is a	a person whose jo	b is to talk on a radio	programme.	
a) presenter	b) newsreader	c) designer	d) editor	
My mum was cross	because I got bac	d marks in the exams.	The antonym of	
"cross" is "".				
a) interested	b) annoyed	c) cheerful	d) angry	
When you add the	suffix "" to	the word "design", yo	u get the noun for	
a person.				
a) -ist	b) -ian		d) -or	
4. Ais a perso	on whose job is to	write news and artic	les for newspapers	
and magazine.			الفربية ٢٠٢٢	
a) weaver	b) designer	c) journalist	d) photographer	
5. He told the news to the All the newspapers published it.				
a) website		c) fridges	d) fields	
6. We can replace the				
a) connected		c) outline	d) inline	
7. Ais a person who has seen an accident, crime, etc. and can tell the				
police about it.	and the second			
a) witness	b) operator	c) newsreader	d) designer	
8. I'm interested in foo			ested" is "".	
a) brave	b) afraid	c) uninterested	d) concerned	
Complete the senter	ices with the cori	rect form of the wor	d(s) in brackets:	
Language				
1. They (ride	e) their bikes to th	e beach last summer.	0	
2. I was watching TV v	when the telephor	ne(ring).		
3. He(not/eat) a delicious pizza last night.				
4. Did you(woke) up early this morning?				
5. They(buy) new clothes for last party.				
6. Where(spend/you) your last holiday?				

7.(Do) you find a lost wallet on the street this morning?





	Vocab	ulary	Secretaria de la secono de
	دورة مباريات		صوت (أدمى)
ā	الحياة العهني		رواية
	بث إذاعي		الشعر
	الأدب		حارس/حامت
	جائزة		تقرير إخبارى إذاعب
Words, S	Synonym	s and Anto	nyms
Word	Syno		Antonym
warm			
pleased			
true			
female			
	ations of	Irregular \	/erbs
يتعطل			
يضر/يؤذي/يجرح			
	Defin	itions	Complete the sentences
a person who spec		16 7.25	
: to leave a job or st	op working	because of o	old age
: the person who ru	les a city or	an area	
a large area with sv	vimming po	ools, water sli	des, and similar amusements
: the business of ma	aking televi:	sion or radio	programmes

Quiz in (10





Finish the following dialogue:

Speaking

Gamal and Ali are talking about social media.

Gamal: Hi Ali! I see you are using social media.

: Of course, (1)

Gamal: I think it's very useful. What's your favourite social media?

: (2)_____

Gamal : (3)______?

: I spend two hours daily. What about you?

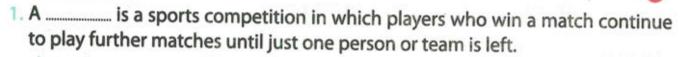
Gamal: I spend 5 hours.

: (4)______

Gamal: You're right, but what should I do in my free time?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary



- a) court b) match
- 2. He started his as a TV presenter.
 - a) career b) linguist
- c) building d) area

c) round

- 3. Today, we have a special occassion. It isn't
- b) unique
- c) private
- d) common

d) tournament

- 4. I am pleased that you have a new job. The synonym of "pleased" is "......".
 - a) unhappy
- b) angry
- c) sad
- 5. The noun "culture" can be an adjective by adding the suffix ".....". b) -ful c) -ment
- a) -ive

- 6. He dreamed to be an office......

b) -er

- d) -ion
- 7. To get a noun from "guard", add the suffix "......".
 - a) -or

b) -er

- d) -ion
- 8. If you take something for no money, it's
 - a) damaged
- b) for free
- c) busy
- d) proud
- 9. Female singers usually have soft voices. The antonym of "female" is "......".

- b) male
- c) woman
- d) girl
- 10. A is a person who controls an area or a city.
 - a) witness
- b) worker
- c) governor d) tourist



مهارة محمية طبيعية حقائق متسلق
حقائق متسلق
رقاسته
n e - 1
لحكومة
طريق/ممر
nd Antonyms
m Antonym
regular Verbs
ons
19 years old



Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Reading Comprehension



warning - hurting - hurt - accident - mountain - warming

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language	
1. Amal told me (this) her best friend at school was Basmala	. ►①
2. Amr told me that he(travel) abroad the following week.	القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. Samir(said) me that he would travel to London.	could 77 · 7
4. Heba told me that her plane(leaves) to London that day.	الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
5. He said he had hurt (my) leg.	
6. Shereen said that she(didn't watch) the film the day before	ore.
SVE CONTROL OF THE PROPERTY OF	القليونية ٢٢٠
7. Rana said he hadn't been to school(this) week.	
8. Nader(told) they hadn't seen The Lord of the Rings.	
9. The coach told the players that there(will) be an importan	t match
the next day.	الفرية ٢٠٢٢
0. Sally(told) Samira, "I will go to Cairo tomorrow."	البحيرة ٢٠-٢
1 "I'm coming for lunch Ali"	

Yumalaulü 77-7





	Vocab	ulary		
ونية	رياضة إلكترو		مزارع عائمة	
مهندس روبوتات			يتقدم بطلب	
ربائه	أتوبيس كمر		جائحة/وباء	
	رجل الإطفاء	جهاز		
	یتحدی/تحد*	مستوى البحر		
مواصلات/نقل			ثلاثم الأبعاد	
Words, S	ynonym	s and Anto	nyms	
Word	Syn	onym	Antonym	
give				
leave			*	
float				
simple				
Conjug	ations of	Irregular \	/erbs	
يزداد/ينمو				
يرمہ/يتخلص من				
	Defin	itions		
a special place whe	re people	can cycle on	roads.	
education or teachi	ng that yo	u can have o	n the internet	
: when a computer n	7	think that yo	u are in a real place using	



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

- 1. A/Anis somebody who helps a person do their job.
 - a) device
- b) assistant
- c) player
- d) engineer
- To form the noun for a person from "play", add the suffix "......".
 - a) -er

b) -or

- c) -ian
- d) -ist
- 3. I have to leave early today. The synonym of "leave" is ".....
 - a) depart
- b) take

- c) sink
- d) drift
- 4. A/Anis electric equipment that can do a special job.
 - a) device
- b) stick

- c) hammer
- 5. To get the opposite of "appear", we add the prefix "......".
 - a) un-

b) dis-

- c) in-
- d) ab-
- 6. Do you think there will be a/an to the problem of pollution?
 - a) exam
- b) quiz

- c) solution
- d) population
- 7. The word "....." means how hot or cold something is.
 - a) solution
- b) device
- c) printer
- d) temperature
- 8. Can I have a word with you about tomorrow's present? To correct the underlined word, add the suffix ".....".
 - a) -ment
- b) -ic

- c) -ation
- d) -able

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language

1. Will people(able) talk to animals in the future?



- 2. By 2050, all of our energy(be) renewable.
- 3. We won't (able/go) out if it rains.
- 4. I'm sure you'll(had) a good time in Hurghada.
- 5. Will people be able to(living) on the moon one day?
- 6. My friends (not/come) to my birthday party next month.
- 7. I think there (always/will/be) quicker and easier ways to travel.



Check Your Vocabulary



	Vocab	ulary	v-mludpaeV
	هدف		خبرة ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ
ارى	ممندس معم		مياه الأمطار
٠ جرى	ماراثون/سباق		قطار معلق
	مسافة		العاصمة
	محاسب		مقاطعة
	الطموح	***************************************	فنب
Words,	Synonym	s and Anto	nyms
Word	Syn	onym	Antonym
professional			
achieve			
link			
Conjug	gations of	f Irregular V	erbs was even in so
يقابل			
يۇسس/ينشئ			
	Defin	itions	
something that sh	ows you ha	ve special trai	ning to do a job
a lot about a partic			hing or who knows
the ability to do so	mething w	rell	
done without usin	g money y	ou can hold	
: when you work, of	ten withou	it pay, to learn	about a job

Quiz in (10)





Finish the following dialogue:

Speaking

Shehab is asking Karim about his goals.

Shehab: Hi, Karim! Have you thought about your dreams and goals?

Shehab : That's cool! (2) ?

Karim : Because I love playing football. It makes me happy. Shehab: That's awesome! What other sports do you like?

Karim : (3)

Shehab: Those are fun sports too! (4)______?

Karim: Yes, I do. I want to learn how to speak English.

Shehab: I hope you will achieve your goals.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

- Ais an area of a town, city or the countryside.
 - a) goal b) qualification c) district d) skill
- 2. The university has achieved all its goals this year. The antonym of "achieved" is "....."
 - a) failed
- b) accomplished c) linked d) brought 3. He became a profession athlete at the age of 16. Add the suffix "....." to
- correct that word. a) -less
- b) -ing c) -ness 4. Theis how much space is between two things.

 - b) distance c) ambition d) rainwater
- 5. The best way to the countryside is on foot. You will see every place there.
- a) add b) explore c) boil d) cook
- 6. To get the opposite of "ability", add the prefix ".....".
- b) inc) disd) b & c
- 7. The railway links parts of the city together. The synonym of "links" is "......".
- a) passes b) fails d) disconnects c) joins 8. When you, you experience events in your mind while you are asleep.
- a) dream b) improve c) achieve
 9. Chemicals that factories use could the environment. a) dream b) improve d) save
- - a) accomplish b) harm c) save d) stir
- 10. Ais a running race of around 42 kilometres.
 - a) marathon b) distance c) district d) skill
 - Ongoing Assessment 39

d) -al



Check Your Vocabulary



	Vocab	ulary	
	ربما		سيارة طائرة
***************************************	محتمل		أدوات التحكم
	محرك		صعوبة
	طائرة بدون طيار		رفتة/علامة مالامتة
	معین/محدد	***************************************	وسيلة/وسائل
ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ	مركبة (أى وسيل		مسافر/راكب
Words	, Synonym	s and Anton	yms
Word	Syn	onym	Antonym
positive			
ready			
correct			-
strongly			***************************************
agree			
	Defin	itions	
a type of aircraft	that does no	t have a pilot	
rules we must fol	low		
all the vehicles th	at are movir	ng along the ro	ads in a particular area



Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Reading Comprehension



will - going to - apartments - driverless - definitely - instead

Our life will (1) be easier. Our cities will have more tall buildings
with lots of smart new (2) There will be new shopping centres and
restaurants. Our city could look completely different. It's very likely we will have
(3) cars, but there (4) probably be normal cars too.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

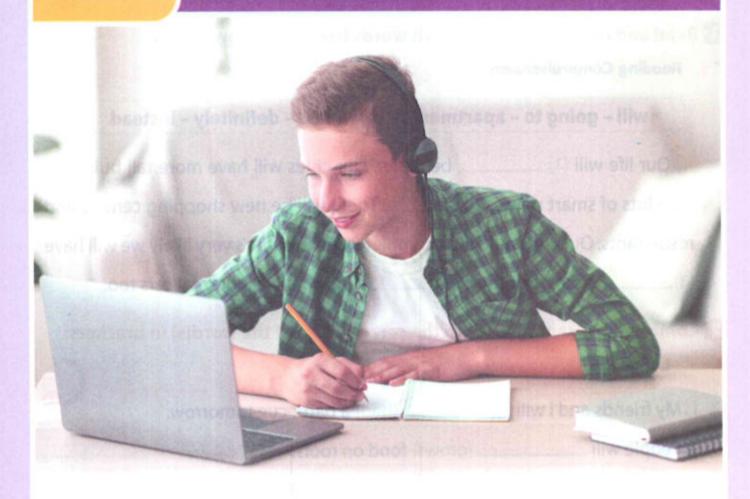
Language



- 1. My friends and I will(had) a barbecue tomorrow.
- 2. People will(grows) food on roofs.
- 3. Cities will(being) better for disabled people.
- 4. What job will you(does) when you leave university?
- 5. I think it(be) hot and sunny.
- 6. He _____(going/go) to the football match tomorrow.
- 7. She(not/going/visit) her aunt.
- 8. (going/we) _____ to write a test?
- 9. I(not/going/feed) the rabbits.
- 10. My father(going) wash his car.
- 11. Tamer is going (help) you with the homework.

Part 2

Final Revision



Vocabulary Revision on Each 2 Units

مراجعة عامة على أهم الكلمات الخاصة بكل وحدتين

Language Revision on Each 2 Units

مراجعة عامة علم أهم القواعد الخاصة بكل وحدتين

Speaking Revision on Each 2 Units

مراجعة عامة على أهم المحادثات الخاصة بكل وحدثين

Writing Revision on Each 2 Units

مراجعة عامة على أهم المواضيع الكتابية الخاصة بكل وحدتين

Al-Adwaa Monthly Test

اختبار الأضواء الشهرى

Units 7 & 8 February Revision

Vocabulary

Unit 7_

Key Vocabulary	11/11/20			بسية	لمفردات الرثر
coastal	ساحلت	shooting star	نیزگ/شماب	population	عدد السكان
deforestation	إزالة الغابات	monuments	آثار	tongue-twister	صعوبة فب الند
grassland	أرض عشبية	rainforest	غابة مطيرة	wildlife	الحياة البرية

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

وعكسها	رادفها	لكلمات،مر
--------	--------	-----------

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكساها
active	نشيط	energetic	نشيط	lazy	ڪسول
local	محلب	national	قومى	global	ممالد
important	هام	essential	هام	unimportant	غیر هام
remote	<u> ज्</u> राव्यं	far	نعتد	near :	ےرے ، قریب

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix مُلاحقة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
appear	يظمر	-ance	appearance	مظهر
introduce	يقدم	-tion	introduction	مقدمة
pollute	يلوث	-ion	pollution	تلوث

البادئة Prefix

فلمة الجديدة	The new word	قماضا	Word	البادئة Prefix
یر طبیعہ	unnatural	طبيعت	natural	un-
ختفی	disappear	يظهر	appear	dis-

Definitions التعريفات

habitat	بيئة/موطن	the natural home of an animal or plant
depression	مئنخفض	the land that is below the area around it
species	فصيلة/فصائل	a group of animals or plants of the same kind
fossil	حفرية	the remains of animals or plants that lived in the past
preserved	محفوظة	kept safe from being damaged
confused	مرتبك	unable to understand something clearly
fur	فرو	the thick hair that covers the body of an animal

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

یات landfill sites	مواقع دفن النفا	chemicals	مواد كيميائية	seagrass	أعشاب البحر
climate change	تغير المناخ	planet	ڪوڪ ب	thread	خيط
fabric	نسيج القماش	cartridge	خرطوشة (وعاء حبر)	melting ice	ذوبان الجليد

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

troids, by more and remove y me						
Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسما	
absorb	يمتص	take in	يمتص	leak	يتسرب	
broken	مكسور	smashed/damaged	محطم	unbroken/undamag	ed غير مكسور	
latest	أحدث	modern s	حديث/عصر	old ·	قديم	
careful	حريص	cautious	حريص	careless	مهمل	

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix مُلاحقة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
renew	يجدد	-able	renewable	متجدد
discuss	يناقش	-ion	discussion	مناقشة
tradition	تقليد	-al	traditional	تقلیدی

البادئة Prefix

Prefix	البادئة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
re	-	cycle	دورة/يركب دراجة	recycle	يعيد تدوير
di	S-	respect	يحترم	disrespect	لا يحترم

التعريفات

deforestation الغابات	when all the trees in an area are cut down
ف drought	a long period of time during which no rain falls
نة النسيج (نول) loom	a machine used for weaving ماكيا
يېج weaving	the art of making cloth by crossing threads using a special machine
herbs باب	plants whose leaves are used in cooking to add flavour to food or as a medicine
اد حفری fossil fuel	natural material such as petrol and oil that you can burn for energy

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

△ Understanding △ Applying △ Analysing △ Evaluating △ Creating

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

expect -	entire - are found	l - find - except - gr	asslands
I like reading abo	out animals. I read	an article about ani	mals which (1)
n different habita	ts. Orangutans li	ve in rainforests a	nd spend nearly t
2) lives ir	trees. Caracals liv	ve in (3)	They like to hide in
ong grass. I knew	some information	n about sea animal	s like sea turtles. T
arely leave the oce	ean, (4) to	lay eggs in the san	d.
hoose the correct	t answer from a,	o, c or d:	
To get the adjecti	ve from the noun	"nation", add the su	ffix "".
a) -or	100	c) -ist	d) -al
They bought me	a beautiful presen	t. The antonym of "I	oeautiful" is "
a) ugly	b) lovely	c) huge	d) tiny
A/An is a	building where a	horse sleeps.	
a) depression	b) carriage	c) stable	d) owner
"Remote" is to "	as "surprise	d" is to "amazed".	
a) hard	b) close	c) far	d) near
To get the noun of	of "differ", add the	suffix "".	
a) -ion	b) -ence	c) -able	d) -d
To beis to	be unable to und	derstand something	clearly.
a) thick	b) lazy	c) organised	d) confused
To make the word	farm" mean the	act of planting, add	the suffix ""
a) -ness		c) -er	d) -ed
happens	when all the trees	in an area are cut d	own.
a) Figs	b) Deforestation	on c) Peppers	d) Cakes
To form an adject	ive of "love", add t	he suffix "".	
a) -ive	b) -ous	c) -ful	d) -ly
They used a big fi	shing to c	atch more fish.	
a) web	b) internet	c) net	d) network
When you	a speech, it's nor	mal to feel nervous	. U to be
a) stay	b) take	c) give	d) leave
The prefix "dis-" in	the word "disapp	ear" gives the "	
a) meaning	b) opposite	c) synonym	d) adjective

B Language

Unit 7

The present and past simple passive

1 The present simple passive

Milmulite

Object + am/is/are + P.P. + (by + subject)

- The Kharga Oasis is surrounded by desert.

Regatifue

Object + am/is/are + not + P.P. + (by + subject)

- My room isn't swept by my mother.
- -The flowers aren't watered by the gardener every evening.

Yes/No questions:

Am/ls/Are + object + P.P.?

- Is the car repaired by the mechanic?
- Are the children taken to the zoo every month?

Wh-questions:

Wh-word + am/is/are + object + P.P.?

- How is pizza made?

- What are windows made of?

2 The past simple passive

Milemetilye

Object + was/were + P.P. + (by + subject)

- He was offered a new job last week.
- A lot of hospitals were built in our village last year.

Regulfue

Object + was/were + not + P.P. + (by + subject)

- This novel wasn't written by Hemingway.
- -These emails weren't sent by Paul.

Yes/No questions:

Was/Were + object + P.P.?

- uestlon

- Was the match watched last Friday? - Were stamps invented by Egyptians?
 Wh- questions:

Wh-word + was/were + object + P.P.?

- When was paper invented by the Chinese?
- When were these factories built?

1 The First Conditional "If"

If/When + subject + present simple, subject + will/won't + inf.

Subject + will/won't + inf. + if/when + subject + present simple.

- When we recycle old things, the world will be greener.
- You will miss the bus if you don't hurry.

Juestilon

Will + subject + inf. + if/when + subject + present simple?
Wh-word + will + subject + inf. + if/when + subject + present simple?

- Will Dina speak good English if her parents move to Canada?
- What will you do if you miss the plane?

2 Verbs + to or -ing

(A) Verbs + to (not to) + inf.

advise to	ينصح بأن	encourage to	يشجع أن	order to	يامر ان
agree to	يوافق أن	hope to	يأصل أن	plan to	يخطط أن
ask to	يطلب أن	invite to	سا محعو	teach to	يُعلم أن
choose to	يختار أن	need to	يحتاج أن	learn to	يتعلم أن
decide to	يقرر ان	offer to	يعرض أن	warn to	يحذر ان

- We need to use cleaner renewable energy.
- We decided (to/not to) go out.

(B) Verbs + (v. + -ing)

avoid	يتجنب	go	يذهب	recommend	یوصہ بـ
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	keep	يحتفظ/يستمر	spend	يقضى (وقتكا)
escape	يهرب	mind	يمانع	suggest	يقترح
finish	ينهى	practise	يمارس	understand	يفهم

- If we keep burning fossil fuels, climate change will get worse.
- He suggested not eating at that restaurant.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering

▲ Understanding

Applying

Analysing

ating AC

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1. Books (borrow) from the library every day.
- 2. Instructions at school are (following) by all students.
- 3. Electricity (produces) by solar panels.
- 4. How (crops/watered) in summer?
- 5. The oldest house in the USA(built) in 1624.
- 6. All the people were (telling) to leave the building.
- 7. Three people (are hurt) in the fights last night.
- 8. The first cars (design) before 1900.
- 9. New hospitals (build) in Egypt every year.
- 10. When (does) your favourite programme shown?
- 11. Hundreds of fossils of ancient whales (found) by scientists in 1902.
- 12. Wadi al-Hitan (called) a UNESCO World Heritage Site in 2005.
- 13. The volunteers ask people (put) their rubbish into three different bins.
- 14. If families collect their rubbish, we (pay) them for it.
- 15. You(go) to the party tonight if you study all your lessons.
- 16. I avoid (go) to the dentist.
- 17. If it (rain), we can't play tennis.
- 18. I decided (travel) to America next summer holiday.
- 19. She always enjoys (cook).
- 20. She hopes(go) to university next year.
- 21. He was very tired. (Never), he went on walking.
- 22. I left (however) you never asked me to stay.
- 23. Every time he tried, he failed. (Because), he did not stop trying.
- 24. We all tried our best. (That's because), we lost the game.





Expressing lack of understanding and asking for clarification

التعبير عن عدم الفهم وطلب الإيضاح

A) Asking for clarification طلب الإيضاع

- I'm still confused. Could you say that another way?
- I'm sorry, but I'm not sure I understand what you mean by that.
- Could you give me an example?
- When you say ..., do you mean ...?

توضیح امر ما Clarification

- I mean,

- In other words,

C) Expressing understanding التعبير عن الفهم

- Ah, I see. I understand that now.

Unit 8

1. Discussing environmental problems

مناقشة المشاكل البيئية

2

What will happen if we recycle rubbish?

Our environment will be cleaner.



2

How does deforestation create greenhouse gases?

When we cut down trees, the carbon dioxide stays in the air.



9

Why are trees good for the environment?

Because they breathe in carbon dioxide which is bad for the environment.



2. Giving a speech القاء خطاب

- Today, I'm going to talk about plants in the house.
- I'd like to start by saying (that) they are very good for your health.
- In the next part of my speech, I'd like to talk about where to put your plants.
- To conclude, recycling water is very important for us.



2. Write it right

Unit 7

A review of natural wonders in Egypt

Egypt has the most attractive natural places, like the desert, green lands, and natural pools. I visited Al Nayzak Beach and Gebel Elba last summer. Al Nayzak Beach is an amazing natural wonder. I give it five stars. It is called the Shooting Star by the locals, with a total area of over 5,000 metres. Al-Nayzak Lake is famous for its pure water. The lake attracts hundreds of tourists from all over the world, where they are able to dive and swim due to its safe, clean water.

Gebel Elba, which is surrounded only by green fields, is one of Egypt's most wonderful places. The Gebel Elba National Park is in the south-east of the country. Although the Gebel Elba National Park has a lot to offer, it is not often visited. I highly recommend visiting it.

Unit 8

- Recycling

Recycling is very important, as it helps to save our planet. First, it saves energy. Recycling materials uses less energy than making new products. Secondly, it reduces the amount of waste that is sent to landfill sites. When we leave waste on landfill sites for a long time, it produces different kinds of greenhouse gases, like methane. Thirdly, recycling paper and wood saves millions of trees that breathe in carbon dioxide and make oxygen. So, it helps our environment to be cleaner. Finally, recycling creates new jobs every year. So, it helps people who don't have jobs to find work. I think recycling is the best solution for helping our environment. We should all learn to recycle old things.

Al-Adwaa February Test on Units 7&8

anguage Functions

E	Finish the following dialogue:
	Nader is giving a speech at school tomorrow about the importance of
	recycling.
	Nadia: Why are you so busy?
ı	Nader: (1)
ı	Nadia:(2)
l	Nader: I mean, I'm giving a speech at school tomorrow.
۱	Nadia: What is it about?
	Nader: (3)
l	Nadia: (4)?
	Nader: I'd like to start by saying that we all should help protect the environment.
	Nadia:(5)?
	Nader: In the next part of my speech, I'd like to talk about how we recycle our rubbish.
,	Reading Comprehension
2	Read and complete the text with words from the following list:
	springs - visited - visits - wonders - tour - wanders
	Wadi al-Weshwashy is one of Egypt's natural (1) It's in the mountains
	of South Sinai. It's 15 kilometres away from Nuweiba. There are areas of water
	called (2) It's a wonderful place for swimming. It's mostly (3) by the
	Bedouin who live near there. You can have a (4) guide to take you there or
	a day trip.
3	Read the following, then answer the questions:
	Our planet is getting hotter and our weather is changing. Human activities

like burning fossil fuels, have increased greenhouse gases in Earth's atmosphere. Without human activities, we would push our planet toward a cooling time.

On Earth, human activities are changing the natural greenhouse. Over the last century the burning of fossil fuels like coal and oil has increased carbon dioxide (CO₂). Deforestation also produces greenhouse gases.

Trees absorb carbon dioxide from the air. When we cut down trees, the carbon dioxide stays in the air. Earth will become warmer. Some areas may welcome warmer temperatures, but others may not. A stronger greenhouse effect will warm the ocean and melt ice, increasing sea level. Ocean water level will rise. Droughts and floods can cause plant losses and the food would reduce.

Climate change can cause new diseases to appear, affecting plants, animals and humans, and causing new dangers for food safety and human health.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:								
1. The passage is about								
a) droughts		b) deforestation						
c) climate change	i.	d) floods						
2activitie	activities are the main cause of increasing greenhouse gases.							
a) Human		b) Animal						
c) Plant		d) Temperature						
If temperatures in	crease,v	vould melt and cause	floods.					
a) floods	b) diseases	c) fossil fuels	d) ice					
B) Answer the following	ng questions:							
4. When has carbon								
5. Mention the effec	ct of deforestation.							
6. Summarise the ef		ange						
o. Summanse the en	rects of chimate che	inge.						
***************************************	•••••							
	Vocabulary o	and Structure						
Choose the correct a	nswer from a, b, c	or d:						
1. Ais a larg	e area where trees	grow close together.						
a) wonder	b) mountain	c) habitat	d) forest					
2. This area is rich in d	ifferent plant		ent kinds.					
a) spices	b) species	c) pieces	d) spaces					
3. To form the opposit	3. To form the opposite of "suitable", add the prefix "".							
a) im-	b) in-	c) dis-	d) un-					
4. She wore a lovely d	ress in her wedding	party. It was really						
a) bad	b) terrible	c) ugly	d) beautiful					

	5. To beis to be very far from somewhere.	
	a) huge b) remote c) close d) near	
	6. Be careful with those plates. The synonym of "careful" is "".	
	a) careless b) cautious c) attractive d) familiar	
E	Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:	
	1. The Kharga Oasis (surrounds) by desert.	
	2. The first Pantheon in Rome(built) in around 27 BCE.	
	3. What will happen if we (not/recycle) rubbish?	
	4. He got up late (That's why), he could catch the bus.	
	5. We shouldn't keep (burn) fossil fuels.	
1	Writing	
É	Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:	
	"A community problem"	
		••••

		•••••
		••••
l		••••
		••••
l		••••
l		••••
	***************************************	••••
	***************************************	••••
	***************************************	••••
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	••••
1		0.1

Units 9 & 10 March Revision

A Vocabulary

Unit 9

Key Vocabu	ılary			سية	لمفردات الرثي
crops	محاصيل	landscape	منظر طبيعت	solar farm	مزرعة شمسية
plug in	يوصل بالكهرباء	solar panels	ألواح شمسية	countryside	الريف
diagram	رسم تخطیطی	carbon footpri	بصمة كريونيةint	wind turbines	توربينات الرياح

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms				كلمات، مرادفها وعكسها	
Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	امسحد
agree	يوافق	accept/allow	يسصح	disagree	لا يوافق
worried	قلق	anxious	قلق	unworried	غير قلق
sustainable	مستدام	continuous	مستصر	temporary	مؤقت
reusable ة الاستجدام:	قابل لإعاد	recyclable لتدوير	قابل لإعادة ا	non-recyclable ادة التدوير	غير قابل لإء
improve	يحسن	develop	يطور/ينمى	damage	يتلف
repair	يصلح	mend/fix	يصلح	damage	يدمر

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix ققة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
recharge	يعيد الشحن	-able	rechargeable	قابلة للشحن
work	يعمل	-er	worker	عامل

البادئة Prefix

Prefix قالبادئة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-	usual	عادى	unusual	غیر عادی
re-	usable	صالح للاستخدام	reusable	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام
re-	charge	يشحن	recharge	يعيد الشحن

التعريفات

D-61-141---

Definitions				
air conditioning	تكييف الهواء	a machine that makes the air in a room stay cool or warm		
desertification	التصحر	changing an area into desert		
initiative	مبادرة	something to improve a difficult situation		
seedling	شتلة/نبتة	a small plant which has started to grow from a seed		
energy-saving light bulb موفر للطاقة مصباح		a glass object that uses less electricity than usual to give light		

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

lens	عدسة	public trans	port المواصلات العامة	informative	text نص غنہ بالمعلومان
astronaut	رائد فضاء	fellow	زمیل/رفیق	signal	إشارة
spacecraft	مركبة فضائية	gravity	الجاذبية	satellite	قمر صناعہ
exhibition	معرض	sensor	جماز استشعار	asteroid	ڪويڪ ب
researcher	باحث	graduate	يتخرج	in vain	عبثا/بلا جدوی
orbit	يحور	sign	علامة/لافتة	helmet	خوذة

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	لمسحد	
comfortable	مريح ف	relaxed	مسترخ	uncomfortable	غیر مریح	
allow	يسمح	permit	يسمح	prevent	يمنع	
ب win	يفوز/ يكس	achieve	يحقق/ينجز	lose	يخسر/ يفقد	
retire	يتقاعد	stop working	يتوقف عن العمل	continue working	يستمر فت العمل	
invent	يخترع	create/design	يېتكر/يصمم	destroy	يدفر	

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	اللاحقة Suffix	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
assist	عداسي	-ant	assistant	عداسم
sail	يبحر	-or	sailor	بحًار
wire	سلك	-less	wireless	لاسلكى
achieve	ينجز/يحقق	-ment	achievement	إنجاز

Definitions

التعريفات

astronomer	عالم فلك	a person who studies the stars and planets
braces	تقويم الأسنان	something that people can wear to make their teeth straight
map	خريطة	something you can use to follow directions
solar system	النظام الشمسب	all the planets and their moons which go around the sun
telescope	تلسكوب	equipment that makes things that are far away look nearer
space station	محطة فضاء	a large satellite going around the Earth where astronauts can live and work to study space

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

△ Understanding △ Applying △ Analysing △ Evaluating △ Creating

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

used - used to - reusable - useless - bulbs - products

			e can't recycle all the
	아이 맛이 아마아마아마아, 맛이 아버릇이 그러웠다.		ole ones. We can use
	Tel (7 (2))	S	s as our grandparents
			uch as coffee cups and
toothbrushes. We ca	n use energy-sav	ring light (4)	to save electricity.
2 Choose the correct	answer from a, l	b, c or d:	
1. A/An	is a small plant	which has started to	grow from a seed.
a) ingredient	b) subject	c) language	d) seedling
2. One of the first	that I	grew when we came	e here was cotton.
a) products	b) seedlings	c) seeds	d) crops
3. To is	to say you will de	o something.	
a) advise	b) promise	c) destroy	d) burn
4. If something is	, it is o	n fire.	
a) producing	b) becoming	c) bringing	d) burning
To get the opposit	e of "agree", add t	the prefix "	
a) dis-	b) un-	c) en-	d) im-
Is there any advant	tage in getting th	nere early? The syno	nym of "advantage"
is "".			
a) benefit	b) view	c) initiative	d) tourism
7. A is 6	equipment that r	nakes things that ar	e far away look nearer.
a) lens	b) solution	c) satellite	d) telescope
8. He's a/an	in English a	t Oxford University.	
a) discoverer	b) inventor	c) lecturer	d) lecture
9. A is s	something which	can measure small	amounts of light, heat,
sound, etc.			
a) satellite	b) sensor	c) helmet	d) signal
10. He must finish his	be	fore going home. It's	s his work today.
a) helmet	b) fellow	c) verse	d) task
11. The museum is op	en to the public.	The antonym of "pu	blic" is "".
a) private	b) general		
12. The verb "direct" ca	an be a noun by a	adding the suffix "	
a) -ion	b) -ment	c) -ive	d) -ful

B Language

Unit 9

used to

اعتاد أن

تستخدم used to للتحدث عن فعل متكرر في الماضي والذي تغير الأن.

Whence five

Subject + used to + inf. ...

- My family used to live in the country.

Negative

Subject + didn't use to + inf. ...

- My sister didn't use to drink milk when she was little.

Yes/No questions:

Did + subj. + use to + inf. ...?

- Did Ali use to play tennis at the weekend?

Wh-questions:

Wh-word + did + subj. + use to + inf. ...?

- How did you use to go to school when you were young?

The second conditional "If"

If + subj. + past simple, subj. + ('d) would/could + inf.

- If I had enough money, I would buy a big house.

Subj. + ('d) would/could + inf. + if + subj. + past simple

- The problem would get worse if they didn't tell their parents.

uestion

Wh-word + would/could + subj. + inf. + if + subj. + past simple?

- What would you do if a strange man asked for help?

لاحظ أنه تستخدم حالة الشرط الثانية لتقديم النصيحة، كالتالم:

If I were you, I ('d) would + inf. ...

لاحظ أن فى هذه الحالة يمكن استخدام were مع كل الضمائر.

- If Sandy were rich, she would buy a new car.
- If they were doctors, they would help people without taking money.

1 The present perfect tense

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتحدث عن تجارب في الماضي دون إعطاء وقت محدد.

Subj. + has(n't)/have(n't) + P.P.

(Wh-word) + has/have + subj. + P.P.?

- I have lost my passport.
- Nancy hasn't done the washing-up.
- Have you travelled to Brazil?
- Where have you spent your weekend?

2 The present perfect continuous tense

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام المستمر للتحدث عن شهء بدأ فه الماضه وما زال يحدث الأن.

Subj. + has(n't)/have(n't) + been + v.ing

(Wh-word) + has/have + subj. + been + v.ing?

- Manar has been competing in flute competitions recently.
- I haven't been feeling well lately.
- Have you been working?
- What has Ramy been learning?

3 The past perfect tense

يستخدم زمن الماضى التام للتحدث عن شىء حدث (فى زمن الماضى التام) قبل حدث آخر فى الماضى (فى زمن الماضى البسيط). أي يوجد حدث أول فى زمن الماضى التام وحدث ثان, فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

Subj. + had(n't) + P.P.

(Wh-word) + had + subj. + P.P.?

E C

- It hadn't rained since the beginning of May.
- Had they arrived in New York before it got dark?
- What had you done before I arrived?

لاحظ استخدام هذه الروابط:

- Subject + past simple + because + subj. + past perfect
 e.g. Maged was hungry because he hadn't eaten lunch.
- Before + subj. + past simple, subj. + past perfect
 e.g. Before | sent the letter, | had written it.
- After/As soon as + subj. + past perfect, subj. + past simple
 e.g. After/As soon as my mum had heard the news, she phoned me.
- Subj. + past simple (negative) + until + subj. + past perfect
 e.g. | didn't play video games until | had finished my homework.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 1. We used (play) outside in the park every day. 2. My mum (bake) cookies last night. 3. If I talked to animals, I (will ask) my dog what he's thinking. 4. She (not/use) like swimming, but now she does. 5. My sister (not) finish her last homework on time. 6. If I (be) you, I would study harder for the test. 7. Did he (used) to read books before going to sleep? 8. Our father (didn't) in the house when we woke up. 9. If he knew the time of the party, he (can) come. 10.(Did) you at the club last weekend? 11. Did you (spent) your last summer holiday in Alexandria? 12. We didn't (use) have a car, but now we do. 13. He has (ever) been to the zoo. 14. Before the museum (close), we had seen all the exhibits. 15. Have you been (read) that book all day?

19. I've (play) with my friends for two hours now.

16. (Before) I had taken a bath, I put on my clothes.

20. Before I started my new school, I (meet) some of my classmates.

18. By the time I (get) my ice cream, my friend had already finished

21. She has just (plant) a flower.

his.

17. I (has) already cleaned my room.

- 22. (Have) you ever tasted pizza before we went to the new restaurant?
- 23. How long have they (be) playing at the park?
- 24. Has he (never) been to a football game?





1. Discussing how to live more sustainably

مناقشة كيفية المعيشة بشكل أكثر استدامة



■ 4 1

What could you stop using or buying that is bad for the environment?

I could stop using plastic bags, tea bags, toothbrushes and wasting paper.



What other things could you do to live a more sustainable life?

I could use less water, bamboo toothbrush, reuse water bottles and have energy-saving light bulbs.



2. Asking for and giving opinion السؤال عن وإبداء رأى

(A) Asking for permission

طلب إذن (للتحدث)

- Excuse me. Can I say something?

(B) Asking for opinion

السؤال عن الــرأى

- What do you think about/of ...?

- What is your opinion about/of ...?

(C) Giving opinion

إبداء الرأي

- Personally, I think that

- In my opinion,

Unit 10

Talking about life experiences

التحدث عن التجارب الحياتية





Have you (ever) used a telescope?

No, I have never used it.



What have you been reading recently?

I have been reading a short story.



What have you been dreaming of since you were young?

I have been dreaming to be an astronaut.





A green initiative in Egypt

The initiative "Go Green" starts as part of the National Sustainable Development Plan "Egypt 2030". It aims to change behaviours, and encourage people – especially young people – to protect the environment, natural resources and sea life.

The initiative is set up by the Ministry of Environment. It also raises awareness on the importance of waste recycling, food and energy saving and air pollution reduction. Go Green Initiative's main goal is to create great opportunities for development. Go Green provides simple, everyday actions you can take to reduce your carbon footprint, make our great city more sustainable in the future and help our community. In my opinion, it's a wonderful initiative and we should encourage people to support it.

Unit 10

A biography of Dr Farouk El-Baz

Dr Farouk El-Baz was born in Zagazig, on January 2, 1938. He's is an Egyptian space scientist. He studied geology at Ain Shams University. He worked with NASA on exploring the moon and the planning of the Apollo programme. He studied the geology of the moon, so he advised the astronauts where to land. After studying the moon, Dr El-Baz started studying deserts on Earth. He used satellites to find rivers that were under the sand, and this work has helped Egypt and other countries to find new water. Before this work, Dr El-Baz had also helped to develop special cameras on the space shuttle. He is married. He has four daughters, and six grandchildren. Now, El-Baz is the Research Professor and Director of the Center for Remote Sensing at Boston University in Boston.

Al-Adwaa March Test on Units 9 & 10



Language Functions

Finish	the fo	llowing	dia	ogue:
			-	

Adel is asking Omar about his visit to the museum last weekend. Adel: Hi, Omar! I heard you went to the museum. When did you go? Omar: (1)_____. Adel : Did you go with your class? a school trip. Adel :(3) ? Omar: We came back from the museum at seven in the evening. Adel : What did you learn from the museum? Adel : (5) ?

Omar: Yes, I enjoyed my time.

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

cause - make - do - didn't - doesn't - renewable

Every day, scientists think of new ways of producing (1)...... energy that are inexpensive and don't use fossil fuels to (2).....electricity. They have thought of burning rubbish. If they (3).....burn it, it would go to landfill sites. Scientists want a way that doesn't produce any pollution or (4)...... a problem to the environment. They want to protect the environment.

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Essam Heggy is an Egyptian space scientist. His main interest is in space and planets. Heggy was born in 1975 in the city of Tripoli in Libya to an Egyptian family; his father is the Egyptian artist Mohamed Heggy. He grew up in Tunisia, Egypt and France. He joined Cairo University and graduated with a degree in Astronomy. Later, Essam Heggy went to Paris to complete his studies in 1999 and in 2002, thus becoming the first Egyptian to have a degree in Exoplanet Exploration Science. He served as the Egyptian president advisor for scientific affairs from 2013 to 2014. Essam Heggy works at NASA now. Essam Heggy currently runs a satellite project that studies groundwater and the effects of climate change on desert areas. He is also a scientist who helped in discovery of water research on Mars, and training

astronauts. He tead	hes at a university i	n France and the US/	٨.
	rect answer from a		
		gyptian space scient	ist.
a) book		b) blog	
c) biography		d) review	
2. Essam Heggy	is years ol	d.	
a) 46		b) 47	
c) 48		d) 49	
3. Heggy studies	the effects of clima	te change on	areas
a) wetland		b) desert	ST COD.
c) polar		d) grassland	
B) Answer the follo	wing questions:	The state of the s	
4. What is Essam			
5. Where did Essa	am Heggy get his ur	niversity degree?	
6. How do you th	ink Essam Heggy is	helpful for young pe	ople?

	Vocabulary	and Structur	
			6
Choose the correc			
	uipment that makes	things that are far a	way look nearer.
a) spacecraft	b) telescope	c) satellite	d) station
	to make him ch	ange his mind, but v	ve failed.
a) good	b) helpful		d) vain
	or a person from "sa	il", add the suffix "	
a) -ian	b) -ist	c) -or	d) -er

	4 are pla	nts that are grown in	large quantities for	1000.
	a) Levels	b) Crops	c) Farmers	d) Seeds
1	5. The synonym of "	renewable" is "		7
1	a) terrible	b) attractive	c) expensive	d) sustainable
E	6. Things fall to the	ground because of		
	a) equipment	b) space	c) gravity	d) waste
E	Complete the sen	tences with the cor	rect form of the wor	d(s) in brackets:
	1. He	(not/visit) me before	he flew to Paris.	
	2. He	(do) the homework	for two hours. He has	sn't finished yet.
	3. He	(use to) be fat but no	ow he's thin.	
	4.1(b	ouy) a mobile 2 week	s ago.	
	5. If I had enough r	money, I	(buy) a big house.	
		W	riting	
1	Write ONE HUND	RED and TEN (110) v	words on:	
		"A story	you liked"	
				•••••

April Revision

Vocabulary

Unit 11

Key Vocabulary		
----------------	--	--

المفردات الرئيسية

broadcast		1		1	معردات الربية
Dioaucast	بت إذاعه	government	الحكومة	the press	الصحافة
warning	تحذير	witness	شاهد	tournament	دورة مباريات
media	وسائل الإعلام	news article	مقال إخبارى	award	
			مسال إسبارات	awaiu	جائزة

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

144 1	35 350000			- Linear G	کلمات، مرادفه
Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposi	te) lawsc
normally	عادة	usually/generally	مادة/عاد	abnormally	بشكل غير طبيعى
famous ور	مشمو	well-known	معروف	unknown	غیر معروف
pleased	مسرور	happy/glad	سعيد/مسرور	unhappy/sad	عیر تسروت حزین
true u	حقيقه	real	حقيقب	false/fake	حرین خطأ/مزیف
prefer	يفضل	choose	يختار	dislike	یکره
unfortunately الحظ	لسوء	unluckily	لسوء الحظ	fortunately	يحرد لحسن الحظ

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix aaawii	_	
		اللاحقة Suffix	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
education	التعليم	-al	educational	تميلعت
guard	حارس/يحرس	-ian	guardian	حارس/حام
design	يصمم	-er	designer	مصمم
operate	يشغل	-or	operator	مشغل
journal	مجلة	-ist	journalist	מכפוע

Definitions

التعريفات

ومحافظ governor	the person who rules a city or an area
صحفه journalist	a person whose job is to research and write news articles
عالم لغوى linguist	
مصمم مواقع web designer	
festival احتفال/مهرجان	

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

key vocabala		i .	2		
architect	مهندس معماري	controls	أدوات التحكم	pandemic	جائحة/وباء
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	hero	بطل	population	عدد السكان
expert	خبير	monorail	قطار معلق	virtual reality	الواقع الافتراضى

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
leave	يغادر	depart	يرحل	stay/remain	يبقہ/يظل
advantage	فائدة	benefit	فائدة	disadvantage	عيب/يتلف
float	يطفو	drift	يعوم	sink	يغوص
link	يصل/يربط	join/connect	يربط	disconnect	يفصل
develop	يطور/ينمى	improve	يحسن	neglect	يهمل

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
predict	يتنبأ	-ion	prediction	تنبؤ
success	النجاح	-ful	successful	ناجح
profession	ممنة	-al	professional	مهنی/محترف
complete	مكتمل	-ly	completely	تمامـًا/كليـًا

البادئة Prefix

لمة الجديدة	The new word	الكلمة	Word	البادئة	Prefix
ميد الكتابة	rewrite	یکتب	write	re-	re
ستحيل	impossible	ممكن	possible	im-	in
يوافق	disagree	يوافق	agree	dis-	di

Definitions

التعريفات

laws	قوانين	rules we must follow
cycle lane	ممر (حارة) للدراجات	a special place where people can cycle on roads
internship	فترة تدريب	when you work, often without pay, to learn about a job
marathon	ماراثون	a running race of around 42 kilometres
traffic	العرور	all the vehicles that are moving along the roads in a particular area
professiona	al qualification التأهيل العهني	something that shows you have special training to do a job

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Read and complete the text with words	from the	following	list:
---	----------	-----------	-------

nead and complete	e the text with wo	ords from the follow	ving list:
will - goin	ng to - qualification	ons - ambitions - m	ake - do
Everyone has the	eir own (1)	I dream to be a b	usiness person I have
i will set up my owr	n business one da	v. That's why I'm (2)	study band to
go to a good univer	Sity. After I gradua	ite. I'm going to (3)	2 COURSO to got
some professional (4)I want	to improve my skills	s.
2 Choose the correct	answer from a, b	c or d:	
1. Ais a personal power and a	on whose job is to	research and write	news articles
a) Hewsteader	b) designer	c) journalist	d) photographer
2. The museum is clo	sed on Mondays.	The antonym of "clo	sed"is" "
a) upset	D) Cross	c) locked	d) open
3. A/Anis a p	iece of writing tha	at is published in a n	ewspaper or a
magazine.	3	pasioned in a n	ewspaper or a
a) presenter	b) governor	c) article	d) voice
4. Our new culture co	entre will be locate	ed here. Add the suff	fix "" to correct
the underlined wo	rd.	ou nere. Add the sun	ix to correct
a) -ian	b) -ion	c) -ful	d) -al
5. The couldn	't find a rock to cli	imb any higher	u) -ai
a) climber	b) operator	c) governor	d) worker
6. It's a good news	and a good	weekend report	d) worker
a) essay	b) poem	c) story	d) novel
7. A/An is a sp	pecial place where	people can cycle or	u) novei
a) device	b) cycle lane	c) printer	d) alagenia la co
8. Ais a railwa	y system that use	s a single rail usually	thich above the
ground.	, ,	o a sirigic rail, usuali	riigh above the
a) qualification	b) goal	c) skill	d) manaua!!
9. If you want to	your goal, you	should work hard	d) monorail
a) achieve	b) pass	c) fail	الم
10. To be is to h	ave no mistakes	c) run	d) succeed
a) correct	b) equipment	c) cup	al\ max.da
11. To get the noun for	a person from "as	sist" add the suffix"	d) review
a) -ity	b) -able	c) -ation	
12. The system has the	ability to run more	e programmes The	d) -ant
is "".	,	- p. ogrammes. me a	intonym or ability"
a) driverless	b) distance	c) capability	d) inability
			a, masinty

B Language

Unit 11

Reported speech

الكلام المنقول (غير المباشر)

الكلام غير المباشر: هو الكلام المنقول على لسان شخص آخر ولا يوضع بين علامتي التنصيص.

Nada said that she was ill that day.

How to change from direct to indirect:

ا- نحول فعل القول كالأتى:

١- نحذف الأقواس ونربط بين فعل القول والجملة الخبرية بـ that ويمكن الاستغناء عنها.

٣- نغير الضمائر حسب المتحدث والمخاطب كالآتى:

l → he – she	we they	our → their
you → I – he – she	my → his – her you → they – we	your → my – his – her – our – their
me → him – her	mine → his – hers	yours → mine – his – hers – ours – theirs

3- يتم تغيير الروابط الزمنية كالآتم:

Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
next (week)	the following (week)	today	that day
tomorrow	- the following day - the next day	last (week)	- the (week) before - the previous (week)
yesterday	- the day before - the previous day	ago	before
tonight	that night	this	that
now	then	these	those

٥- نغير الأزمنة إلى الماضى الأبعد.

Examples:

- He said, "I like fish."
 - He said that he liked fish.
- "I've ironed the skirt," said Sara.
 - Sara said that she had ironed the skirt.

The future simple tense

Tense	Future with "will"	Future with "be going to"
of the second	To make predictions about the future with (probably, I expect, I'm sure, I think, I don't think, perhaps). التنبؤ واحتمال حدوث شمء فم المستقبل.	To talk about plans that you have made. - للحديث عن الخطط التى وضعتها.
- Sorm	Subj. + will ('ll) + inf. Subj. + will not (won't) + inf. e.g. • I think you will get this job.	Subj. + am/is/are + going to + inf. Subj. + am not/isn't/aren't + going to + inf.
ď	• I won't tell anyone your secret.	e.g. • They are going to travel to Alexandria. • She isn't going to visit her aunt.
Questions	Will + subj. + inf.? Wh-word + will + subj. + inf.? e.g. • Will temperatures rise in the	Am/ls/Are + subj. + going to + inf.? Wh-word + am/is/are + subj. + going to + inf.?
Otte	future? • Where will you go next holiday?	e.g. • Is Iman going to help with housework?• When are your parents going to travel abroad?

2 will/won't be able to

Usage	To talk about ability in the future. الحديث عن القدرة في المستقبل		
Corm	Subj. + will ('ll) be able to + inf. Subj. + won't be able to + inf.		
	e.g. • He'll be able to answer the question. • Amir won't be able to play football with us tomorrow.		
Ouestlons	Will + subj. + be able to + inf.? Wh-word + will + subj. + be able to + inf.?		
	• Will we be able to use driverless cars in the future? • How will we be able to travel in the future?		

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We (have) dinner at that new restaurant two days ago. 2. Mira didn't (went) to the meeting last week. 3. They (not/pass) their last exam. 4. When did they..... (met) Tamer? 5.(Did) you at the party last night? 6. Taha (visit) his grandmother last weekend. 7. Tara said she (will) do her homework. 8. He (said) me that his mother was there. 9. They said they were having a great time (here) on holiday. 10. She told me that Hala was arriving (today). 11. They told me they (lived) in China for five years. 12. We said that (they) wanted our books back. 13. Sami (not/able) change the window himself tomorrow, he is too young. 14. I'm sure you (achieve) your goals. 15. I don't think you (like) this movie. It's very boring. 16. I expect we (live) on the moon after 20 years. 17. lt (snow) tomorrow. 18. Mrs Samira is sorry. She (be/able) to come. 19. He's holding the remote control. He is going (turning) on the television. 20. We (not/going) paint our bedroom tomorrow. 21. When (you are) going to go on holiday?

22. The sky is very dark. It (will) rain.

23. It's 8:30! You're (go) to miss your train!

24. I (not/go) repair it today. I'm too busy.

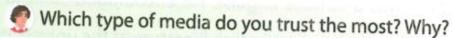




1. Discussing types of news مناقشة أنواع الأخبار







I trust a TV news programme because it's always accurate.



Which job would you like to do in the media? Why?

I would like to be a web designer because I like designing.



2. Reporting news الأخبار

Re	por	rtin	g n	iews
			-	

Responding to news

Have you heard that ...?

Really? / I didn't know that.

Did you know that ...?

That's bad news.

I heard that ... / Apparently, ...

Wow!/That's good news.

According to (the newspaper) ...

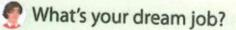
Good idea.

Unit 12

مناقشة الأهداف الشخصية Discussing personal goals







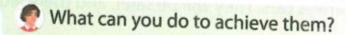
My dream job is a robotics engineer.



What are your other goals?

I'd like to start my own business.





I'm going to do an internship to get some professional qualifications.





Unit 11

A biography of Safia el-Mohandes

Safia el-Mohandes was the first female voice on the radio. She was born in 1922 in Cairo. Her father was a famous linguist. He encouraged Safia to read Arabic books and novels. She also studied English literature at the university and graduated from the Faculty of Arts in 1945. In 1947, she joined the Egyptian radio, and she was the first female radio presenter. She presented programmes for women and for children. Her most famous programme, 'Housewives', presented news, educational advice, and drama for the whole Egyptian family. Safia was very kind and helpful to all radio broadcasters. She helped everyone, and so she was called 'the mother of all broadcasters'. She was head of radio broadcasting from 1975 until she retired in 1982.

Unit 12

Future predictions

I think life will be easier in the future. We will use modern technology more and more in our daily life. Houses in the future will be different from our houses today. We'll need more gardens in the future, but there won't be much space. So, the garden will be on the roof. People will all use electric cars in the future, so there'll be chargers for electric cars next to each house. There'll be lots of solar panels and wind turbines. They'll make electricity. There will be robots to do all the housework. We will all have driverless cars. They will be safer, and there won't be any accidents. Students will read a book or watch TV while a computer in the car drives them to school!

Al-Adwaa April Test

on Units 11 & 12

30-

Language Functions

	Finish the following dialogue:
	Zaher would like to do a job in the media.
	Ramy: What would you like to do after graduating from the university?
	Zaher: (1)
	Ramy: Which job would you like to do in the media?
i	Zaher: (2)
	Ramy: (3)?
	Zaher: I would like to be a web designer because I like designing. (4)
ı	Ramy: I would like to be a doctor.
	Zaher: Would you like to travel abroad and work there?
	Ramy: (5)
ı	Zaher: I hope you will achieve your dreams.
1	Reading Comprehension
2	Read and complete the text with words from the following list:
ı	do – devices – devises – expert – will be – is
	My science teacher always tells us about what life (1)like in the future.
	We will use our eyes to control our (2) Perhaps we will travel into space
	by plane. It will be the main transport. An (3) thinks we will (4)

Read the following, then answer the questions:

happened, our lives would be easier.

'Here is Cairo,' (Huna Alqahira) the first words on the Egyptian radio were said by Ahmed Salem on the Egyptian radio upon its opening on May 31st, 1934. This day is called Egyptian Radio Day. Egyptian radio is also known as 'El-Bernameg Al-Aam' and 'Radio Cairo'. Ahmed Salem was one of the first broadcasters on the Egyptian radio. Salem was born in Abu Kebir in Sharqiya in 1910.

online learning. Students will be able to complete a school project anywhere. If it

Although Salem studied engineering in England, he only worked in it for a short time. His special voice and his knowledge allowed him to head the Arabic section of the Egyptian radio. Unfortunately, the old recording tools at that time did not allow for keeping the heritage of Ahmed Salem.

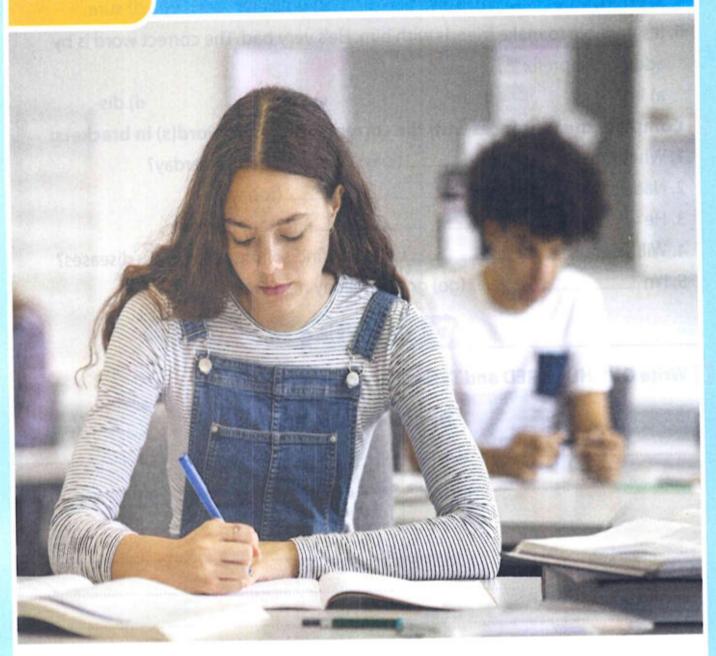
In May 1935, Salem stopped working on the Egyptian Radio after Talaat Harb offered him to manage the Egypt Acting Company. He then managed Studio Masr and presented his first production, the movie "**Wedad**" and the heroine was Umm Kulthum. Salem died in September 1949.

Kulthum. Salem died ii	n September 1945	7.	
A) Choose the correct	t answer from a,	b, c or d:	
		in the Egyptian radio	о.
a) newsreader	b) presenter	c) journalist	d) designer
2. Ahmed Salem wo	orked as a/an	for a short time	
a) actor	b) manager	c) engineer	d) presenter
3. The underlined p	ronoun "He" refer	s to	
a) company		b) Umm Kulthum	
c) Talaat Harb		d) Ahmed Salem	
B) Answer the follow	ing questions:		
4. Who first manag			
5. Summarise the la	ast paragraph in o	one sentence.	
6. Why do you thin	k we don't have re	ecords of Ahmed Sale	m?
	A A SHIP STORY THE	I Charles have	20
<u></u>	Vocabulary	and Structure	
Choose the correct	answer from a. h	. cord:	
1 To is to b	areak open sudde	nly, or make somethir	ng do this.
1212	b) control	c) research	d) steal
a) burst		the road. It	vesterday.
Total Control of Contr	b) go into	c) click on	d) broke down
a) bring up			ne roads in a particular
NO DOMESTIC	all the verlicles th	at are moving diong ti	
area.	b) Drone	c) Control	d) Law
a) Traffic		r? The antonym of "flo	7.30-0.00-0.00-0.00-0.00-0.00-0.00-0.00-
The second secon		c) sink	d) drift
a) increase	b) depart	C) SILIK	w/ w///

	travel next week.	
	a) impossible b) likely c) unlikely d) sure	
	6. It's possible to make friends with him. He's very bad. The correct word is by	
	adding the prefix ""	
	a) in- b) im- c) en- d) dis-	
E	Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:	
	1. What time(was) you go to bed yesterday?	
	2. Nada said that she was ill (today).	
	3. He watched TV after he(clean) his room.	
	4. Will scientists	
	5. I'm(go) go on holiday next week.	
	Writing	
É	Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:	
		,
	"Transport in the future"	
		•••••

Part 3

SB & WB General Exercises



SB & WB General Exercises

مجموعة مختارة من أهم الأسئلة فى كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات.

End of Term Practice

اختبار نهاية الفصل الدراسى.

Part3

SB & WB General Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Unit 7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary			
1 hab	itats usually have larg	ge green areas and no	mountains.
a) Polar		c) Grassland	
2. A ha		s. It is usually very hot	
a) coastal		c) wetland	
3. There is not alv		oitats, but there is alwa	
a) wetland		c) polar	
4 habi		and are often covered	
a) Coastal		c) Rainforest	d) Polar
5 habi	tats are next to the se	ea. You often find rock	s there.
a) Wetland	b) Polar	c) Desert	d) Coastal
6. Tois t	o damage something	so badly that you car	nnot repair it.
a) save		c) destroy	
7. "" me	ans a group of anima	als or plants of the sam	ne kind.
	b) Pieces	c) Spices	d) Species
8. Siwa is a very fa	mousin Eg	ypt.	
a) oasis	b) mountain	c) river	d) forest
9. "" me	ans very far from son	newhere.	
a) River	b) Produce		d) Protect
10. "" me	ans the land that is b	elow the area around	it.
a) Length	b) Depression		d) Desert
11. "" me	ans the remains of ar	nimals or plants that liv	ved in the past.
a) Remote	b) Preserved		d) Fossils
12. "" me	ans kept safe from be	eing damaged.	
a) Preserved	b) Stones	c) Species	d) Tower

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
Language
1. The name for the Sahara Desert is (taking) from the Arabic for desert.
2. A lot of our rainforests(cut) down every year.
3. The national park is(visiting) by many people every year.
4. Every year, eggs(lay) by turtles on the beach.
5. Some of the turtles' eggs are eaten (with) birds and animals.
6. The park and beaches are also(clean) by volunteers.
7. A report about endangered animals and plants(were) published.
8. In the last 100 years, more than 800 species(lose).
9. Six species of animals (was) removed from the danger list, including
the white rhino and the panda.
10. When(Petra/named) one of the new Seven Wonders of the World?
11. Who was the Taj Mahal(build) by?
12. What was the unusual ingredient (using) in the building of the Great
Wall of China?
13. The unusual cave was(causing) by the sea.
14. Long ago, camels(called) "ships of the desert".
15. Last year, many new homes(built) near the river.
16. Hundreds of new trees (was planted) by children from local schools.
17. People believed that the lake was(forming) by a volcano.
18. The letter was(deliver) by the postman this morning.
19. Cotton (grows) by farmers in the Nile Delta.
20. The Railway Children was written (with) an English woman called
E Nesbit in 1905.
21. The football World Cup(is won) by France in 2018.
22. Many computers (were made) in Japan every year.
23. My grandfather's house (is built) in around 1850.
24 Thousands of fish (catch) from the Mediterranean Sea every day.

25. When I was ill last month, I(took) to a hospital in Cairo, but I am well

now.

Unit 8

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Reading Comprehension

live - renewable - fuels - lives - recycle - cut

We should do our best to keep the environment clean. We mustn't (1) down trees because they absorb carbon dioxide. Also, we mustn't burn fossil (2) to avoid climate change. That's why we should use (3) energy such as solar energy and wind power. So, we will be able to (4) in a safe environment.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

	the state of the s		
Vocabulary			
1 is the da	mage caused to the	e air by chemicals and	waste.
a) Air pollution	b) Melting	c) Deforestation	d) Landfill site
2. A site is	a place where peop	le leave rubbish on the	land.
a) burning	b) melting	c) cooling	d) landfill
3ice is a probl	em in the Arctic and	Antarctic because of gl	obal warming.
a) Melting	b) Heating	c) Cooling	d) Burning
Egypt is usually st	unny, so it is a great	place to use	
		c) fossil fuels	
5 seas are	something that can	kill coral reefs.	
a) Higher	b) Colder	c) Cooler	d) Warmer
6. "" happ	ens when all the tre	es in an area are cut do	own.
 a) Deforestation 	b) Pollution	c) Production	d) Destruction
7 is a gree	nhouse gas from lar	ndfill sites.	
a) Methane	b) Nitrogen	c) Oxygen	d) Hydrogen
8. Weavers use a ma			
	b) loom		d) weaving
9. To is to ta			
	b) absorb		d) avoid
Wind and waves a		ms of	
a) renewable ener		b) fossil fuels	
c) climate change		d) pollution	

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: Language

Language
1. What will you do if you(not/pass) your exams this year?
2. What(you/will) do if you don't understand the homework?
3. If our oceans keep(get) warmer, some coral reefs will die.
4. You can choose(recycle) your plastic bottles.
5. We can avoid(cut) down the trees by building the road in a different
place.
6. What do I need(buy) from the shops, Mum?
7. Do you enjoy(play) the piano?
8. My family has decided(go) to Jordan next year.
9. One of the reasons we are having more floods is (why) a lot of the
world's ice is melting.
10. Coral reefs do not like changes in temperature (That's why) climate
change can kill them.
11. More than 70% of the Earth is ocean(Because), we know more about
the moon than we do about many of our oceans.
12. Rainforests are very important for the environment. That is(why) thei
trees absorb a lot of carbon dioxide.
13. You should choose(wear) the correct clothes when you visit wetlands
14. If we don't stop (cut) down our rainforests, we won't stop climate
change.
15. Miss Mansoor wants (start) a recycling project at school.
16. The exam is next month, so I've planned(revise) every evening.
17. If you keep eating sweets, you(have) bad teeth.
18. If it(be) too hot tomorrow, we will go to the beach.
19. You(get) very healthy if you go running every day.
20. If the train is late, I(phone) you.
21. Ahmed (not/come) to school tomorrow if he feels ill.
22. Plastic is bad for the environment(Because), it is easy to recycle.

Unit 9

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Reading (Compreh	ension
-----------	---------	--------

a) factory

protect – initiatives	 sustainable 	- seedlings -	protects -	pollution
-----------------------	---------------------------------	---------------	------------	-----------

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary				
1 trees o	row in seawater alor	ng the coast.		
a) Bamboo			d) Mangrove	
2. There are more	floods in many coun	tries because of the		
a) sleeping			d) falling	
3 are sm	all, young plants.			
a) Crops	b) Seedlings	c) Levels	d) Fossils	
4. This cup is mad	e from a tall plant ca	lled		
a) bamboo	b) bulb	c) battery	d) mangrove	
5. You can use a/a	n to charge	a phone.	1174	
a) remote control		b) air conditioning		
c) light bulb		d) rechargeable b	attery	
6. You can use a co	omputer to	move around your cor	mputer screen.	
a) mouse	b) printer	c) speaker	d) player	
7. You can use an .	car to travel	between villages.	E6 650,	
a) electrician	b) electric	c) electricity	d) electronic	
8. You can use a/a	n to control	your television.		
a) charger		b) antenna		
c) remote contro	ol	d) receiver		
9. You can use the	air to keep	your house cool in sur	nmer.	
a) conditions	b) condition	c) conditioned	d) conditioning	
0. These	use less electricity th	an the ones we used to	o have.	

c) bulbs

b) bamboo

d) fossils

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: Language 1. In the past, people(not/use) use energy-saving light bulbs. 2. I didn't(use/have) an electric toothbrush, but now I've got one. 3. Mum(use/get) plastic bags at the supermarket, but now she gets paper ones. 4. Dad(use/turn off) his computer at night, but he does now. 5. The Ancient Egyptians(use) a form of writing called hieroglyphics. 6. In some countries, it (not/use/rain) in the summer as much as it does now. 7. My grandparents didn't use to(sending) emails. They wrote letters. 8. If we(live) in Hurghada, we would go to the beach. We would have fewer storms if climate change(stop). 10. If they(not/cut) down so many trees, they'd have bigger forests. 11. If we had more time, we(visit) our cousins in Greece. 12. She(not/be) an environmental scientist if she didn't love nature. 13. If there (are) more mangrove trees along the coast, there would be fewer floods. 14. What(will) you do if you got a job in a different city? 15. Tarek would pass the test if he(studies) harder. 16. What clothes would you wear if you(live) in a cold country? 17. The volleyball team(win) the match if they had better players. 18. I would write to Nahla if I(know) her address. 19. We would visit our cousins more often if they(not/live) in Canada. 20. If Hamdi was taller, he(be) a very good basketball player. 21. We could get to the coast quicker if they(have) better roads. 22. If we used greener energy, we(produce) less pollution. 23.(you/buy) solar panels for your house if you had enough money? 24. We(build) a solar farm for our community if we bought the land.

25. If you wanted to do a green initiative, what(it/be)?

Unit 10

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Reading	Compi	rehension
---------	-------	-----------

astronauts - walke	d - rivers -	satellites - w	ireless - walking
--------------------	--------------	----------------	-------------------

Scientists had done a lot of research before the first person (1)...... on the moon in 1969, and one of the most important scientists was Farouk El-Baz. He taught (2)...... which rocks to take from the moon on later visits. Farouk started studying deserts on the Earth. He used (3)...... to find (4)...... to that were under the sand, and this work has helped Egypt and other countries to find new water.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary			
1. A/Anis	a machine in space t	hat goes around the I	Earth.
a) astronaut	b) moon	c) satellite	d) telescope
2. A/Anis	a person who studie	s something carefully	
a) astronaut	b) astronomer	c) researcher	d) cleaner
3. A space	is a large spacecraft	where people live an	d work.
a) station	b) satellite	c) astronaut	d) telescope
4. A/Anis	a person who travels	into space.	
a) astronomer	b) astronaut	c) engineer	d) pilot
5. A/An is a p	piece of equipment yo	u use to see things tha	at are far away.
a) planet	b) spacecraft	c) telescope	d) satellite
6. "" is a fo	orce which attracts th	ings or people to the	centre of the Earth
a) Gravity			
7. Someone who s	tudies the stars and p	olanets is called a/an	**********************
a) astronaut	b) astronomer		d) sailor

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language	
----------	--

- 1. I(not/go) to this restaurant before. Is it good?
- 2. A: Why is your hair wet? B: We(swim) in the sea!
- 3. Ahmed(read) three books this week. He loves reading!
- 4. I'm really tired because I (revise) all night for my test.
- 5. Tarek's head aches because he (watch) television for too long.

7. We took a taxi to	the beach because	l because she(b the train(alrea (not/rain) for wee	ady/left).
		he hadn't eaten lunch	
AND THE PARTY OF T		fore she went to Rom	
		he(paint) it ye	
12. Ahmed's mother	was not happy beca	ause he (not/ti	idy) his room.
13. Hoda did very w	ell in the test becaus	se she (revise)	carefully.
	Uni	t 11	
1 Read and complet	te the text with wo	rds from the followin	ng list:
Reading Compreh	ension		
different – gov	vernor – meet – me	eting – operator – pł	notographer
"I've always liked	taking photographs	. However, I never want	ted to be a (1)
The same of the sa			
And the second		omorrow, I will be worki	oc ov money same company the m
a meeting with som	e important people. I	have never met the (3).	of Cairo before
I am looking forwar			
2 Choose the correc	t answer from a, b,	c or d:	
Vocabulary			
1. A resea	rches and writes ne	ws articles.	
a) presenter	b) designer	c) journalist	d) news article
2. A person who co	ontrols a television c	amera is a camera	
a) presenter	b) operator	c) officer	d) designer
3. A person who ta	lks on a radio progra	amme is a radio	
a) designer	b) journalist	c) presenter	d) operator
4. A person who de	ecides how a webpa	ge should look is a we	eb
a) operator	b) designer	c) officer	d) journalist
5. Theis a	all types of newspap	ers, the internet, mag	azines and
television.			
a) library	b) book	c) media	d) literature
Proposition of the Contract of			

6. A person whose	job is to read the n	ews is a news	····· •
a) operator	b) journalist		d) reader
7. When a ball or p	oipe has a hole in it,	we say that it has	
a) stuck	b) clicked	c) burst	d) donated
8. People often giv	/e you a w	hen something migh	
a) whale	b) warning	c) swimming	d) building
9. If a car or person	n is unable to move	, we say they are	
a) stuck	b) burst	c) knocked	d) donated
10. The most impor	tant person in each	area of Egypt is the	
a) operator	b) designer		d) governor
3 Complete the ser	itences with the co	rrect form of the wo	rd(s) in brackets:
Language			
1. A witness said tl	nat the building	(is) on fire.	
		urnament (wi	Start the next day
3. The police said t	hat lots of mobile p	hones (have)	been stolen that year.
4. The scientist exp	plained that the wor	ld was warming beca	use there (ic)
climate change.		was warning beca	(15)
1.00		(is) the biggest in	Egypt
6. The owner expla	ined that there	(will) be over 100	now ichs
7. The owner told	is that the nark	(has taken) ever t	hree years to be built.
8. Heba (to	ld) that it had been	noisy	iree years to be built.
	(has) a shop i		
11. Samy said that h	(ifi) looking	forward to visiting he	r friends.
11. Samy said that h	e(IS) tirea.		v 1 1 1
×	Uni	t 12	
Read and comple	te the text with wo	ords from the followi	ng list:
Reading Compreh	ension		
businesses -	accountant – goir	g – will – operator –	internship
I'm good with r	numbers, so I'm (1)	to get a good	d job with a business
in Cairo. I'll proba	bly do an (2)	first. But this is a	un important inh All
be an (4)		money they have! Th	at's wny I'm going to

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

	Vocabulary			
	1is a runr	ning race of around 42	2 kilometres.	
			c) Chess	d) Marathon
	2. A professional	is something tha	at shows you have spe	cial training to do
	a job.			
		b) internship	c) qualification	d) ambition
	3. To "" is to			
	a) possible	b) get up	c) set up	d) finish
	4shows h	now much space is bet	tween two things.	1
	a) Distance	b) Marathon	c) Ambition	d) Qualification
	5. A is the	ability to do somethir	ng well.	
	a) skip			d) skull
	6. A/An is w	hen you work, often v	without pay, to learn a	bout a job.
			c) amateur	
	7. A person who de		a/anenginee	
	a) robotics	The State of the S	c) robots	
	8. A is an 6	electric equipment that	at can do a special job.	
	a) drone	The state of the s	c) device	
	9. A is a w	ay to solve a problem	or answer a question.	
	a) control		c) traffic	
1	10. A lane i		e people can cycle on	
	a) sign	b) flying	c) recycle	d) cycle
3	Complete the sen	tences with the corre	ect form of the word(s) in brackets:
j	54777	terrees with the torre		
	Language	.) (1) 191		
		ather (been) lik		
		u(does) when		
	(4)	will) travel to space in		
		(be) hot and sunny to		uturo
			grow food on in the f	
			uce their own electrici(charge) equipme	
ı		Still t, we it be able	(criarge) equipino	ent at nome as we
	exercise.	s of challenges in the	future, but scientists	(he/able) find
		to some of them.	idiale, but scientists	(bc/db/c/iii/d
	-		s, so he won't	able) go to
		very well ill ills exam	13, 30 HE WOH C	40 to
	university.			



End of Term Practice

WB pages 118 - 120



Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Baher a	and Marwan are talking a	bout where people will live in the future.
		will be able to live in houses under the ground.
Baher	:That's right. What kind	of energy will they use?
	n: (2)	
	: (3)	
Marwai	n: They will use things like	wind turbines to produce renewable energy.
	: (4)	
Marwai	n: Yes, we'll all live in tall b	ouildings with solar energy, too.
	: I think this won't cause	

Marwan: (5).....

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with four words from the following list:

will - renewable - fuels - won't - recycle - cut

We should do our best to keep the environment clean. We mustn't (1)_____ down trees because they absorb carbon dioxide. Also, we mustn't burn fossil (2)..... to avoid climate change. That's why we should use (3)..... energy such as solar energy and wind power. So, we (4)..... be able to live in a safe environment.

Read the following text. Then answer the questions:

If someone asked you to name a famous trip to the moon, you would probably say the Apollo 11 trip in 1969. But did you know that when Apollo 17 went there in 1972, there had been five other trips to the moon? There have been no trips since 1972.

We all know Neil Armstrong was the first person to walk on the moon, but who was the last person? That was Eugene Cernan. He was on a 12-day trip on Apollo 17 which brought the largest moon rock to Earth! When Neil Armstrong walked on the moon, he said it had been one small step for a man, but a very big step for all of us. When Eugene Cernan left the moon, he said, "We shall return, with peace and hope."

	So why were trips to the moon stopp		
te	technology gets better, there are plans to	send spacecraft	to the moon again.
A)	A) Choose the correct answer from a, b	, c or d:	
	1. What is the text mainly about?		
	a) It's not expensive to land on the	moon.	
	b) Trips to the moon.		
	c) Neil Armstrong was the first pers	on to walk on the	moon.
	d) Trips to other planets.		
	2. What does the underlined word "na	ame" mean?	
	a) Mention. b) Speak.	c) Explain.	d) Travel.
	3. Trips to the moon stopped because		
	a) were dangerous	b) were not use	eful
	c) cost a lot of money	d) caused a lot	of damage
B	B) Answer the following questions:		
	4. What did Eugene Cernan bring to E	Earth?	
	5. When Eugene Cernan left the moo and hope." What did this show?	n, he said, "We sha	all return, with peace
	6. When was the last trip to the moor	1?	
_	C Vocabulary	and Structu	real

4 Choose the corr	ect answer from a, l	o, c or d:	
1. Rewrite your c	omposition again. Th	e prefix "re" means to d	o it
a) next	b) again	c) first	d) last
2. We should pro	tect our planet. "Prot	ect" is similar in meanir	ng to "".
a) increase	b) damage	c) collect from	d) keep safe
3. The person wh	no studies space is a s	pace	

c) artist

b) scientist

d) pharmacist

a) dentist

	The strument used to make distant objects appear nearer.	
	a) thermometer b) telescope	
	c) mirror d) microscope	
	5. In the past, we used traditional ways of farming. The antonym of "tradition	al"
	is"".	555
	a) old b) expensive c) modern d) far	
	6. The fossils were preserved well for further study. This means they	
	were	
	a) discovered b) kept c) chosen d) sold	
E	Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets	
	1. The island(surround) by deep, blue sea.	
	2. If I(be) in trouble, would you help me?	
	3. We plan(spend) the weekend in our village.	
	4. Samir told me that he (travel) to London the following Friday.	
1	5. I didn't go to the theatre until I (finish) my work.	
	(III I SII) IIIy WOIK.	
	(D) Writing	
6	Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on one of the following:	
	1. A report on a habitat you visited. Write where it is, some facts about it, and how to protect it.	*
	2. A biography of a person you like. Write about his/her early life, career and	
	what he/she did.	
	3. A paragraph on life in the future. Write about transport, food and the	
	environment.	
		30000000
ı		

Part 4

Final Exams



Governorates Exams

اختبارات المحافظات.

Part 4

Governorate Exams

Cairo Governorate



Language Functions



Finish the following dialogue:

Two friends are talking about planting trees.

Amr : What shall we do this summer?

Yasser: (1).....

Amr : Good, planting trees is a good idea.

Yasser: (2).....?

Amr : My brother will help us and we can ask some friends, too.

Yasser: (3)....., they will be happy to do so.

Amr : Where can we start?

Yasser: (4).....

Amr : (5).....?

Yasser: We will start after our exams.

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



fur - who - famous - safe - which - short

A mongoose has a long body, with (1)...... legs and a long tail. Their bodies are covered by thick (2).............................. Mongooses can see and hear very well, (3)...... helps them to find food and avoid danger. Mongooses are (4)..... for fighting snakes. They are able to kill snakes by biting them.

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Over 65 years ago, the world's first computer was born. Scientists called it "The Baby", but it was huge. It filled a full room! Three people made the computer and programmed maths problems for it. On June 19, 1948, the computer solved its first maths problem - in 52 minutes! At that time, this was amazing.

Computers are now much smaller. With touch-screen technology, many computers don't need extra things, like a keyboard or a mouse. In the future, computers probably won't need these things at all. Some computers, like the smartphone, can fit in one hand. Computers are also more powerful today.

How else will computers change in the future? A computer's brain is a chip inside the computer. So, computers will be smaller and even more powerful. Perhaps they'll even think like humans! Maybe we won't need to tell computers what to do because they'll decide for themselves!

A) Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. The first compute	er filled a		•
a) palace	b) hand	c) room	d) building
2. The Baby comput	ter found the answer	to math	ns problem(s) in
52 minutes.			
a) one	b) two	c) three	d) four
3. Today, many com	puters don't have		
a) keyboard	b) mouse	c) touch screen	d) chips
B) Answer the follow	ing questions:		
4. What does the ur	nderlined pronoun "t	hese" refer to?	
5. Why do you think	k we may not need to	tell computers wh	at to do?
6. What is the main	idea of the passage?		
	Vocabulary a	nd Structure	
	vocabatal y al	ia ou accar c	
Choose the correct a			3
1. We should protect	our planet. <u>"Protect"</u> i	s similar in meanin	g to
	b) damage		
2. Many ancient	are found in th	ne Fayum Depression	on. These are bones
of animals.			
a) carriages	b) fossils	c) owners	
People in Egypt pla	nt mangrove seedlin	gs along the Red So	ea
a) rocks	b) cost	c) coast	d) ponds

	4. The	. Is a large natural area	of land which is r	mostly green.
	a) shape	b) grassland	c) desert	d) coastal
	5. We can add the	e prefix "" to	the word "scope	"to mean an instrument
		tant things nearer.		
	a) fore-	b) inter-	c) pre-	d) tele-
	6. A/An	is the person who ha	s seen an accider	nt or a crime and can tel
	the police abou			
	a) witness	b) sailor	c) tailor	d) designer
5	Complete the se	ntences with the corr	ect form of the v	word(s) in brackets:
		(using) cleaner re		
	2. If we lived in H	urghada, we	(go) to the bead	th. 😈
	3. They	(study) English for th	ree hours now.	
	4. The housewife	(say) the t	thief had stolen	the house the previous
	night.			
	5. No one	(see) a photo of th	e far side of the r	moon before astronauts
	landed on it.			
		O W	/riting	
6	Write ONE HUNI	ORED and TEN (110) w	ords on the follo	owing:
		"Keeping or	ur air clean"	





1 Finish the following dialogue:

Faten : Good morning Huda

Faten and Huda are talking about their last mid-year holiday.



raten	Good Morning, Hada.
Huda	: Good morning, Faten. Where did you go last mid-year holiday?
Faten	: (1)
Huda	: Alexandria! Which places did you visit there?
Faten	: (2)

Faten: I went with my family.

Huda: (4).....?

Huda:(3).....?

Faten: Of course, you can come with us next holiday.

Huda:(5)......



Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



years - cats - has -	tourists -	have -	hotel
----------------------	------------	--------	-------

A new water park opened in Sharm El-Sheikh. It is the biggest park in Egypt. It (1)...... many restaurants and the owner is going to build a new (2)...... next year. He said that it had taken over three (3)...... to be built. Many Egyptians and (4)...... visit it.

Read the following text, then answer the questions:



There are some beautiful natural wonders in Egypt, such as the White Desert, the National Park and Al-Nayzak Lake. There are also some wonderful man-made wonders, such as the Great Pyramid and the Citadel of Qaitbay in Alexandria.

Egypt also has some wonders that aren't visited by many tourists like Gabel Elba. This is because it is difficult to reach. Another wonder that is difficult to reach

is the Lost City because it is now under the Mediterranean Sea near Alexandria. When the Lost City was discovered, Frank Goddio saw lots of very old statues, temples and monuments there.

Another wonder is the Great Sand Sea in the south of Egypt. This is a part of the Western Desert where you can find lots of big sand dunes. Some unusual glass is also found in the Great Sand Sea. Egypt's natural and man-made wonders are among the most beautiful wonders in the world.

A) Choose the co	orrect answer from a	a, b, c or d:	
	ea of the text is		
a) the Egypt	ian seas	b) the Egy	ptian monuments
c) the Egypti	an wonders		ptian people
2. The Great Py	ramid is a		
a) man-mad		b) modern	1
c) natural		d) new	
3. Some unusu	al glass is found in		
a) the Great			at Sand Sea
c) the Nayza	k Lake	d) the Cita	
B) Answer the fo	llowing questions:		
4. What does tl	ne underlined prono	un "it" refer to?	
5. Summarise th	ne wonders which are	mentioned in the	text. (At least 4 wonders)
6. Have you vis	ited any of these wor	nders before?	
	Vocabular	y and Struct	ture
Choose the corr	ect answer from a, b	o, c or d:	
	dioxide from th		3
a) liquid	b) carbon	c) gas	d) oxygen
2. We add the pre			"to give the opposite.
a) pre-	b) un-	c) dis-	d) inter-
			No. / III I A And I

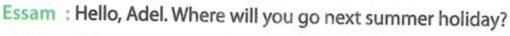
	3 is the sou	und produced by a p	person when he sp	oeaks.
	a) Voice	b) Playing	c) Running	d) Vibration
	4. My teacher told me	not to be late again	. He gave me a	
	a) promise	b) warning	c) witness	d) present
	5. A/An is a	person who travels	into space.	
	a) doctor	b) player	c) astronaut	d) nurse
	6. The Iron Woman wa	s enormous. The wo	ord "enormous" me	eans very
	a) small	b) ugly	c) tiny	d) big
5	Complete the senten	ces with the correc	t form of the wo	rd(s) in brackets:
	 If we had more more 	ney, we(can) buy a new mo	obile.
	2. We should keep	(build) new	schools.	5
	The Kharga Oasis	(visit) by m	nany tourists every	year.
	4. Mona said she			
	Rami had tidied his	room before he (sta	rt) stud	dying.
		W _I	riting	
		and the second second	9	
-			ala an the fallow	
6	Write ONE HUNDRED	O and TEN (110) wo	ords on the follow	ring:
6		D and TEN (110) wo	80.00	
6			80.00	
6			80.00	
6			80.00	
6		review about your	new smartphone	
6	"A	review about your	new smartphone	e"
6	"A	review about your	new smartphone	e"
6	"A	review about your	new smartphone	e"
6	"A	review about your	new smartphone	e"
6	"A	review about your	new smartphone	e"
6	"A	review about your	new smartphone	e"
6	"A	review about your	new smartphone	e"
6	"A	review about your	new smartphone	
6	"A	review about your	new smartphone	





Finish the following dialogue:

Essam and Adel are talking about next summer holiday.



Adel :(1).....

Essam : Sharm El-Sheikh! (2).....?

Adel : I will go with my friend Asser.

Essam : (3)......?

Adel: No, we will stay in a hotel.

Essam: How will you go?

Adel : (4).....

Essam: How long will you stay?

Adel : (5).....

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



if - full - wealth - unless - fill - valuable

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Have you ever imagined life without cell phones? People who are fifty or more will find this question surprising as they used to live without mobile phones. Younger generations, on the other hand, think that they cannot live without mobile phones.

50 years ago, if someone had said that people would be walking around with small wireless telephones in their hands, we would have called him or her mad. However, almost everyone now has at least one of them.

People everywhere are walking around talking on their mobile phones. The phones are even being used for more than just communication. People use them for many different purposes. Mobile phones are used to play games, watch films, listen to music, pay money online and find information. They have become a very important part of our lives.

Mobile phones have not only made our lives more comfortable but they have changed the way we live. Before we had mobile phones, it was hard to reach a friend that was away from home. But thanks to these small devices, people can now get in touch with anyone at any place and at any time. To conclude, they have made us reachable wherever we are and whenever anyone likes.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Thanks to mobile phones,	
a) we cannot find information	b) our lives are shorter
c) it is harder to reach a friend	d) our lives are easier
2. About fifty years ago, we	
a) did not have mobile phones	b) had mobile phones
c) used mobile phones	d) were mad
3. The underlined word "them" refers to .	
a) younger generations	b) mad people
c) wireless telephones	d) old people
B) Answer the following questions:	
4. What is the best title for this passage?	
5. How was life before we had mobile ph	nones?
6. What are mobile phones used for?	

C Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. "" is th	ne synonym of the wo	rd "strange".	3
a) Familiar	b) Usual	c) Similar	d) Unusual
2 is cutt	ing down all the trees	in an area.	
	b) Deforestation		
We add the prefix	<"" to get t	he opposite of th	ne word "expensive".
a) dis-	b) ab-	c) in-	d) im-
4. A is a	piece of equipment yo	ou use to see thir	ngs that are far away.
a) telescope	b) satellite		d) map
The planets go are	ound the sun. The word	d "go around" me	ans the sun.
a) receive	b) orbit	c) remove	d) cross
The fossils were pre	eserved well for further	study. This means	they were
a) kept	b) discovered		d) chosen
5 Complete the sent	ences with the correc	ct form of the w	ord(s) in brackets:
1. He (do	oes) his homework by	the time he slept	t
2. Fatma said that sl	ne (is) tired	the day before.	5
	aire, I (help		
	(speak) all		
Students should a	avoid (mak	e) noise in the cla	ass.
	-		
	Wr	riting	
6 Write ONE HUNDR	ED and TEN (110) wo	rds on the follo	wing:
			_
modern me m	the future" Write abo	out transport, to	od and learning."

••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••			
•••••			
***************************************		••••••	
***************************************		•••••	





Finish the following dialogue:

Shady is talking with his friend Nader about a trip to Luxor.

Shady: You seem busy, Nader.

Nader: Yes, I'm very busy. (1).....

Shady: What list are you making?

Nader: The things we need for our trip.

Shady: (2).....?

Nader: To Luxor. (3).....

Shady: I don't think three days is enough to visit all the tourist places there.

(4)......

Nader: But we can't get the money for a complete month.

Shady: OK. I'd like to come with you. (5).....?

Nader: Two thousand pounds.

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

people - cleaner - protection - energy - batteries - protect

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

For 99% of people's history, they took their food from the world around them. They ate all that they could find, and then they moved on to another place. For 1.0% of their history, people learned to farm the land and control their environment. People living in different places eat different kinds of food. For example, people in China eat a lot of rice and noodles. People in Japan and Taiwan eat a lot of fish and other seafood. People living away from the sea don't eat so much fish. They eat more meat and chicken.

At present, it is possible to transport food from one part of the world to another. Our bananas come from Central America or Africa. Our rice comes from Thailand. We can eat what we like, when we like, at any time of the year. Food has become very big business.

A) Choose the correct	t answer from a, b	, c or d:	
1. The passage is al	oout		
a) animals	b) prices	c) food	d) cooking
2. For of	their history, peop	le didn't farm the	land.
a) 99%	b) 1.0%	c) no time	
3. People in China a	and people in Japar	n eat k	inds of food.
a) the same	b) different	c) cheaper	d) fewer
B) Answer the follow	ing questions:		
4. What do people	who live away from	the sea usually e	at?
5. Where do our ba	nanas come from?		
***************************************	975	A-1-15 A 15	
6. Why can we now	eat any kind of foo	d at any time of t	ho voor?
or my can we now	cat arry kind or roo	d at any time of t	ne year:
C	Vocabulary	and Structur	. e
Choose the correct a	inswer from a. b. c	or d:	
			inds of plants, animals,
and birds can grow		na where many k	inds of plants, allimais,
a) Deserts		b) Rivers	
c) Rainforests		d) Lakes	
2. "" is a pe	rson who travels to		
a) An astronaut		b) A researche	r
c) An assistant		d) A driver	
3. I thought I lost my r	new calculator, but	l it in r	ny book bag

	 Positive people do r 	not lookh	парру.	
	a) dis-	b) im-	c) mis-	d) un-
	5. The Earth orbits the	sun. "Orbits" here is	near in meaning t	o
	a) moves around		b) turns into	
	c) switches on		d) sits down	
	6. In our school, it is	normal to do activ	ities that help ou	ur local community.
	"Normal" here is like			
	a) difficult	b) usual	c) remote	d) dark
5	Complete the senten	ces with the correc	t form of the wor	d(s) in brackets:
	1. The national park			valentary and the same of the
	2. If it (rain) heavily, we will use	umbrellas.	6
	3. You should keep			
	4. In the past, people	(use to) se	end letters, now th	ey send emails.
	5. For three years, I			
	77. (5.0 %)			
		D Wr	iting	
6	Write ONE HUNDRE			ing:
6	Write ONE HUNDRE	D and TEN (110) wo	rds on the followi	ing:
6			rds on the followi	ing:
6		D and TEN (110) wo	rds on the followi	ing:
6		D and TEN (110) wo	rds on the followi	
6		D and TEN (110) wo	rds on the followi	
6		D and TEN (110) wo	rds on the followi	
6		D and TEN (110) wo	rds on the followi	
6		D and TEN (110) wo	rds on the followi	
6		D and TEN (110) wo	rds on the followi	
6		D and TEN (110) wo	rds on the followi	
6		D and TEN (110) wo	rds on the followi	
6		D and TEN (110) wo	rds on the followi	
6		D and TEN (110) wo	rds on the followi	
6		D and TEN (110) wo	rds on the followi	
6		D and TEN (110) wo	rds on the followi	



Language Functions



Finish the following dialogue:

Rana and Sama are talking about a story.

Rana: What are you busy doing?

Sama : (1).....

Rana : (2).....?

Sama: It is about a rabbit telling the story of his life.

Rana : (3)......?

Sama: No, animals can't talk but this is only a story.

Rana: Did that rabbit live alone?

Sama : (4).....

Rana: This means he has a family. Did the story end happily for the rabbit?

Sama : (5).....

Rana: I think it is an exciting story.

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



safe - weather - change - finds - sea - found

Seagrass is very important. It is (1)..... in the sea along the coast of many countries. A lot of (2)..... animals feed on it. Baby fish live in seagrass because it is a (3)...... place. Seagrass absorbs carbon dioxide 35 times faster than rainforests. That is why it can help stop climate (4)......

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Basim and his friend, Ahmed spend a long time using their smartphones. They always want to try new apps. One day, they got a message from a stranger. He asked them about some personal information saying that it was important for a new app. He said it was a wonderful one, and that they could get that app for free. They thought it was not dangerous to do so. After that, they discovered that he could get all the information on their phones. Then, to their surprise, the stranger stopped sending them any messages. They forgot about it. However, he sent them a message saying that he can control their mobile phones. He asked for money or he would hurt them. They didn't know what to do, but their friend Kareem advised them to tell the police. The police followed the stranger's phone and arrested him. They decided to warn all their friends about how to keep safe online.

A) Choose the correct	answer from a, b,	or d:	
1. The stranger stopp	ed sending message	es getting	their information.
a) after		b) before	
c) without		d) for	
2. The underlined w	ord "it" refers to the		
a) phone		b) information	
c) message		d) app	
3. The friends got w	orried when the stra	nger	
 a) stopped talking 	3	b) asked for mone	У
c) told the police		d) sent them apps	i i
B) Answer the followi	ng questions:		
4. What is the main	idea of the passage?	?	
5. Why did the two	friends agree to sen	d their information t	o someone they
didn't know?			
6. Do you think Basi	m and Ahmed were	right to talk to the	stranger? Why?
	Vocabulary a	nd Structure	
Blood	Although Michigan and		
Choose the correct a			8
1. A person who trave	ls into space is calle	d a/an	
 a) astronomer 	b) scientist	c) astronaut	d) pilot
2. The prefix "	" is used to add th	ne meaning "do agai	n".
a) bi-	b) re-	c) di-	d) in-
3. A group of animals	or plants of the sam	e kind are called	
a) species	b) spices	c) spicing	d) spicy

	4. The moon	the earth on	nce every 27 days.		
	a) cycles	b) arms	c) orbits	d) dives	
	5. After the rain, the st	reets were wet.	The antonym of the	word "wet" is	
	a) dry	b) rainy	c) warm	d) muddy	
	6. Water comes from t	the roof to the	ground floor throug		
	a) wire	b) pipe	c) line	d) pile	
5	Complete the senten	ces with the c	orrect form of the v		
	1. This book (v				1
	2. My brother asks me			iss.	
	3. If he studied well, h				
	4. He(publ			t.	
	5. They said that their				
				,	
		D	Writing		
6	Write ONE HUNDRED	and TEN (110) words on the follo	owing:	7
6	Write ONE HUNDRED			The state of the s	
6			o) words on the following will be like in the	The state of the s	
6				The state of the s)
6				The state of the s)
6				The state of the s)
6				The state of the s)
6				The state of the s	
6				The state of the s	
6	"A rev	iew on how lif		future"	
6	"A rev	iew on how lif	e will be like in the	future"	
6	"A rev	iew on how lif	e will be like in the	future"	
6	"A rev	iew on how lif	e will be like in the	future"	
6	"A rev	iew on how lif	e will be like in the	future"	
6	"A rev	iew on how lif	e will be like in the	future"	
6	"A rev	iew on how lif	e will be like in the	future"	
6	"A rev	iew on how lif	e will be like in the	future"	





Finish the following dialogue:

Malak has been sick and Salma is talking to her on the phone.

Salma: Hi, Malak. You haven't been to school for a week.

Salma: (2).....?

Malak: Yes, I feel much better now.

Salma: (3).....?

Malak: I am going back to school next Sunday.

Malak: Did I miss a lot of school work?

Salma: Yes, we had homework every day and we have a test on Monday.

Malak: Oh, no. That makes me worry.

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



change - made - gases - droughts - make - energy

Our planet is hotter and our weather is changing. There are more floods, (1)...... and forest fires than any time in history. One of the reasons for that is climate (2)..... which is caused by greenhouse (3)..... such as carbon dioxide. These are (4)..... when we burn fossil fuels.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Happiness is something which we feel when we are full of joy. On a cloudy day, the clouds hide the sun, but the sun is always there. Happiness is like the sun, it is often hidden by the clouds of worries. We have to forget them to feel happy. It is close to us but hidden and covered from sight, by our worries like a treasure at the bottom of a muddy lake. It is always there whether you see it or not. You don't have to create happiness. All you have to do is calm down your mind because when there are a quiet mind and inner peace, there is happiness. Happiness makes us positive. All of us try to get happiness all the time. When a person does something really good, he feels happy. If we hurt others, we become unhappy in the end. A happy mood gives us the energy to do our best but an unhappy mood takes away the energy. Happiness is related to the world in which we live. If we live in a bad world most of the time, we remain unhappy. One alone cannot be happy if others are unhappy. It comes from our own actions. Happiness doesn't come from others. Living the present is happiness.

A) Choose the correct	ct answer from a, b,	c or d:	6.7
	itle for the passage?		× .
a) Sadness.		b) Happiness.	
c) Happiness in t	the family.	d) Happiness at w	vork.
2. In line 3 the pro	noun "them" refers to)	
a) feelings		c) worries	d) actions
3. What could the	word "relate" mean ir	this reading?	
a) Linked.		b) Unconnected.	
c) Single.		d) Remote.	
B) Answer the follow	ing questions:		
4. Why has happin	ess been compared t	o the sun?	

5. What should we	do to feel happy?		
		<u>*</u>	
6. How is happiness	related to the world in	n which we live?	

		10: .	
<u></u>	Vocabulary a	nd Structure	
Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. The ability to do so	mething well is a		
a) lifestyle			d) race
2. A/An is a			ay cool or warm.
	b) computer		
3. The Earth orbits the			
	b) discovers		d) moves around
		-,	-, mores around

	4. The word "	" gives the oppo	site meaning o	f "tiny".	
	a) small	b) huge	c) lesser	d) little	
	5. To get the adjective	from the word "h	ero", we add the	suffix ""	.
	a) -ment	b) -ly	c) -ic	d) -ful	
	6. She has been workin	g at a school for fre	e for more than 8	years. She is	······ •
	a) an employee	b) a volunteer	c) a boss	d) a manag	er
5	Complete the senter	ces with the corr	ect form of the	word(s) in bracke	ts:
	1. If we (ha	ive) more time, we	would visit our	teacher.	
	2. She didn't go to be	d until she	(finish) her l	homework.	6
	3. We need	. (use) renewable	energy.		
	4. Fewer magazines a	re (sell)	today because	of the internet.	
	5. A witness	(said) the police	that the buildir	ng was on fire.	
		D V	Vriting		
6	Write ONE HUNDRE	D and TEN (110) v	vords on the fo	llowing:	
	"Th	ings you can do t	o help save the	Earth"	
	•••••				





Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Hani are talking about doing a school project.



Hani : Hello, Ahmed. What are you doing?

Ahmed: Hello, Hani. (1).....

Hani : (2).....?

Ahmed: It's about the bamboo.

Hani : (3)......?

Ahmed: Because my teacher asked me to do this project.

Hani : What do you think of this plant?

Ahmed: (4)

: I agree with you. It's a very useful plant. Do you need any help? Hani

Ahmed : (5).....

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



burn - cycle - wind - rubbish - environment - burning

It is important to save our (1)...... and keep it clean. We must recycle more paper so that we can avoid cutting down our forests. We can also stop putting (2)..... in landfill sites. When we keep (3)..... fossil fuels, climate change will get worse. We need to use cleaner renewable energy such as solar energy and (4)..... power.

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Reem is a student at a prep school. Her mother owns a bookshop. The shop is near their house. Sometimes, Reem goes to the shop to help her mum. There are a lot of different books at the shop. Reem likes stories the best. The shop is usually calm during the week but it gets very busy on Fridays. A lot of people go to the shop on that day to buy books for themselves and for their children. Reem often sits with the children and reads them some stories. The children enjoy the stories a lot and they usually buy them.

There are also some toys at the shop. Reem's mother lets the children play with the toys. She asks Reem to take care of the toys and make sure that the children don't damage them. The girls mostly like dolls but the boys like cars and guns. The children spend a lovely time at the shop and their parents are very thankful for Reem and her mum.

A) Choose the correct	answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. Reem goes to the	shop to	her mother.	
a) visit		b) play with	
c) help		d) meet	
2. The shop sells bo	oks and		
a) toys		b) sweets	
c) fruits		d) chairs	
3. The best title for t	his passage is "		
a) The Doll		b) The Bookshop	
c) The Girls		d) The Boys	
B) Answer the followi	ng questions:		
4. What kind of boo	ks does Reem like?		
6. Why do you think		on Fridays?	
C	Vocabulary a	nd Structure	
Choose the correct a	nswer from a, b, c	or d:	3
1. We add 1	to form the adjectiv	e of the word "tradit	tion".
a) -ible	b) -able	c) -al	d) -ful
2. Ziad loves studying	stars and planets. F	le wants to be a/an	
a) doctor	b) astronomer	c) officer	d) photographer
3. New ideas can be ve	ery strange for peop	ole. "Strange" here m	eans
a) boring	b) usual	c) unusual	d) common

	4. A/An is a person who reads the news on the radio or TV.			
	a) designer	b) journalist	c) editor	d) newsreader
	5. I was wh	en my little baby bro	ther made so muc	h noise.
	a) cross	b) across	c) happy	d) calm
	6. A is a sm	all container of ink fo	or use in a printer.	
	a) cup	b) carriage	c) glass	d) cartridge
5	Complete the senten	ces with the correct	form of the word	(s) in brackets:
	1. I (visit) th	nis restaurant three t	imes this week. I lik	e it.
	2. If he came to the clu	ıb, I (play)	with him.	3
	3. Omar (to	ld) he would come l	ate that day.	
	4. Adam came first in t	the race because he	(train) w	/ell.
	5. My little brother	(take) to hos	spital yesterday.	
		(A)	lat	
			iting	
6	Write ONE HUNDRED	and TEN (110) wor	ds on the followin	ng:
	"A	review about satel	lites technology"	
	***************************************			***************************************
				•••••
		•••••	***************************************	***************************************
			***************************************	•••••
			***************************************	***************************************





Atef is talking to a tourist about his visit to Egypt.

Atef	: Hello, is it your first visit to Egypt?	
Tourist	: (1)	I came here with my wife before.
Atef	: (2)	?
Tourist	: I come from Ireland.	
Atef	; (3)	?
Tourist	I will stay in Egypt for two weeks.	
Atef	: What cities are you going to visit?	
Tourist	: (4)	
Atef	Sure, Aswan and Luxor are interesting an enjoyable visit.	ng places to visit. I wish you

Reading Comprehension

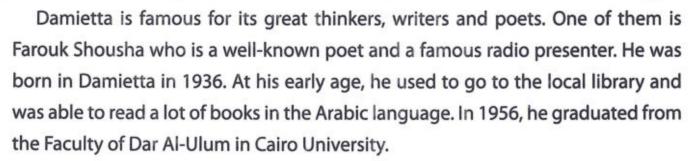
Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



plane - calls - for - astronauts - since - spacecraft

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Tourist : (5)



Farouk Shousha always liked poetry and Arabic literature. He worked as a radio and a TV presenter. He presented many famous programmes which most people liked so much like "Our Beautiful Language" and "Cultural Evening" which both lasted for about 15 years without stopping.

In his programmes, he talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and showed its rich literature. For this reason, he was called "the guardian of the Arabic language". Shousha won the Nile Prize for Literature in 2016. We all still remember his great works even after his death

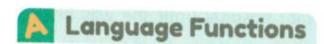
a) New Dam	ea of the passage is a ietta	b) Cultural E	vening
c) Farouk Sho	ousha		iful language
2. The underlin	ned word " <u>its</u> " in the	third paragraph ref	ers to
a) the Arabic	language	b) the Englis	
c) TV program		d) radio prod	grammes
Farouk won t	he Nile Prize for Lite	rature in	
a) 1936	b) 1956	c) 2016	d) 2000
Answer the fol	lowing questions:		4,2000
4. Name a famo	us programme that	Farouk Shousha pr	esented.
5. Summarise th	ne last paragraph in	the text in one sent	tence.
6. Where do you	ı think Farouk could young?	read many books i	n the Arabic language
when he was			

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- is a force which attracts things or people to the centre of the Earth.
 - a) Space
- b) Telescope
- c) Gravity
- d) The sun
- 2. A is a person who reads the news on the radio or television.
 - a) designer
- b) newsreader
- c) photographer d) journalist

	3. My father is so kind	l. The antonym of "ki	nd" is "".	
	a) calm	b) clean	c) clever	d) cruel
	4. We can get an adje	ctive from the verb "	renew" by adding th	ne suffix "".
	a) -ness	b) -able	c) -tion	d) -y
	5. Trees breathe in ca	rbon dioxide and br	eathe out oxygen. S	o, they are
	for us.			
	a) bad	b) harmful	c) useful	d) useless
	6. The land is	as it was raining	all night yesterday.	
	a) wet	b) warm	c) hard	d) dry
5	Complete the senter	nces with the corre	ct form of the word	d(s) in brackets:
	1. The land is			
	2. We must avoid	(pollute) the	e environment.	9
	3. If I had more time,	l (will) re	ad more books.	
	4. We (use	e) to get our shoppir	ng in plastic bags. N	ow, we don't.
	5. I did not send the	report until I	(revise) it.	
		W	riting	
		10.00	riting	
6	Write ONE HUNDRE	10.00		ng:
6	Write ONE HUNDRE	10.00	ords on the followi	ng:
6	Write ONE HUNDRE	D and TEN (110) w	ords on the followi	ng:
6		"A review of yo	ords on the followi	ng:
6		"A review of yo	ords on the followi	
6		"A review of yo	ords on the following or dream job"	
6		"A review of yo	ords on the following ords or the following	
6		"A review of yo	ords on the following dream job"	
6		"A review of yo	ords on the following dream job"	
6		"A review of yo	ords on the following dream job"	
6		"A review of yo	ords on the following dream job"	
6		"A review of yo	ords on the following dream job"	
6		"A review of yo	ords on the following dream job"	
6		"A review of yo	ords on the following dream job"	





Ebrahim is at the library to borrow a book.



Librarian: Good morning. (1).....?

Ebrahim: I'd like to borrow a book.

Librarian: OK. (2).....?

Ebrahim: I enjoy reading books about nature.

Librarian: Just give me a recent personal photo of you.

Ebrahim: (5)....

Librarian: You are most welcome at any time.

B

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



will - feet - would - prepare - change - charge

Read the following text, then answer the questions:



There was once a poor boy who spent his days going from door to door selling newspapers to pay for school. One day, the poor boy was so hungry, so he decided to ask for food when he came to the next door.

The poor boy reached the door of a girl. He asked for a glass of water, but seeing his poor state, the girl came back with a glass of milk. The boy wanted to pay for the milk, but the girl refused to take any money.

Years later, the girl felt sick. She went to many doctors, but no one was able to cure her. Finally, she went to the best doctor in town. The doctor spent weeks treating her in a private hospital until she was finally cured. She was happy, however, she was afraid she couldn't afford to pay the bill. But, when the hospital handed her the bill, it read, "Paid in full, with a glass of milk".

A) Choose the correct a	answer from a, b, c	or d:			
1. The main idea of the passage is that we must					
a) give people milk	(b) always do good			
c) pay the bill		d) help the rich			
2. The boy had a poo	or				
a) mind		b) sight			
c) appearance		d) brain			
3. Later on, the poor	boy became a/an	doctor.			
a) bad		b) unknown			
c) cruel		d) well-known			
B) Answer the following	ng questions:				
4. Summarise the sec	cond paragraph in C	NE sentence of you	ır own words.		
5. How do you think	the girl felt when sh	e left the hospital?			
,					
6. Did the girl know	why the doctor paid	the bill? How?			
		1 Charachama			
C	Vocabulary a	nd Structure			
Choose the correct a	nswer from a, b, c o	or d:	3		
1. Plants often			r for us.		
	b) protect	c) increase	d) absorb		
2. "" is the pl	A MARIE DE CONTRACTOR DE CONTR		7 No.		
a) Habit	b) Habitant	c) Habitat	d) Assistant		
3. They live on the east			dding "" .		
a) -ous	b) -al	c) -ive	d) -ic		
-, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -					

4. A/A	ın is so	omething to imp	rove a difficult situ	uation.
a) i	nitiative	b) fight	c) war	d) tour
5. You	don't have to pl	ug it in because i	t is	, , ,
a) w	vireless	b) careless	c) leafless	d) useless
6. Tha	t plane is enorm	ous! "	is the synonym of	f"enormous".
a) L	ittle	b) Huge		d) Local
5 Comp	lete the senten	ces with the cor	rect form of the	word(s)
in bra	ckets:			(s)
1	(Did) you	finished your ho	omework before v	ou went to the cinema?
2. Egy	pt (vi	sit) by more than	fourteen million	tourists every year.
3. We .	(use)	to use energy-sa	ving light bulbs, b	out we do now
4. The	colours make th	e picture beautif	ful (loo	k) at.
5. Man	ıal (sa	aid) me, "I have se	een this film".	
			Vriting	
6 Weite	ONE LUMBER			
AALITE	ONE HUNDRED	and TEN (110).	unuda an Al- C II	
			words on the follo	
"A revi	ew about the n	ew projects whi		
"A revi		ew projects whi		he lives of everyone
"A revi	ew about the n	ew projects whi		
"A revi	ew about the n	ew projects whi		
"A revi	ew about the n	ew projects whi		
"A revi	ew about the no all around Egyp	ew projects whi		he lives of everyone
"A revi	ew about the ne	ew projects whi	ch will improve t	he lives of everyone
"A revi	ew about the ne	ew projects whi	ch will improve t	he lives of everyone
"A revi	ew about the ne	ew projects whi	ch will improve t	he lives of everyone
"A revi	ew about the ne	ew projects whi	ch will improve t	he lives of everyone
"A revi	ew about the ne	ew projects whi	ch will improve t	he lives of everyone
"A revi	ew about the ne	ew projects whi	ch will improve t	he lives of everyone
"A revi	ew about the ne	ew projects whi	ch will improve t	he lives of everyone
"A revi	ew about the ne	ew projects whi	ch will improve t	he lives of everyone
"A revi	ew about the ne	ew projects whi	ch will improve t	he lives of everyone

Language Functions



Finish the following dialogue:

Adel wants to buy a suit.

Shop assistant: Can I help you?

Adel :(1).....

Shop assistant: I've got different styles of suits. (2).....?

Adel : I'd like the blue one.

Shop assistant: It's the colour you like and it's fashionable.

Adel : Yes, blue is nice and it is fashionable, too. (3)......?

Shop assistant: Two thousand pounds. It's imported from France.

made in Egypt, please.

hundred pounds. It's cheap, isn't it?

Adel : Yes, it is and of good quality as well.

B

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



turn - life - carefully - turns - safe - save

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Online learning is another option for the traditional way of studies. Students can easily download applications and attend online classes, but classroom learning is as important as before. Nowadays, many universities and schools are moving towards online learning. They share their materials and subjects online. Many universities served their studies online for free and some of them offered some online scholarships.

Every way of learning has some advantages and disadvantages. With technology, everyone has ease with the online study, but some people are still against it. Some people complain that they are more comfortable with the offline learning. For people who are working and want to complete their studies from home, online learning can be the best option for them. In offline classes, it is easy pay attention to students .Finally, it is important to create a balance between online and offline studies.

	rect answer from a				
	s mainly about				
a) Universities		b) Online Study			
c) Offline Stud	-	c) The best way	s of learning		
2. Manks to tec	inology, online learr	ning became			
a) easier	antla la	b) more difficul	t		
c) more impo		d) worse			
	ed word "for free" me				
a) very expen		b) not paying a	ny money		
	unt of money	d) a &c			
B) Answer the foll	owing questions:				
4. Willy isn't the	online learning the b	est way of learning?			
	5. Summarise the second paragraph in one sentence.				
Which kind of I	earning do you prefer	? Why?			

C	Vocabulary	and Structure	1		
Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b,	c or d:	3		
forests by people	cutting down of tr	ees in a large area, o	or the destruction of		
		a) Deferment			
2. A/An	is someone who stud	c) Deforestation	d) Production		
new facts or test	new ideas.	ales a subject carefull	y in order to discover		
a) researcher	,	c) astronaut	d) assistant		
My father was consumation synonym of "cros"	ross because my yo	ung brothers made	so much noise. The		
a) happy	b) relaxed	c) witness	d) angry		

4	. The word « expensive	ve» can be the o	pposite by adding th	е preпх
	a) sur-	b) in-	c) ab-	d) dis-
5	· I'm still	Could you say th	nat another way?	
	a) happy	b) tall	c) confused	d) coastal
6		en ac	ross the world which	are helping to protect
	the environment.			
	a) air conditionings	b) initiatives	c) bamboo	d) energy
5 (omplete the senter	ces with the co	rrect form of the wo	ord(s) in brackets:
1	· These trees	(plant) by cle	ever school boys last:) your plastic bottles.	summer.
			(talk) to my teach	
			until I had revised it.	
	. If Ramy read the sto			
	in namy road are			
		D	Writing	
6	Write ONE HUNDRE	D and TEN (110) words on the follow	wing: 👩
		"A short sto	ry you have read"	
		"A short sto	ry you have read"	
		"A short sto	ry you have read"	
			ry you have read"	





Ali is at a café. He is asking for some coffee.

Waiter: Excuse me. Are you ready to order, sir?

: Yes, please. I'd like some coffee. Ali

Waiter: (1).....?

: I'd like it black, please. Ali

Waiter : (2).....?

Ali : Yes, I'd like a little piece of chocolate.

Waiter: Anything else, sir?

: (3)...... Ali

Waiter: A newspaper? Sorry. (4).....

Ali

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



teach - free - get - click - do - teaches

Some people like doing voluntary work. This work is for (1)...... as they don't (2)..... any money for it. It is really a great feeling to (3)..... such work. We should (4)..... our children the importance of voluntary work.

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Ismailia is a city in the north-east of Egypt. It's known in Egypt as "the City of Beauty and Enchantment". Ismailia is on the west bank of the Suez canal. It is the capital of the Ismailia Governorate. The city has a good weather. It has a population of 1,402,132 as of 2021. It is halfway between Port Said to the north and Suez to the south. It was founded in 1863 by Khedive Ismail, so it is named after him. The head office of the Suez Canal is in Ismailia at the shore of Lake

Timsah. It has a large number of buildings. Ismailia has several public and private schools. Ismailia is the home of Suez Canal University, built in 1967 with the help of the Chinese Government to serve the region of Suze Canal and Sinai. Ismailia owns a successful football club the Ismaily SC. The team has won the Egyptian League three times (1967, 1991, 2002), the Egyptian Cup twice (1997, 2000), and the African Champions League once (1969) as the first Egyptian Arab club team to win this league.

League three times	(1967, 1991, 2002), th	ne Egyptian Cup tw	rice (1997, 2000), and			
the African Champions League once (1969) as the first Egyptian Arab club team						
to win this league.						
A) Choose the corr	ect answer from a, b	, c or d:				
1. The passage is talking about						
a) Giza	b) Alexandria	c) Cairo	d) Ismailia			
2. Ismailia is	Port Said and	Suez.				
a) behind	b) opposite	c) between	d) next to			
3. Ismaily SC has	won the Egyptian Lea	ague				
a) 4 times	b) 3 times	c) 5 times	d) 7 times			
B) Answer the foll	owing questions:					
	e underlined pronoun	"it" refer to?				
5. Why was the	Suez Canal University	built?				
6. Why do you t	hink people visit Isma	ilia?				
6	Vocabulary	and Structur	e			
	40capatal y					
Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b,	c or d:	6			
	e thick hair that cove		nimal.			
a) Feather	b) Fur	c) Skin	d) Leather			
		acts things or peop	ole to the centre of the			
Earth.						
a) gravity	b) space	c) satellite	d) jet			
	't allow me to watch		m of the word			
"allow" is		, ,				
	b) protect	c) prevent	d) let			
a) find	b) protect	-/ p. 61 5111	NORM LOSSYN			

	4. To get the adver	of "complete", v	ve add the suffix "	"
	a) -tion	b) -ly	c) -y	d) -ment
	5. He can't go to ar	nywhere. He is		because of the flood
	a) busy	b) full	c) stuck	d) free
	6. If something is	, you do	on't need to plug it in	1.
	a) wireless		c) saddened	
5	Complete the senter	nces with the co	rrect form of the wo	ord(s)
	in brackets:			
	1. How would you be	have if you	(lose) your mo	bile phone?
	2. The government pl	ans(p	lant) a lot of trees alo	na the sides of streets
	3. Mona (c	do) her homeworl	for two hours. She	hasn't finished vet
	4. After they	(win) the matc	h, they celebrated.	nasire illisited yet.
	5. The owner explaine	ed that there	(will) be over	100 new jobs
	9			
			Writing	
6	Write ONE HUNDRE	D and TEN (110)	words on the follow	vina:
		is you diedill of a	achieving in the sec	au buchery-11
		or areani or	achieving in the ne	ar future"
			acnieving in the ne	





Ayman is talking to his friend Ramy about "Gebel Elba".

Ayman: Today, I have read an interesting article.

Ramy : What is it about?

Ayman: (1)......

Ramy :(2).....?

Ayman: It takes its name from the mountain in the middle of it.

Ramy : Can you give me some more information about it?

Ramy: Is it visited by many people every year?

Ayman: (4).....

Ramy : (5).....?

Ayman: Because it isn't easy to reach. Its location is remote.

BF

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



satellites - did - important - done - rivers - unimportant

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

From ancient times men have wanted to fly and many attempts were made before suitable methods were discovered. Nowadays, air travel has become an important part of our life. It is the fastest and most efficient way to travel long distances. Planes are the fastest means of transport as there are fewer accidents

when people travel by plane than by other means of transport. Also, they use less fuel than other methods of transport such as cars or trains. This means that you can travel the same distance with an airplane using, only third of the fuel that you would use in a car.

Planes can take you anywhere in the world while you can't travel by train from Africa to America, as it's a very long distance. In addition, air travel is comfortable as you can enjoy a meal, watch a film or read a book on the plane. That's why thousands of people around the world choose air travel over other means of transport. However, air travel is expensive as you have to pay a lot of money for the ticket. But remember, this money is for the services offered.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:					
1. The underlined word "It" refers to					
a) people	b) transport	c) travelling	d) air travel		
2. Being	is one of the disac	dvantages of air tra	vel.		
 a) expensive 	b) quick	c) safe	d) comfortable		
3. The underlined	phrase "choose air t	ravel over" means .			
a) dislike	b) hate	c) prefer	d) need		
B) Answer the follow					
4. What are the adv	vantages of air trave	el?			
	while travelling on k you can't travel by		o America?		
C	Vocabulary o	and Structure			
Choose the correct a	answer from a, b, c	or d:			
1. A is ar			acts annear neares		
a) thermometer	b) telescope		d) microscope		
2. In the past, we us "traditional" is	sed traditional ways	of farming. The an	itonym of		
a) modern	b) old	c) expensive	d) far		

	3. We can make an a	djective from the wor	d "coast" by adding t	the suffix ""	
	a) -ment	b) -al	c) -er	d) -ly	
		h is sustainable is			
	a) electric	b) temporary		d) modern	
	E It's an easy lesson	n, I'll explain it to you		nym of"	
	a) complicated		c) cheap	d) simple	
	6 We add the prefix	"" to the ver		rite something again	
		b) im-	c) ir-	d) il-	
	a) re-	nces with the correc			
5 (omplete the sente	nces with the correc	on't understand the	homework?	1
		ould) you do if you do		6	
-	2. Do you enjoy	(play) the piano	ilding was on fire		
		(told) that the bu			
	4. My grandparents .	(use) to live	On a farm.	his work	
	5. My brother didn't	go to the club until h	ie (IIIISII)	IIIS WOLK.	
		(D) W	riting		
_				ing:)
6		ED and TEN (110) we	ords on the follow		
6			ords on the follow		
6		ED and TEN (110) we	ords on the follow)
6	"How to prot	ED and TEN (110) we	ords on the follow the danger of cli	mate change")
6	"How to prot	ED and TEN (110) we ect our planet from	ords on the follow the danger of cli	mate change"	
6	"How to prot	ED and TEN (110) we ect our planet from	ords on the follow the danger of cli	mate change"	••••
6	"How to prot	ED and TEN (110) we ect our planet from	the danger of cli	mate change"	
6	"How to prot	ED and TEN (110) we ect our planet from	the danger of clin	mate change"	
6	"How to prot	ED and TEN (110) we ect our planet from	the danger of clin	mate change"	
6	"How to prot	ect our planet from	the danger of clin	mate change"	
6	"How to prot	ect our planet from	the danger of clin	mate change"	
6	"How to prot	ED and TEN (110) we ect our planet from	the danger of clin	mate change"	
6	"How to prot	ED and TEN (110) we sect our planet from	the danger of clin	mate change"	
6	"How to prot	ED and TEN (110) we ect our planet from	the danger of clin	mate change"	
6	"How to prot	ED and TEN (110) we ect our planet from	the danger of clin	mate change"	
6	"How to prot	ED and TEN (110) we ect our planet from	the danger of clin	mate change"	



Marwa and Mrs Aya are at the library.

Marwa: Can you give me some advice?

Mrs Aya : Sure. (1).....?

Marwa : (2).....

Mrs Aya: You can make a timetable to help you study well.

Marwa : I'm still confused. (3).....?

Mrs Aya: I mean you should manage your time.

Marwa : (4).....

Mrs Aya: What type of books do you like reading?

Marwa : (5).....

Mrs Aya: Adventure stories! I recommend Alice Adventures in Wonderland to you.

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



carbon - made - plant - care - planet - makes

They are useful gifts of nature. When a plant grows, it (2)..... the area around it cleaner and beautiful. Plants produce oxygen and absorb (3)...... dioxide. It is a fact that people who live near plants are healthier and happier. We should take (4)..... of plants.

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Health is better than wealth. One cannot exchange health for all the money in the world because health is the most valuable thing from Allah.



A sick person lives a bad life full of pain, weakness and suffering. He feels that he is a real trouble to his family. He loses the nice taste of food.

You can enjoy good health if you practise suitable exercises, learn some interesting hobbies, get enought sleep and eat healthy food. So, one shouldn't eat more than eighty grams of fat a day. We mustn't eat much ice cream because ice cream has got a lot of fat and much sugar. Fresh vegetables and fruit are very good for your health.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

good for your hea	ilth.	and the second second	
	rrect answer from a,		
1. We need	grams of fat a	day.	
a) 180	b) 18	c) 80	d) 800
2. The main id	ea of the text is about		
a) wealth		b) health	
c) pain		d) hobbies	
3. To enjoy goo	od health, one should	have	
a) much ice	cream	b) much suga	
c) much fat		d) enough ve	getables and fruit
B) Answer the fo	ollowing questions:		ما دا د
4. Show from	the text that health is I	more important tha	in wealth.
What other	good foods do you th	ink we should eat?	

Summarise	the last paragraph of	the text in one sent	ence.
			······
	/ocabular	y and Structu	ire
	Vocabatai	y dila ou acc	
1 Choose the co	rrect answer from a, l	o, c or d:	3
1 You're not all	owed to talk during th	e exam. This means	s they you
from talking.	b) permit	c) let	d) advise
a) prevent	e map seem to be near		remote. "Remote"
2. Places on the	e map seem to be near	, but they are really	
means		3	d) young
a) short	b) far	c) green	
3. The suffix "	" can turn the		it into an adjective.
a) -al	b) -ly	c) -ily	d) -ing
Ancient and	old are		- 122 <u>22</u>
 Ancient and a) antonyms 		c) opposites	d) different

	5. The i	s a person who rules	a city or an area.		
	a) president		c) editor	d) writer	
	6. The is	the force which attra	cts things or peop	le to the centre of	
	the Earth.		nothern self-		
	a) space	b) gravity	c) satellite	d) jet	
5	Complete the sent	tences with the corr	ect form of the w	ord(s) in brackets:	
		(broken) durin			
		day (that)
		(live) in caves a lon		großan in der in	
		ells) me that his best		s Ahmed.	
		d, so we need			
		V	Vriting		
б	Write ONE HUNDE	RED and TEN (110) w	ords on the follow	wing:	
		view of a visit to a r		67	1
				-372	
	•••••••				
	•••••				
	••••••				

Language Functions



Finish the following dialogue:

Huda and Samla are talking about Salma's new mobile.

Huda: Is this mobile new? Salma: (1)......

Huda: Who bought it for you?

Salma: (2)......

Huda:(3).....?

Salma: Because I have passed my final exams.

Huda: (4).....?

Salma: It's L.E. 2500.

Huda: What colour is it?

Salma: (5)......?

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



ear - difficult - opinion - used - cities - uses

Some people like living in big (1)....., but other people don't like it. In my (2)...... now. I prefer living in the countryside. It is much quieter, cleaner and healthier. Our grandparents (4)..... to live in villages to enjoy the pure life, fresh air and quiet atmosphere.

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Once upon a time, there was an Egyptian farmer named Ahmed. He lived in a small village by the Nile River and worked hard every day to save money for his family.

During one hot summer day, while looking after his crops, Ahmed accidentally discovered an ancient statue buried in the soil. It was small, golden and decorated with the Ancient Egyptian Language.

He was so excited by his discovery. Ahmed took the statue to the local museum to have it examined. The experts were amazed by the statue, as it dated back to the time of the Pharaohs and was incredibly rare.

Ahmed's discovery quickly spread, and he was offered a large sum of money for the statue. But Ahmed refused to sell it. Instead he insisted to give it to the National Museum to save his country history.

Ahmed's good act earned him the respect and admiration of the whole community. They considered him a hero for preserving Egyptian cultural heritage.

A) Choose the cor	rect answer from a, b,	c or d:	enda i all
	ere amazed by the stat		all the state of t
a) it was small		b) it was made	
c) it was very	common	d) it was ancie	
2. The underline	d word "rare" means		
a) cheap	b) worthless		d) easy
Ahmed worke	d as a/an	TO ME TO WARRY	October 10
a) scientist	b) expert	c) farmer	d) doctor
B) Answer the follo			,
4. What is the ma	ain idea of the passage:	?	
5. Summarise the	e third paragraph in on	e sentence.	
6. What did Ahm	ed earn by his good de	ed?	
	, good de		
C	Vocabulary a	nd Structure	9
Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c o	or d:	
	ces care of our teeth is a		3
a) dentist	b) artist	c) scientist	d) pharma sist
2. The synonym of "	bright" is	c) scientist	d) pharmacist
a) dark	b) shiny	c) dull	d) boring
3. If something is	, it costs much		-, boining
a) easy	b) cheap	c) expensive	d) difficult

4	1. To get the nour	i from the verb larm	, we add the sums	***************************************
	a) -ed	b) -ing	c) -ly	d) -tion
	5. The natural hor	me of an animal or pla	ant is a/an	•
	a) helmet	b) pipe	c) habitat	d) ink
(6. I feed my cat tv	vice a day. The word "	feed" means to	
	a) talk to	b) clean up	c) play with	d) give food
5	Complete the se	ntences with the cor	rrect form of the w	ord(s) in brackets:
	1. He said that he	(be) eatin	ıg.	
	2. These pictures	are (take)	by my sister.	6
	3. I went to the cl	ub after I((finish) my work.	
	4. We must	(avoiding) pollu	iting the world.	
	5. If I have more t	ime, I (wo	uld) read more boo	ks.
			MA-181	
			Writing	
6	Write ONE HUN	DRED and TEN (110)	words on the follo	owing:
		"A perso	on you like"	
			,	



Language Functions

_	
30	_
9	

Finish the following dialogue:

Hager is talking to Reem about some interesting animals.

Hager: Are you interested in animals, Reem?

Reem : (1).....

Hager: (2)......?

Reem : I like orangutans most.

Hager : (3).....?

Reem: They live in rainforests. Have you ever seen an orangutan?

Hager : (4).....

Reem: What about you? Which animal do you like most?

Reem: I wonder how the polar bears can live there.

Reading Comprehension



Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

will send - advantage - mobile phone - would send - disadvantage - talk

In my opinion, the most important invention of the last hundred years is the (1)..... I can put numbers into my phone and (2)..... to people anywhere. If I do not have much time, I (3)...... a text message. The (4)..... is that the cost of international calls can be expensive.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Nothing can live without energy. People, animals and plants need energy to live and machines need energy to work. Most of the energy we use still comes from fossil fuels like coal, oil and gas. We call these non-renewable forms of energy because they are limited and expensive. The use of fuels increases the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere and pollutes the environment.

Now water and wind are used to produce electricity. They are inexpensive, clean and do not pollute the environment. We call them renewable forms of energy. But energy from the sun is probably the best form of renewable energy. Life on earth depends on the sun. Without the sun, plants wouldn't be able to make food. Animals wouldn't have food. The earth would be cold and uninhabited.

That is why there is a great interest in solar energy. It is important for us to save energy in our homes and workplaces in order to stop using up non-renewable sources of energy.

37			
A) Choose the correct	t answer from a, b	, c or d:	
1. The main idea of	the text is "		
a) Renewable en	ergy	b) Solar energy	
c) Energy		d) Non-renewa	ble energy
2. The amount of o	arbon dioxide rises	in the atmosphere	when we use energy
from the	*******		
a) water	b) fossil fuels	c) wind	d) sun
3 are tv	vo sources of non-re	enewable energy.	
a) Plants and ani	mals	b) Water and w	ind
c) Sun and gas		d) Coal and oil	
B) Answer the follow	ing questions:		
4. Infer why the sur	n, the wind and the	water are friends t	o the environment.
5. In two sentences	s, summarise the fir	st paragraph in you	ır own words.
6. It is necessary to	use the solar energ	y. Give reasons.	
	Manhalama	and Characham	-
	Vocabulary	ana Structure	
Choose the correct	answer from a, b, o	or d:	3
1. The is a	piece of equipmen	t you use to see th	ings that are far away.
a) satellite	b) mirror	c) telescope	d) lens
2 is the ar	t of making cloth by	crossing threads u	sing special machines.
a) Farming	b) Weaving	c) Sailing	d) Baking
3. Another word for "	make" or "create" is .		
a) present	b) promise	c) protect	d) produce
			100

	4. We add the pre	fix " to get	the opposite of the	word "popular".
	a) in-	b) un-	c) en-	d) im-
	5. There are more	floods in many count	ries because of risir	ıg sea
	a) leaves	b) reefs	c) levels	d) rocks
	6. Newspapers, m	agazines, television, t	he internet and oth	er forms of
	communication	are all types of		
	a) mountain	b) medicine	c) meteorite	d) media
5	Complete the ser	tences with the corr	ect form of the wo	ord(s)
	in brackets:			6
	1. Fewer magazine	es(sell) tod	ay by newsagents b	ecause of the internet
		. (do) her housework		
		fter he (tio		
		t he (visit)		ving day.
		(catch) thousands of		The state of the s
				,
		V	Vriting	
6	Write ONE HUND	RED and TEN (110) w	ords on the follow	ving:
	"A r	eview about some n	atural wonders in	Egypt"
		•••••	*	-3/1-
			7611011	
		•••••	manan (mana	
			ermanste e e	





Ahmed and Adel are talking about the next holiday.

: I will go there with my family.

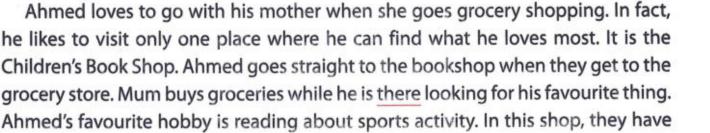


Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

so - solar - climate - because - recycle - environment







all kinds of books about sports. There are magazines that tell everything about sports events and famous athletes.

Ahmed likes sports and he spends a lot of time looking at the books and magazines in this place. He likes the area with children's books, too. Ahmed always waits in the bookstore for mum to come and get him. He chooses one book or a magazine and mum buys it for him. It is a nice way to spend a Saturday afternoon.

A) Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b	, c or d:	
1. What's the text	MAINLY about?	············ •	
a) Sports day		b) Ahmed's mo	other
c) Ahmed's hob	by	d) Sporting eve	ents
2. What does the	underlined word "the	ere" refer to?	Line place of the
a) The booksho		b) Grocery sho	
c) Street		d) Library	seuffic extraction i
3. Which of the fo the day?	llowing BEST describ	es the boy's feelin	g at the end of
a) Sad	b) Happy	c) Scared	d) Nervous
B) Answer the follow	wing questions:		
	nmed has bought wh		mum?
6. What do you th	ink Ahmed will do wi		
Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c		
1. To be is	something causing I	ittle or no damage	to the environment.
 a) inexpensive 			
2. Whales are enorm	ous sea animals. The		
to			
a) high	b) tiny	c) thin	d) big
3. The sufix "	" turns the verb "ap		
a) -ment	b) -tion	c) -ance	d) -ity

	We should protect clean.	our environment.	This means that we	e should	. it
	a) increase	b) damage	c) collect	d) keep	
	5. A/An is	a person who trav	els into space.		
	a) astronaut	b) speaker	c) engineer	d) doctor	
	6. My father was ang	ry because of the	noise. This gives the	idea that he	
	was				
	a) happy	b) cross	c) bad	d) worried	
5	Complete the sente	nces with the cor	rect form of the w	ord(s) in bracket	5:
	1. The national park.	(visit) b	y many people eve	ry year.	
	2. If you call me, I	(would) g	o to the party with	you tonight.	5
	3. Ayman has always	(be) in	terested in space so	cience.	
		(have)	a shop in town.		
	Heba said that she	······································			
	Heba said that sheWould you mind		he door, please?		
		(open) t	- Management		
		(open) t	he door, please? Writing		
6		(open) t	Writing	owing:	Ω
6	5. Would you mind Write ONE HUNDRE	(open) t	Writing		
6	5. Would you mind Write ONE HUNDRE	ED and TEN (110) Review about hove	Writing words on the follo	anet"	?
6	5. Would you mind Write ONE HUNDRE	ED and TEN (110)	Writing words on the follow to protect our pl	anet"	•
6	5. Would you mind Write ONE HUNDRE	D and TEN (110)	Writing words on the follow to protect our pl	anet"	
6	5. Would you mind Write ONE HUNDRE "A R	ED and TEN (110) Review about hov	Writing words on the follow to protect our pl	anet"	
6	5. Would you mind Write ONE HUNDRE	ED and TEN (110) Review about how	Writing words on the follow to protect our pl	anet"	
6	5. Would you mind Write ONE HUNDRE "A R	D and TEN (110) Review about hov	Writing words on the follow to protect our pl	anet"	
6	5. Would you mind Write ONE HUNDRE "A R	ED and TEN (110) Review about hov	Writing words on the follow to protect our pl	anet"	
6	5. Would you mind Write ONE HUNDRE "A R	ED and TEN (110) Review about hov	Writing words on the follow to protect our pl	anet"	
6	5. Would you mind Write ONE HUNDRE "A R	ED and TEN (110) Review about how	Writing words on the follow to protect our pl	anet"	
6	5. Would you mind Write ONE HUNDRE "A R	ED and TEN (110) Review about hov	Writing words on the follow to protect our pl	anet"	
6	5. Would you mind Write ONE HUNDRE "A R	ED and TEN (110) Review about hov	Writing words on the follow to protect our pl	anet"	





Adel is going to the club to play tennis.

Adel : Where are you going, Ashraf?

Ashraf: (1)......

Adel : What will you do there?

Ashraf : (2)......

Adel : (3).....?

Ashraf: Yes, I like tennis.

Adel : (4).....?

Ashraf: Captain Mohammed is my trainer.

Adel : May I come with you next training?

Ashraf : (5).....

B

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



presenter - media - study - studying - designer - satellite

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Every year, the United Nations organise a conference called COP"Conference of the Parties", in a selected country. 27 COPs were organised in different countries. The last one was in Sharm El-Sheikh, the city of peace, in November 2022. It was about the dangerous effects of climate change, floods, droughts and forest fires.

About 197 countries shared in this COP to find solutions for these bad effects.

They have decided to reduce greenhouse gases and use renewable energy such

as solar energy and wind power. Rich countries must help poor countries by money or by technology. People should do their best to reduce climate change. They should avoid cutting down more trees or using more electricity, oil and fossil fuels.

In the end of the conference, the United Nations thanked Egypt a lot for its great efforts and hospitality which made the COP27 very successful.

A) Choose the correct		.,	
 Which of the foll 	owing is the best t	itle for this passage	e?
a) Floods	b) Drought	c) COP27	d) Forest fires
2. The underlined	word "They" refers	to	
a) the countries		b) the effects	
c) the conference	es	d) the climate	changes
3. The C	OP was in Egypt in	November 2022.	
a) first	b) second	c) third	d) last
B) Answer the follow	ing questions:		
4. What is Sharm E	-Sheikh known as	?	
5. Why did the 197	countries share in	COP27?	
6 How can you bo		hango?	
6. How can you he	p reduce climate c	ilalige:	
	Vocabulary	and Structur	·e
Choose the correct			·e
Choose the correct	answer from a, b,	c or d:	6
Choose the correct 1. A/Anis	answer from a, b,	c or d:	6
	answer from a, b,	c or d:	6
1. A/An is	answer from a, b,	c or d:	6
1. A/Anis always green.	answer from a, b, an area in the dese b) oasis	c or d: ert where you can f	ind water and it's
1. A/Anis always green. a) forest	answer from a, b, an area in the dese b) oasis	c or d: ert where you can f	ind water and it's
 A/Anis always green. a) forest "Grow" and "Plant". 	answer from a, b, an area in the dese b) oasis are b) antonyms	c or d: ert where you can f c) coast c) suffixes	ind water and it's d) lake d) opposites
 A/Anis always green. a) forest "Grow" and "Plant". a) synonyms 	answer from a, b, an area in the dese b) oasis are b) antonyms	c or d: ert where you can f c) coast c) suffixes	ind water and it's d) lake d) opposites

4. A/An is a	person who travels	into space.	
a) actress	b) sailor	c) astronaut	d) assistant
5. The floods broke do	own some coastal h	otels in Thailand. T	he words
"broke down" here	mean		
a) destroyed	b) designed	c) built	d) made
6. I saw an enormous	elephant. The word	"enormous" means	S
a) tiny	b) easy	c) huge	d) small
Complete the senten	ices with the corre	ct form of the wor	'd(s)
in brackets:			6
1. I enjoy (I	read) in the library.		
2. Football	(plays) all over the	world.	
3. She'd get a present	if she (st	icceed).	
4. Noha (sa	aid) us that she was	busy.	
5. I'd (write) my homework be	fore I went to bed.	
	N/	riting	Modificating
Write ONE HUNDRED	D and TEN (110) wo	ords on the follow	ing:
	"A biography o	of your hero"	
			•••••
	••••••		
••••••			
	a) actress 5. The floods broke do "broke down" here a) destroyed 6. I saw an enormous a) tiny Complete the senter in brackets: 1. I enjoy	a) actress b) sailor 5. The floods broke down some coastal he "broke down" here mean	 5. The floods broke down some coastal hotels in Thailand. The "broke down" here mean





Heba and Sara are talking in the library.

Heba: Hello Sara, what are you doing here?

Sara: Hello Heba, (1)......

Heba: Reading a book! (2).....?

Sara: It's about the Pyramids at Giza.

Heba: Have you ever visited the Pyramids?

Sara : (3)......

Sara: I visited them last holiday.

Heba: How did you go there?

Sara : (5).....

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



absorb - burn - environment - fuels - burning - electricity

We should do our best to keep the (1)..... safe and clean. We shouldn't cut down trees because they (2)..... carbon dioxide. We should reduce avoid (4)..... rubbish. This may protect our planet.

Read the following text, then answer the questions:



An email that starts with: "I love you" seems to be a wonderful message that surely attracts you and makes you excited to open and read it. You may think that it was sent by a close friend, a kind relative or an honest wife who reminds you of her love and respect. That was exactly what I had thought.

However, the fact was completely different. This email was a source of much trouble for me. It made me lose my job in a big company for selling electric

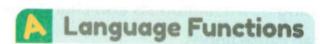
goods. It wasn't really a nice message from someone who admires me but it was a dangerous computer virus sent from an unknown address. It destroyed all the files and documents saved on my computer which had the accounts and data of my company's customers. This caused a great damage for the company so my employer asked me to leave my job.

Now, I'm jobless. It was my mistake, but I learned the lesson. I'll never open an email from addresses I don't know.

A) Choose the corre			
1. This passage tea	aches you to		
a) destroy all file	es saved on your comp	outer	
b) stop sending	and receiving emails		
c) leave your wo	ork and be free		
d) check your e	mails carefully		
2. The underlined	word "it" refers to		
a) the email	b) the job	c) the company	d) the computer
3. "I love you" was	really a/an		
a) present	b) computer virus	c) invitation	d) nice message
B) Answer the follow	wing questions:		
4. Where did the v	vriter receive this emai	il from?	
5. What did the w	riter lose because of th	is email?	
In your opinion	, how does the writer f	eel now?	
	V	101	
C	Vocabulary a	nd Structure	
	answer from a, b, c o	or d:	3
	•	or d:	<u></u>
	answer from a, b, c o	e area around it.	d) tower
1. Ais the	answer from a, b, c o	or d: e area around it. c) mountain	
1. Ais the	answer from a, b, c o e land that is below the b) depression traditional arts in Egyp	or d: e area around it. c) mountain	
 A is the a) forest There are a lot of 	answer from a, b, c o e land that is below the b) depression traditional arts in Egyp	or d: e area around it. c) mountain ot. The word "traditi	
 A is the a) forest There are a lot of means a) modern 	answer from a, b, c on a land that is below the b) depression traditional arts in Egyp	or d: e area around it. c) mountain ot. The word "tradition" c) ancient	d) new

	4. To make the adje	ctive from the word	"success", we add the	e suffix ""	٠
	a) -al	b) -ion	c) -ness	d) -ful	
	5. To be famous and	l rich, you should be	a toiler. The word "t	oiler" means	
	someone who				
	a) never works	b) works hard	c) sleeps a lot	d) eats much	
	6. The synonym of t	the word "true" is			
	a) sad	b) incorrect	c) remote	d) correct	
5	Complete the sent	ences with the corr	ect form of the wor	rd(s)	1
	in brackets:			6	J
	1. A list of modern v	vonders (write) in 2007.		
	2. I didn't go to the	theatre until I	(finish) my worl	k.	
	3. If he (r	not/hate) flying, he w	vould travel by plane	2.	
	4. He told me that it	(will be)	a holiday the next d	ay.	
	5. My family plan	(spend) the	weekend in Alexan	dria.	
		6	fuitin a		
		D S W	/riting		
6	Write ONE HUNDR	ED and TEN (110) w	ords on the follow	ing:	
	"A t	eview of the things	you are dreaming	of"	
		•••••			

					475





Esraa is asking Basma about her future job.

Esraa	: Hi, Basma. Where have you been?
Basma	:(1)
	:The library! (2)?
Basma	: Because I am doing research about media.
Esraa	: What job would you like to do in the future?
Basma	: (3)
Esraa	: Why do you want to do this job?
Basma	: (4)
	: Great! (5)?

Basma: Sure, a journalist needs special skills.

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



orbits - sent - astronauts - spacecraft - was sent - foreigners

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Rainforests are forests with high rainfall and a large number of different kinds of plants and animals. Rainforests are the most important habitat on our planet because they are home for 50 - 90% of the species on earth. In addition, they are a main source of medicine and wood. Human beings depend on rainforests in different ways. Nevertheless, large areas of rainforests are cut down every year by people.

Rainforests have a great effect on the climate. When trees are cut down or burnt, they release carbon dioxide into the air, which is the main gas that causes global warming. Cutting down rainforests also changes the amount of rain that falls in an area and can cause floods.

A) Choose the correct	A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:			
 The best title for 	the passage is			
a) Climate chang	ge	b) Human being	5	
c) Rainforests		d) Pollution		
2. The underlined	word "Nevertheless"	can be replaced by		
a) Because		b) However		
c) That's because	е	d) Furthermore		
3. Besides wood, ra	ainforests can provid	le humans with		
a) medicine	b) fish	c) floods	d) pollution	
B) Answer the follow	ving questions:			
4. Summarise the	effect of rainforests of	on the climate.		
5. Why are rainfore	ests the most import	ant habitat on the E	arth?	
6. What do you thi	ink people should do	to protect rainfore	sts?	
6. What do you thi	ink people should do	o to protect rainfore	sts?	
6. What do you thi				
6. What do you thi		to protect rainfore		
6. What do you thi	Vocabulary o	and Structure		
C	Vocabulary of	and Structure	3	
Choose the correct	Vocabulary of answer from a, b, c	and Structure	<u>3</u>	
Choose the correct 1. A/Anis	answer from a, b, c a person who speci b) linguist	and Structure or d: alises in languages. c) reporter	d) programmer	
Choose the correct 1. A/Anis a) astronaut	answer from a, b, c a person who speci b) linguist	and Structure or d: alises in languages. c) reporter or plants that lived	d) programmer	
Choose the correct 1. A/Anis a) astronaut 2are the	Vocabulary of answer from a, b, c a person who species b) linguist e remains of animals b) Mangroves	and Structure or d: falises in languages. c) reporter or plants that lived c) Fossils	d) programmer in the past. d) Threads	
Choose the correct 1. A/Anis a) astronaut 2are the a) Species	Vocabulary of answer from a, b, c a person who species b) linguist e remains of animals b) Mangroves	and Structure or d: falises in languages. c) reporter or plants that lived c) Fossils	d) programmer in the past. d) Threads	
Choose the correct 1. A/An	vocabulary of answer from a, b, c is a person who species b) linguist e remains of animals b) Mangroves ljective from the word b) -al	and Structure or d: alises in languages. c) reporter or plants that lived c) Fossils d'renew' by adding t	d) programmer in the past. d) Threads he suffix "".	
Choose the correct 1. A/An	vocabulary of answer from a, b, c is a person who species b) linguist e remains of animals b) Mangroves ljective from the word b) -al	and Structure or d: alises in languages. c) reporter or plants that lived c) Fossils d'renew' by adding t	d) programmer in the past. d) Threads he suffix "".	

	5. We can use inte	ince without wires, t	ilis illealis we use	technology.
	a) useless	b) helpless	c) wireless	d) hopeless
	6. We should avo	id throwing rubbish i	nto the Nile. The wo	ord "avoid" can be
	replaced by	••••••••••		
	a) stand	b) set up	c) set	d) stop
5	Complete the ser	ntences with the cor	rect form of the w	ord(s)
	in brackets:			6
	1. If he read my m	essage, he	. (reply) to it.	
	2. After I	(have) my lunch, i	went out.	
	3. Yasser	(said) me that he v	ould travel to Aswa	in.
	4. The governmen	nt plans (p	lant) a lot of trees.	
	5. When I was you	ıng, I (not/	used) to smoke.	
			Almihim -	
			Writing	
6	Write ONE HUND	ORED and TEN (110)	words on the follo	wing:
	-	"A review of a visit t	o an interesting pl	ace"
			,	
			1	
			1	
			1	
			,	
			1	





Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Nader are talking about social media.

Ahmed: Hi, Nader! I see you are using social media.

Nader : Of course. (1).....?

Ahmed: Yes, I think they are very useful. What's your favourite social media?

Nader : (2).....

Ahmed : (3).....?

Nader: I spend two hours daily.

Ahmed: I think that (4)......

Nader: For me, that is enough. We shouldn't waste our time.

Ahmed: You're right. Thanks for your advice.

Nader : (5)......

B

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



interrupt - will - renewable - cut - won't - fossil

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Over twenty million people work in the coffee industry. They grow and sell enough coffee beans for four hundred million cups of coffee a year. Coffee is worth more money than any other industry in the world except oil. In Brazil alone, about three thousand coffee plants are looked after every year. Coffee was discovered in Ethiopia. A man called Khalid, who was looking after his goats and sheep, noticed that they were very energetic after eating a certain kind of beans. They are more grass and ran fast everywhere. He decided to taste the beans himself and found that they gave him a lot of energy.

The coffee drink we know today was first made in Turkey in 1555. Since then, coffee drinking has become a daily routine in Turkish life. By the 18th century, coffee had become an important part of the European life. In England, the coffee houses of London became famous meeting places for writers, artists and men working in the government.

A) Choose the corr	ect answer from a,	b, c or d:	
 The main idea 	of this passage is al	out	
a) the types of		b) the history	of coffee
c) how to mak	c) how to make coffee		es
The underline	d word "energetic" r	neans very	
a) active	b) lazy	c) weak	d) shepherd
3. Khalid looked	after goats and shee	ep. He was a	
and the second s	b) pilot	c) driver	d) shepherd
B) Answer the follo	wing questions:	111	
	grows the most cof	fee in the world?	
5. Why were the	coffee houses in Lor	idon famous in the	past?

6. Do you think K	halid is clever? Why	/Why not?	

C	Vocabulary	and Structure	e
Choose the correc			
			3
1. A habi		a and you find rocks	there.
a) mountain		c) polar	d) rainforest
2. You should	making bad fri	iends.	
a) set up	b) avoid	c) retire	d) keep
3. The Great Pyramic	d in Giza is a very big		
 a) expensive 	b) tiny		d) enormous
4. A is a ta	ll plant which we ca	n use to make cups	and chairs.
a) mangrove	b) seagrass		d) seedling

	The ink in my printe	r is low. I have to cha	inge the	•	
	a) cartridge	b) brace		d) fabric	
	6. We add the prefix "	" to the word	<u>"cycle</u> " to mean "u	se something a	gain".
	a) im-	b) un-	c) re-	d) dis-	
5	Complete the senten	ces with the correct	t form of the wo	rd(s)	
	in brackets:				5
	 The governor said t 	hat the tower	(will) be the	tallest in Africa	l.
	2. Adel ran fast				
	3. I didn't use			• 0	1
	4. The news				
	5. After Salma	(write) the email,	, she sent it.		
		(Wr	iting		
6	Write ONE HUNDRE	and TEN (110) wor	rds on the follow	ving:	0
		"A biography of a p	erson you like"		
					•••••



	-	
_	3 N	_

Finish the following dialogue:

A student is talking to his/her teacher about the solar system.

Student: Nice to meet you, sir. Can I ask you a few questions?

Student : (2).....?

Teacher: There are eight planets in the solar system. What else?

Student: (3).....?

Teacher: No, the sun is a star not a planet.

Student: How can we see the stars?

Teacher: (4).....

Student: Yes, the telescope is a good idea. (5).....

Teacher: You're welcome.

Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



information – media – become – job – becomes – solutions

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Money is very useful in our daily life. The form of money which is used by a country is called currency. The currency is used for two purposes either to buy goods or to get a service. The most common two types of currencies are the note or paper money and the coin which is used when it includes few units of money.

In Egypt, we use the Egyptian pound. In Saudi Arabia, people use the Saudi Riyal. In America, they use the American dollar. Yen is used in Japan. France uses the franc. The dirham is the currency of the United Arab Emirates. In Iraq, people

use the dinar. The franc is used in Germany. There are other forms of money in the shape of cheques or bills. They are formal documents that are equal to money and that can be exchanged for money from banks. Although money can buy a lot of things, it can't buy love and happiness.

A) Choose the correc	t answer from a, b,	. or a:	
1. The best title for	this passage is		
a) Saving money	5	b) Buying and sell	ing
c) Wasting mone	y	d) Forms of mone	y
If you live in Gerr	many, you will use the	e	
a) pound		b) dollar	
c) franc		d) riyal	
3. The form of mon	ey used by any coun	try is called its	······· •
a) coin		b) paper	
c) bill		d) currency	
B) Answer the follow	ing questions:		
4. Give a summary	to this text.		
	nderlined word " <u>it</u> " re	efer to?	
	vocabatal y a	ild ott detaile	
Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c	or d:	3
1. To give the antony	m of the word "able",	we add the prefix ".	
a) un-	b) im-	c) mis-	d) ir-
2. We should protect	our environment. Th	e word "protect" me	eans
a) damage	b) destroy	c) kill	d) save
3. A is the re	mains of animals or p	plants that lived in the	ne past.
a) rock	b) fossil	c) fire	d) citadel
4. A/An is a	a person who travels	into space.	
a) writer	b) astronomer	c) astronaut	d) astrologer

	5. We can use win	d to prod	uce energy.		
	a) types	b) wheels	c) paints	d) turbines	
	6. He couldn't con	trol his feeling. The s	ynonym of "control	" is	
	a) manage	b) design	c) mend	d) depend	
5	Complete the sen	tences with the cor	rect form of the w	ord(s)	
	in brackets:				5
	1. He (ι	use) to live by the sea	a, but now he does.		
	2. Have you	(never) driven a	a car?		
	3.1 (ask	(ed) that boy who is	standing there a tru	ie story.	
	4. He got low mark	cs (becau	se) he studied hard		
	5. We should avoid	d (cut) do	wn trees.		
		D	Writing		
6	Write ONE HUND	RED and TEN (110)	words on the follo	wine	
					0
		"How to keep you	r environment clea	ın"	
	•••••				
	••••••				
	***************************************			•••••	••••••
			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		••••••
		••••••			••••••
		•••••			••••••
		***************************************			•••••
			••••••	••••••	••••••
			••••••		•••••••
			•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••		
	•••••••••••	••••••			
	••••••				
	••••••		•••••		





Finish the following dialogue:

Hend has met her friend by chance.

Hend: So you've been here for a week.

Basma: (2)......

Hend: (3).....?

Basma: I'm staying at Star Hotel.

Hend: (4).....?

Basma: For two weeks.

Hend: Have a nice stay!

Basma: (5).....

B R

Reading Comprehension

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



oil - reusable - continue - carbon - bulbs - sustainable

Helping the environment is very important for everyday life. We cannot (1)....... to use petrol. We need to use (2)...... products. Some people help by using energy-saving light (3)...... while others use (4).....shopping bags. This will help the world to be a better place to live in.

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

It was the hope of an eleven-year-old boy in Kansas City to be a train driver. He was born without arms so he was sent to a special school where he learned to use his feet as "hands". He spent all his time in the train station watching the trains and one day his dream came true. Seeing a train without a driver, he climbed in. He had no difficulty in starting it up with his feet. Soon he was driving along at 40 kilometres per hour. The signalman couldn't see him and when the boy reached the next station, he made the train go back. When he was near home, a railway

when the boy said simply "I like trains". A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. The railway man the boy at the end. a) punished b) killed c) shouted at d) smiled at 2. The underlined word "it" refers to the a) train b) railway c) station d) signal 3. The man stopped the train. a) signalman b) railway c) boy d) driver B) Answer the following questions: 4. Where did the boy learn? 5. Why did he spend his time in the station? 6. When did the boy get back? **Vocabulary and Structure** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. A is something people use to see things that are far away. a) telegraph b) telescope c) television d) telephone 2. This camera is wonderful. It has got a very good a) bulb b) glass c) lens d) pence 3. The suffix makes the adjective of the word "tradition". a) -ic b) -al d) -ure 4. The antonym of the word "near" is a) remote b) close c) closed d) here 5. We must all putting rubbish in the middle of the road. a) keep b) like c) use d) avoid 6. A city on the sea is called a city. a) cast b) cost c) coastal d) typical

man caught up with the train and stopped it. He was angry at first but he smiled

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s)
in brackets:
1. This house (build) years ago by a famous engineer.
2. My brother asked me to stop (run) in the middle of the street.
3. If he trained well, he (win) the match.
4. He(travel) until he had finished his work.
5. They said that their brother (write) that book the day before.
Writing
6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:
"A book you read"
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
••••••



	B	
-	E£9-	-

Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed has met his friend Haten	n at the club after a long time.
Ahmed: I haven't seen you for a lo	ng time.
Hatem: You are right. I'm busy do	ing a new course nowadays
Ahmed: (1)	7
a) Which subject do you like	b) Why did you join it
- \ \ A /	d) When did you start it
Hatem: At the new Academy of Te	echnology.
Ahmed: (2)	
a) How are you studying it	b) What are you studying
	d) When are you studying it
Hatem: Computer software.	a) When are you studying it
Ahmed: How often do you go to the	nis course?
Hatem: (3)	no course.
a) Three days a week	b) Three books a week
c) Three stories a week	d) Three comments a week
Ahmed: How much have you paid	7
Hatem : (4)	
	b) Two times per day
c) Once per month	d) One thousand nounds
Ahmed: (5)	
al NOT at all	
c) You are welcome	
c) Tou are welcome	d) I don't think so



Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. To "....." is to take in liquids or gases through a surface.
 - a) fill
- b) protect
- c) absorb
- d) produce
- 2. A person who specialises in languages is a
 - a) linguist
- b) presenter
- c) journalist
- d) photographer
- 3. The ink inside a printer is very bad for the environment.
 - a) screen
- b) cartridge
- c) carriage
- d) keyboard

4. We add the suff	ix "" to get th	ne adjective from the	e word "colour".
a) -en	b) -ness	c) -ful	d) -ment
5. Satellites send le	ots of signals. The ant	onym of the word "se	end" is "
a) deliver	b) allow	c) pass	d) receive
6. This area is full of	of different	. of animals. There ar	e different kinds of
them.			
a) spices	b) species	c) pieces	d) spaces
3 Choose the corre	ct form of the word(s) in the brackets fr	om a, b, c or d:
1. These places	(know) as gra	assland habitats.	
a) is known	b) knows		d) knew
2. She is short	(Because), sh	e is a good basketba	II player.
a) So	b) However	c) That's why	d) So that
3. If there	(to be) more man	grove trees, there wo	ould be fewer floods.
a) be	b) are	c) was	d) were
4. He(publish) his ideas unt	il just before he died	l.
a) hadn't publis	shed	b) won't publish	h
c) hasn't publis	hed	d) doesn't publ	ish
	Reading Co	omprehension	

Read the following text, then answer the questions:



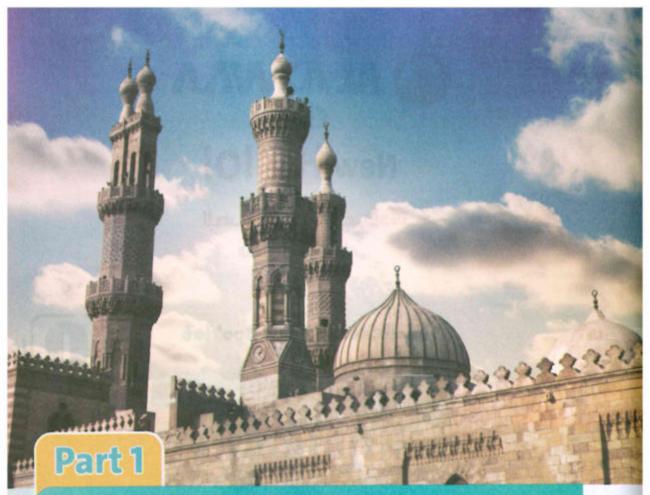
The Chinese invented paper, and they were the first to use paper banknotes for money. Before paper banknotes were invented in the seventh century, wealthy Chinese traders had used metal coins. These had a hole in the middle so that traders could carry them on a piece of material. But these were very heavy to carry. As a result, traders left the money with someone they trusted.

People in Europe only started to use paper banknotes in the seventeenth century in England. The king needed money to help fight a war with France. Banks encouraged people to leave money with them and gave them handwritten notes saying how much they had.

The paper used for banknotes is usually made from a mixture of paper and cotton, and sometimes other materials. Although these other materials make them stronger than normal paper, most paper banknotes only last for two years. For this reason, some countries tried using plastic banknotes in 1983.

 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, 	, c or d:	
1. The main idea of the text is "		
a) Why we use money	b) Why we us	e banks
c) The history of paper banknotes	d) The history	of trade
Banks in England first wanted people	e to leave their r	noney with them
because		,
a) the king needed money to fight a	war	
b) people preferred banknotes to co		
c) people wanted their money to be	safe	
 d) banks opened for the first time 		
Paper banknotes were first used in		
a) Japan b) America	c) Russia	d) China
B) Answer the following questions:		-, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -
 Why did Chinese traders first use bar 	knotes instead o	of coins?
How do you think most people will p	ay for goods in t	he future? Why?
6. Summarise the third paragraph of the	e passage.	1171 = 7.
Read and complete the text with words	from the follow	ving list:
solution – teach – teac		
There is a great project in our city. It is	(1) peo	ple how to protect the
environment. Many families collect their	rubbish and send	d it for (2)lt's
a great (3) to a big problem becau and get some money.	ise these families	shelp the environment
and get some money.		
D Wr	iting	
Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) wo		
You tell your friend Amir about your plan	s for next summ	er holiday. Your email
address is atef@student.com and his ema	il address is ami	r@student.com.





Al-Azhar Corner

- Test Yourself on each 2 Lessons
- Test on Each Unit
- Final Exams

- اختبر نفسك على كل درسين
 - اختبار خاص بكل وحدة
 - الاختبارات النهائية

Unit 7 Lessons (1&2)



Supply the miss	ing parts in the follow	wing dialogue:	
	place do you think is	A THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF T	iral wonder?
	place do you trillik is		irai worider:
	I-Weshwashy is on the		
Basmala : Can w		,	
Kady : (3)		It's a wonderful	place for swimming.
	ect answer from a, b,		
	the tree that give		
a) into	b) away	c) down	d) up
	offered food to the s		u, up
	b) locals		d) located
	ntnew scho		uy rocated
a) builds	b) are built		d) built
4. Egypt	by millions of tourist	s every year.	Selection of the same
a) visit	b) visits	c) is visiting	d) is visited
Complete the se	ntences with the corr	ect form of the wor	rd(s) in brackets:
	(deliver)		
	n't(ma		,
	(sell) in n		
Write a paragrap	oh of about SIX (6) ser	ntences on:	
	"A natural won	der in Egypt	
***************************************		••••••	

Unit 7 Lessons (3 & 4)

- 1	g P	3	
- 1	97	8	-
_			

1	Read and	complete	the text	with wo	rds from	the following	list:
---	----------	----------	----------	---------	----------	---------------	-------

amazing - area - out - up - species

The Fayum Depression is one of the main oases of the Western Desert. It is an (1)...... of desert below sea level, formed by wind 1.8 million years ago. It's near the Nile, 60 km southwest of Cairo. Many (2)...... of animal fossil were found there. The most (3)..... fossils are the whale fossils. Scientists were surprised to find (4)..... that these whales had legs.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The Taj Mahal in India is a really beautiful building that lots of people go to see. It was built a long time ago, and it's a very special place. The Taj Mahal is made out of white marble, which is a kind of shiny rock. There's a big pool in front of it, and you can walk through a pretty garden to get there.

The Taj Mahal was built by a man named Shah Jahan, who was a king in India. He built it to remember his wife, who died. He wanted to build something really special to show how much he loved her. Inside the Taj Mahal, there are two tombs. One is for Shah Jahan's wife, and the other is for Shah Jahan himself. People go there to see the tombs and to look at all the beautiful decorations.

A)	Answer	the	foll	lowing	questions:
----	--------	-----	------	--------	------------

- What is the Taj Mahal?
- 2. Who built the Taj Mahal?
- 3. Why was the Taj Mahal built?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4. The Taj Mahal is made out ofrocks.
 - a) granite b) marble
- c) sandstone
 - d) limestone

- 5. You can find inside the Taj Mahal.
 - a) a swimming pool

b) a garden

c) two tombs

d) a fountain

Unit 7 Lessons (5 & 6)

	ø	8	c	
E		6	3	Ľ
T.	5		9	_

Read and complete	the text with word	s from the following	na lists
	suitable – lose – ca		ng nat.
Fennec foxes ar	e sometimes (1)	"desert foxes"	because they live in
			e daytime heat of the
			lies is (4) for
	ge eyes and ears all		
2 Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. The internet is on	e of the greatest		
a) discoveries	b) invitations	c) inventions	d) invents
Reading and writi	ng are two different		
a) skills	b) skulls	c) losses	d) papers
3. Our breakfast	early in the mo	orning.	
a) cook	b) cooks	c) is cooked	d) is cooking
4. The letter	and sent yesterday	y.	
a) was written	b) written	c) wrote	d) writes
Complete the sente	ences with the corre	ect form of the wor	d(s) in brackets:
1. The oldest house	in the USA	(build) in 1	1624.
2. Pizza is			
3. These trees	(plant)	by clever school boy	s last summer.
Write a paragraph o	of about SIX (6) sen	tences on:	
	"The caraca	"	





Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

today.
beautiful
is really
-
k the sky
Lthink
yar :
May

3oshra : (1)

: I mean, it's clear and surprising. Mayar

: I mean, it's wonderful. Boshra : (2). Mayar

Boshra: (3).

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

bites - weighs - wild - fights - aims

them. It cat with long legs, a short face, long ears and long teeth. It's found in Africa, the Middle East, Central Asia, Pakistan and India. It can grow to about 90 centimetres 8-19 kg and lives mainly alone or in pairs. many animals and (4) can jump very high. The caracal is a (1) The caracal (3). long. It (2)

Read the following, then answer the questions:

animals to live in. One of the most famous habitats in Egypt is the and scorpions. Finally, there are also many animals that live in the different animals like crocodiles, hippos, and fish. Another habitat in Egypt is a beautiful country with many different habitats for Nile River. It is the longest river in the world and is home to many rains. Some animals that live in the desert include camels, snakes, Egypt is the desert. It is a very hot and dry place where it hardly ever mountains of Egypt. These animals include eagles, hyenas, and foxes.

A) Answer the following questions:

What is the longest river in the world?

- Name some of the animals that live in the desert of Egypt.
- Why is it difficult to live in deserts?

B) Choose the	correct answer	B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:	
4. The Nile	River is home to	4. The Nile River is home to many animals like	
a) lions	b) crocodiles	c) hippos	d) b & c
5. Animals	that live in the m	5. Animals that live in the mountains of Egypt include	include
a) fish	b) camels	c) a & b	ell none
4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:	rrect answer fro	ma, b, cord:	
1. ln a	habitat, there i	1, In ahabitat, there isn't always rain, but there is alway	ut there is alway
a lot of water.	<u></u>		
a) coastal	b) polar	c) wetland	d) desert
2. The farmer	built a big fence	2. The farmer built a big fence around his field to	tohi
animals.			
a) protect	b) produce	c) find	d) sell
3. America	by Columbus in 1492.	ibus in 1492.	
a) discover	4	b) discovered	
c) was discovered		d) is discovered	
4. Cotton	in the Nile Delta.	Delta.	
a) grown		b) were grown	
c) is grown		d) are grown	

Somplete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

(be) cleaned by my sisters every day. (speak) in many countries of the world. ... (writing) by? 3. Who was this book 2. Our house 1. English

Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"A story you like most"

				2
	1	i	1	
		1	1	
		13	1	- 1
		1	1	1
		1	1	- 1
		1	1	-
	1	1	1	- 1
		1	- 8	- 1
		1		1
	1	8	1	1
		1	1	-
	1		1	1
	1		1	1
			1	***************************************
	1		1	1
	1	1	1	1
	1	1	1	
	1	1	1	1
	1			1
	1	1	1	i
	1	1	1	1
	1	- 1	1	- 1
	***************************************	1	1	1
	1	1	1	-
	1	1	1	1
	1	1	1	
	1			1
3	1		- 1	1
	1	1	- 8	1
	1	1	1	- 1
			- 1	- 1
		1		- 1
		- 1		3
		1	- 1	1
		l	1	1
	-	1		- 1
	1	1	1	1
	1	1	1	1
	1	- 1		- 1
	1	1	1	1
			9.8	- 2

Unit 8 Lessons (1&2)



1 Supply the missi	ng parts in the foll	owing dialogue:	-6
	the planet becomin		

		change by recycling	
Khaled : Our env	rironment will be cl	eaner if we recycle r	ubbish.
2 Choose the corre	ect answer from a,	b, c or d:	
1. There is a proje	ct that warns peopl	e of the dangers of .	change.
a) weather		c) greenhouse	
		- The state of the	at we canit.
a) cycle	b) avoid	c) recycle	d) melt
		nate change will ge	
		c) burn	d) to burn
		houses that use	
a) to building		c) build	d) building
Complete the ser			vord(s) in brackets:
	(see) that mo		
) to football games.	
3. If it rains, I	(not/ go)	to the park.	
Write an email of	SIX (6) sentences	to your friend Dalie	a to tell her about
		r name is Ola. Your	
ola@yahoo.com	and your friend's e	mail address is dal	ia@gmail.com.

***************************************	***************************************		
ACTURE OF STREET STREET, STREE			
			Si from Anni
Constitution in the second			- boson i

Unit 8 Lesson

٠,	-		
1	-	ь	

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

with - cartridge - printer - surprised - print

Yesterday was a hard day. When I wanted to print my homework, I discovered
that the (1) was broken. I phoned my friend to ask for help. I told him what
was wrong (2) it. He told me that it needed a new printer (3) He also
asked me to keep it clean. I was (4) because he knew all this information.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

We should start recycling our old phones and take them to the recycling centre. We all enjoy having new mobile phones, but what should we do with our old phones? Should we keep throwing them away? Remember that it is not easy to make mobile phones. They need to have a lot of important materials inside them. When you throw away a phone, these materials can be very bad for the environment. I think that one day, we will not need to buy a new phone every few years. People will design phones that can use the latest technology, even when it changes. Then, we will avoid throwing away our old phones. That will be very good for the environment!

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1. What's the best title for this text?
- 2. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?
- 3. What will happen if we throw away our old phones?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4. Mobile phones have materials inside them.
 - a) ugly b) terrible
- c) bad
- d) important

- 5. Recycling is for the environment.
 - a) good
- b) bad

- c) luck
- d) horrible

Unit 8 Lessons (5 & 6)

	_	_		
	-			
- 1	_	×	Э.	
_ 1			,,,	
- 1			100	

Read and complete	the text with wo	ords from the follow	ring list:
spe	cies – coastal – k	eeping – leaves – liv	res
the (1)wa name "seagrass" coi	ter. There are 60 (2 mes from the man nportant role in (4)of seagrass y species with long ar	ander water. They live in all over the world. The and narrow (3) healthy and providing
2 Choose the correct	answer from a, b	o, c or d:	
1. Plants often	pollution in t	the air, making it clea	ner for us.
a) look	b) smell	c) absorb	d) leave
2 is a gree	enhouse gas from	landfill sites.	
a) Methane		b) Nitrogen	
c) Oxygen		d) Carbon diox	ride .
3. When the plants	big eno	ugh, divers will plant	them along the coast.
a) are	b) were	c) will be	d) be
Seagrass absorbs change.	carbon dioxide. Tl	nat isseagrass	s can help stop climate
a) nevertheless	b) so	c) why	d) because

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

"A recycling project"

- 1. He was very tired. (ever), he went on walking.
- 2. I left (however) you never asked me to stay.
- 3. Every time he tried, he failed. (Because), he did not stop trying.

Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:





B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

	- 1
	- 5
	- 1
	- 1
	- 3
Con	- 4
	- 1
-	
0.3	
90	- 0
-	
died.	
4975	- 12
10	- 2
-	- 1
James .	
-	- 23
m:	- 1
100	
-	
andrew .	
-Grand	- 0
100	
50.0	- 3
-	
hat	
PG:	
-	- 2
-	- 3
Time.	- 1
-	
-	
-	- 0
	- 1
73	
	- 44
20	- 33
ď	3
ě	3
rie	2000
rie	20000
orriec	ST. ST. ST.
orrie	20000000
/orriec	STATE OF
vorrie	1000000
worried	The second second
worried	100000000000000000000000000000000000000
e worried	The second second
e worried	
re worried	State of the state
r're worried	AND AND ADDRESS OF THE PARTY OF
u're worried	description of the second
ur're worried	
ou're worried	
ou're worried	1)
You're worried	(1)
You're worried	(1)
: You're worried	• (1)
: You're worried	(1)
d : You're worried	n : (1)
d : You're worried	in : (1)
ad : You're worried	(1) inie
iad : You're worried	(1) : (1)
Ziad : You're worried	7ain: (1)
Ziad: You're worried	Zein : (1)

Zein: I'm going to talk about what we can do to help the environment. Ziad: (2)

Zein: I'd like to start by saying that we should all use less energy.

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

increase - burning - environmental - global - education

because of the rise in (2)...... warming, which happens due in temperature by burning fossil fuels and the fuels, climate change will get worse. It leads to melting of polar ice, problem. It happens release of harmful gases by industries. If we keep (4). Climate change is a serious (1). floods and droughts.

Read the following, then answer the questions:

grow naturally in Egypt. They will look better in your house since balcony. And you can eat the leaves of plants called herbs, so put an open place, like the living room. It is best to choose plants that they will look familiar. Plants that grow naturally in Egypt are easier for your health. They breathe out oxygen, which is a gas that we need to breathe. Also, plants often absorb pollution in the air, making it cleaner for us. Some plants smell nice, so I put these in my these in your kitchen! Spider plants look attractive, so I put them in I think we should have plants in the house. Plants are very good to take care of.

Answer the following questions:

- 1. Put a title for this text.
- What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?
 - Why should we choose plants from Egypt?

4.1 put the plants that smell	oxygen, which is a gas that we		c) away d) down	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:	carbon dioxide and produce oxygen.	b) increase c) absorb d) avoid	The country that is very hot and sunny can use energy well.	a) climate b) greenhouse c) wind d) solar	3. What will happen if you pass your exams?	c) doesn't d) aren't	Control of the Contro
put the plants that s terrible b) nice	5. Plants breathe	need to breathe.	p) in	correct answ	- 1		y that is very h	b) gre	happen if you	a) didn't b) don't	
4.1 put tn a) terrib	5. Plants	need to	a) out	4 Choose the	1. Trees	a) recycle	2. The countr	a) climate	3. What will	a) didn't	

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

b) because

d) however

all our electrica	
leave)	
avoid	on.
plnods	ipment
. We	edu
-	

... (are) late if we don't run. (live) in France. 3. I enjoyed 2. We ...

Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"Importance of plants"

	1	1	1
			 -
		-	
			-
-			

Unit 9 Lessons (1&2)

B.

	do you think clima	te change can cause?	
Mustafa: (1)			
Ahmed : Why de	o you think it can	cause floods?	
Mustafa: (2)		rising se	a levels.
Ahmed : (3)		?	
Mustafa: Yes, the	at is dangerous. M	ost trees and plants o	an't live in seawater.
Choose the corre	ect answer from a	, b, c or d:	
1. I want to do so	mething to	the environment.	
a) turn on	b) rise	c) damage	d) protect
2 chan	ge means that ma	ny countries have mo	re floods.
a) Climate		c) Electricity	d) Wind
3. He ric	de his bike to scho	ol.	
a) used	b) use	c) use to	d) used to
4. If I en	ough money, I wo	ould buy a new flat.	
a) am having	b) have	c) had	d) having
Complete the se	ntences with the	correct form of the v	word(s) in brackets:
complete the sel			
1.1	(not/drink) that i		
1. 2. We	(use to) live in	Aswan when I was a	
1. 2. We	(use to) live in		
1. 2. We 3. We	(use to) live in	Aswan when I was a ne to visit the Eiffel To	
1. 2. We 3. We	(use to) live in (not/ have) tin	Aswan when I was a ne to visit the Eiffel To sentences on:	
1. 2. We 3. We	(use to) live in (not/ have) tin th of about SIX (6	Aswan when I was a ne to visit the Eiffel To sentences on:	
1. 2. We 3. We	(use to) live in (not/ have) tin th of about SIX (6 "Climate	Aswan when I was a ne to visit the Eiffel To sentences on:	wer last summer.
Vrite a paragrap	(use to) live in (not/ have) tin th of about SIX (6 "Climate	Aswan when I was a ne to visit the Eiffel To sentences on: change"	wer last summer.
1. 2. We 3. We Write a paragrap	(use to) live in (not/ have) tin th of about SIX (6 "Climate	Aswan when I was a me to visit the Eiffel To sentences on: change"	ower last summer.

Unit 9 Lessons

-	T.O	-

F/120				2000				e	
п	Road and	complete	the	text	with	words fr	om the	following	ı list:
	neau anu	complete						The state of the s	A DOMESTIC

electric - damage - electricity - travel - air

Because of light now we can do almost everything at	any time we want.
The invention of (1) has improved our com-	munication system.
Any device, whether it is radio, television, mobile, (2)	conditioning
or computer, runs on power. It has helped us (3)	fast with the
invention of (4) engines.	

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The Iron Woman is a book about a woman made of iron who comes to life to help save the Earth. She is angry about the damage to the environment. Lucy, a young girl, and her friend join the Iron Woman to clean up the Earth. The Iron Woman teaches us that it's important to take care of the environment. We can all do our part to help by reducing waste, planting trees, and using public transport instead of driving a car. We can also support local farmers and businesses that use sustainable practices.

By taking these actions, we can help to protect the Earth and all the living things that call it home. Just like Lucy and her friend helped the Iron Woman, we can all do our part to make a positive effect on the environment. Together, we can make a difference and create a better world for ourselves and future generations.

A)	Answer	the	fol	lowing	questions:
----	--------	-----	-----	--------	------------

- What is the main idea of the text?
- 2. What are the three ways we can follow to reduce pollution?
- 3. Why should we work together?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4. The Iron Woman teaches us to the Earth.
 - a) look up b) give up c) take after d) look after
- 5. We should use transport.
 - a) private b) public c) special d) common

Unit 9 Lessons

	_		
- 1	т	2	
- 0	18	7.4	-

			-12-
Read and comp	lete the text with wor	ds from the followi	ng list:
	create - panels - fo	ssil – build – farm	
countryside. The pollute the envious the countryside produce money	decided to (1)ey want to (2)ronment. It uses beautine. Farmers can still key for the community. W	clean, renewable iful solar (3)ep their sheep in t e should stop burnir	energy that doesn't They don't destroy the fields. Also, they
Choose the corr	ect answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. The, homes across t	called Cleve Hill, plans the UK.	to produce enough	energy for 91,000
a) farm	b) initiative	c) farmland	d) station
2. There are proje	ects to plant	and trees to give us	cleaner air.
a) projects	b) powers	c) bulbs	d) seedlings
3. If I yo	ou, I wouldn't accept hi	s invitation.	
a) were	b) am	c) did	d) had
My grandfathe	r to walk five	km every day.	
a) used	b) used to	c) use	d) use to
1. When we lived	in a big city, we used to	(went) to	the mall all the time.
	uy a new dress if she (use /play) football o		
_			vas at scriooi.
Write a paragrap	oh of about SIX (6) ser	itences on:	
	"Your favourite	writer"	





Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

the		
5		
els		
pan		•
ild solar panels i		
2		
2		
plan to l		
e		
k of t		
think		
you	ide?	
유	rys	
What	count	
**		
Alaa		

We need to stop burning fossil fuels Rana: (1).

Alaa : I don't agree that we should build solar farms in the countryside

Alaa: Because we need these lands for farming. Rana: (2).

It doesn't need large space: Rana: (3).

Read and complete the text with words from the following list

destroy - countryside - create - provide - environment

. They say solar panels are ugly. This is because the the countryside. Farmers need this land. They aren' They think that the solar farm is to Some people aren't happy about building solar farms on th problems for wildlife. big and will (4).... good for the (3).

Read the following, then answer the questions:

by 2050 and Cleve Hill will help with this. The solar farm will hav even when the sun is not shining. Some people in the village an not happy about the plan. They think that the solar farm is too bit and will create problems for wildlife. Also, they are worried that th The UK plans to use renewable energy instead of fossil fuel 880,000 solar panels on countryside that was farmland, around tw kilometres from the village of Graveney. In the past, solar farms wer not very good in the UK because it is not very sunny. However, nev large batteries in the solar farm can save and produce electricit arge batteries are dangerous and could cause fires.

A) Answer the following questions:

What is the best title for this passage?

Why were solar farms not very good in the UK?	What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?
ci	m

by 2050. a) common c) non-renewable c) non-renewable s). The batteries in the solar farm are	oast.	by 2050. a) common c) non-renewable s. The batteries in the a) small b) huge Choose the correct answ 1. This factory p a) saves b) introd 2. If I rich, my lif a) am b) do 3. I to swim a lot	b) rechargeable d) renewable solar farm are	d) thin d) thin d) have d) have
non de la constante de la cons	oast coast lbe a son re su	a) common c) non-renewable s. The batteries in the a) small b) huge d Choose the correct answ 1. This factory p a) saves b) introd 2. If I rich, my lif a) am b) do 3. I to swim a lot	b) rechargeable d) renewable solar farm are c) tiny er from a, b, c or d: arts for cars. uces c) reduces e would change comp c) was	d) thin d) produces d) have
oast, vas a vas a orm	oast vas a vas a orm	c) non-renewable s. The batteries in the a) small b) huge Choose the correct answ 1. This factory	d) renewable solar farm are c) tiny er from a, b, c or d: arts for cars. uces c) reduces e would change comp c) was	d) thin d) produces letely.
oast.	oast vas a vas a lbe s	4 Choose the correct answ 1. This factory p a) saves b) introd 2. If I rich, my lif a) am b) do 3. I to swim a lot	c) tiny er from a, b, c or d: arts for cars. uces c) reduces e would change comp c) was	d) thin d) produces letely.
oast vas a libe s	oast vas a libe a libe a on liw	4 Choose the correct answ 1. This factory p a) saves b) introd 2. If I rich, my lif a) am b) do 3. I to swim a lot	c) tiny er from a, b, c or d: arts for cars. uces c) reduces e would change comp c) was	d) thin d) produce letely. d) have
re su	oast oast lbe a son re su	1. This factory p a) saves b) introd 2. if 1 rich, my lif a) am b) do 3. I to swim a lol	er from a, b, c or d: arts for cars. uces c) reduces e would change comp c) was	d) produce: letely.
oast oast lbe a lbe a on re su	oast.	1. This factory p a) saves b) introd 2. If I rich, my lif a) am b) do 3. I to swim a lot	arts for cars. uces c) reduces e would change comp	d) produce: letely.
a) saves b) introduces c) reduces 2. If I	a) saves b) introduces c) reduces 2. If I	res to	uces c) reduces e would change comp c) was	d) produce letely.
2. If I rich, my life would change completely. a) am b) do c) was d) have 3. I to swim a lot when I was younger. a) use b) used c) uses 4 trees grow in seawater along the coast. a) Bamboo b) Grapes c) Palm d) Mangrov in brackets: 1. I (used / have) a dog when I was a child. 2. If we (eat) lots of chips when I was younger. 3. I used (eat) lots of chips when I was younger. 6 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on: "What they would or would not do to live a more sustainable II	2. If I bloom bloo	to	e would change comp	letely.
a) am b) do c) was d) have 3. I to swim a lot when I was younger. 4 trees grow in seawater along the coast. a) Bamboo b) Grapes c, Palm d) Mangrov in brackets: 1. I (used / have) a dog when I was a child. 2. If we (not/be) friends, I would be angry with 3. I used (eat) lots of chips when I was younger. 6 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on: "What they would or would not do to live a more sustainable II	a) am b) do c) was 3. I to swim a lot when I was younger. a) use b) used c) uses 4 trees grow in seawater along the coast. a) Bamboo b) Grapes c) Palm d) Mangrov in brackets: 1. I (used / have) a dog when I was a child. 2. If we (not/be) friends, I would be angry with y 3. I used (eat) lots of chips when I was younger. 6 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on: "What they would or would not do to live a more sustainable II		c) was	d) have
3.1	3.1to swim a lot when I was younger. a) use			
a) use b) used c) uses d) using 4	a) use b) used c) uses d) using 4 trees grow in seawater along the coast. a) Bamboo b) Grapes c) Palm d) Mangrov in brackets: 1. (used / have) a dog when I was a child. 2. If we (not/be) friends, I would be angry with; 3. I used (eat) lots of chips when I was younger. 6 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on: "What they would or would not do to live a more sustainable II		when I was younger.	
4	4		c) uses	d) using
S Complete the sentences with the correct form of the worn in brackets: 1. I	S Complete the sentences with the correct form of the wornin brackets: 1. I	4. trees grow in	seawater along the co.	ast,
in brackets: 1. I	in brackets: 1. I			d) Mangrove
in brackets: 1. I	in brackets: 1. I	S Complete the sentences	with the correct for	m of the wor
1. I	1. I	in brackets:		
2. If we(not/be) friends, I would be angry with 3 3. I used(eat) lots of chips when I was younger. 6 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on: "What they would or would not do to live a more sustainable II	2. If we(not/be) friends, I would be angry with 3 3. I used(eat) lots of chips when I was younger. 6 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on: "What they would or would not do to live a more sustainable li	1.1 (used /)	nave) a dog when I wa	s a child.
3. I used(eat) lots of chips when I was younger. 6 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on: "What they would or would not do to live a more sustainable li	3. I used(eat) lots of chips when I was younger. 6 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on: "What they would or would not do to live a more sustainable li		t/be) friends, I would b	e angry with y
Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on: "What they would or would not do to live a more sustainable li	Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on: "What they would or would not do to live a more sustainable li		at) lots of chips when I	was younger.
"What they would or would not do to live a more sustainable li	"What they would or would not do to live a more sustainable li	Write a paragraph of ab	out SIX (6) sentences	ou:
		"What they would or would	I not do to live a more	sustainable II

Unit 10 Lessons (1 & 2)



Supply the missing parts in the	following dialogue	e a sa a best black
Nada: What have you been drea	aming of since you v	vere young?
Maha : (1)		
Nada : Astronomer! (2)		?
Maha: No, I have never used a te		
Nada : (3)		?
Maha: I've learned English for ni	and the second of the second o	
Choose the correct answer from	a, b, c or d:	
I. I first in our exams and	d tests.	
a) became b) got	c) came	d) made
2. I want to enter the poetry comp		
a) best b) worst	c) least	d) laziest
3. Sarah in the living roo	41 B. M.	
a) studies	b) studying	and the first time
c) had been studying	d) has been study	-
i. By the time Iup, my m a) woke b) had woken		
		d) wakes
Complete the sentences with the		
Have you(be) \		
. The man(jump		
The river was very dry because i		
Write an email of SIX (6) sente		
famous astronaut you admir		
s sara@yahoo.com and your frie	end's email address	is hend@gmail.com.

TEST VOUDSFIE

Unit 10 Lessons

	_		
- 1	æ	3	
	97		١.
	ч.		

1	
1	Read and complete the text with words from the following list:
	systems – abbreviation – sensors – orbits – satellites
	GPS is an (1)
2	Read the following, then answer the questions:
	The satellite is one of the most important inventions. We have used satellite technology for many of the things we do every day. Our lives would be very different without it. Most people use GPS, which uses a system of satellites that work together. These send signals to receivers on Earth, which work out where you are. We have GPS in cars and on phones.
	Satellites allow us to study the weather all around the world. They send photos of the Earth from space. When these are put together, they show how clouds and storms are moving. Satellite phones can work anywhere in the world They are very useful in places far from cities, such as on mountains or in deserts
11.	A) Answer the following questions: 1. Put a suitable title for this text.
	2. Where are satellite phones useful?
	3. What do satellites show in weather reports?
	B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4. We can see GPS
	a) in cars b) on phones c) on TV d) a & b
	5. Satellite phones are better in places from cities.

a) remote

b) near

c) close

d) easy

Unit 10 Lessons (5 & 6)

	_	_		
	-			
- 1	_		١.	
_				
_	_	_		_

Read and complet	te the text with words	from the followin	g list:
f	ar – excited – spacecra	aft – took – made	
you look into the had seen this side	sky at night. It's the (2) before 1959. The Russ appeared in newspape see them.) side o ian (3)	of the moon. No one Luna 3 took the first
Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c o	or d:	
1. After the film, we	e went to a/an	about Ancient Eg	ypt.
a) morning	b) robot	c) century	d) exhibition
2. A/Ani	s one of the very small	planets that move a	around the sun.
a) star	b) asteroid	c) planet	d) earth
3. Have you	tasted pizza?		
a) yet		c) ever	d) never
	d with my toys, I		
a) clean	b) have cleaned	c) had cleaned	d) cleaned
Complete the sent	ences with the correc	t form of the word	(s) in brackets:
1. We've	(eat) too much	chocolate.	
	een(
Omar and Akram	1(lear	n) English this year.	10
Write a paragraph	of about SIX (6) sente	ences on:	
	"A trip to the planet	arium"	

Test on Unit > 10



Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Zeinab	: Are you still working as a lecturer?
Heidi	
Zeinab	; (2):
Heidi	: Yes, I got married two years ago. What about you?

Zeinab : I also got married four years ago. My train has come.

I must be off now. Good bye. Heidi

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

had only studied space with their own eyes. Then, in 1608, was invented. The Italian astronomer Galileo telescope - improved - astronomers - lenses - orbit Before the beginning of the 17th century, (1). that he could study the planets in our solar system. the design. He made the (4)...

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mars before the end of the 20th century. It landed on Mars in Last weekend, I went on a school trip to the planetarium in Alexandria. We went there by bus. I was really excited about what saw there. We saw a really interesting film about Ancient Egypt. We learned about how the Ancient Egyptians had studied the stars to find out when the Nile flooded. They had even used the stars to help them build the Pyramids. They were great engineers. feel really proud to be Egyptian. After the film, we went to an exhibition about Mars. We knew that a space robot had explored 1997. We had an amazing time.

A) Answer the following questions:

1	- 1
i	- 1
E	1
1	
1	- 1
	: 1
	: :
	- 1
_	: 8
•	1
0	2.
5	177
=	-
۳.	-
=	+-
a.	Q1
8	7
_	T
Ų.	10
	er.
-	10
S	5
-	-
_	-
g	- W
	_
>	>
>	>
٠	
-	- 0

e trip:	frin7
vnen was tr	low was the
Z. V	

	ncient Egyptians		d) moon
a, b, c or d:	t how the A		c) stars
ct answer from	ey learned abou		b) pyramids c) stars
B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:	4. From the trip, they learned about how the Ancient Egyptians	had studied the	a) earth

d) Giza c) Aswan 5. They went to the planetarium in. b) Cairo a) Alexandria

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

b) been learned at school this week? d) learning c) been learning 1. What have you a) learn

the sun. 2. The Earth orbits the sun. This means it ...

b) removes d) sleeps a) moves around

b) have left 3. As soon as they had arrived, we a) are leaving d) left c) have been leaving

d) harbour . is a special hard hat used to protect the head. c) satellite a) headphone b) helmet

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

... (work) here for five years now. 1. She

.. (revise) (already/finish) his studies. 3. Huda did very well in the test because she Before I met him, he carefully.

Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

Unit 11 Lessons



Supply the mis	sing parts in the foll	owing dialogue:	
Hala : Would	you like to work in the	media?	

Hala : (2)		?	
Sama : Because	e I'd like to be on TV.		
	ob would you like to d		
2 Choose the cor	rect answer from a, l	o, c or d:	
1. There was an	accident. I read about	tit in	
a) timetables	b) newspapers	c) books	d) poems
2. If you their permiss		meone, you take it a	way from them without
a) fixes	b) trusts	c) owns	d) steal
3. We	dinner at a new restar	urant two days ago.	
a) had	b) have	c) are having	d) were having
4. When did the	yTamer?		
a) meet	b) met	c) meeting	d) meets
3 Complete the s	entences with the co	orrect form of the v	vord(s) in brackets:
1. My sister	(prepa	re) the lunch yester	day.
2. Mira didn't	(wer	nt) to the meeting la	st week.
3. Who was the	room	(clean) by?	
Write a paragra	ph of about SIX (6) s	entences on:	
	"A job in the		

***************************************	·····		
***************************************	***************************************		

Unit 11 Lessons

	٠.	-78	
.,			, ,

1	Read and	complete t	the text	with word	s from	the fol	lowing	list:
	IIICUG GIIG	compiete.	rate sente		is it will i	HIL IOI	10111113	

for - donate - governor - said - warm

The (1)...... wants to build a new water park. He (2)...... it would be in the North Coast and added that it would take three years to be built. He asked the best architects and engineers to plan a modern water park. It will create 200 jobs. Children under five can go to the park (3)...... free. If you want to (4)....., contact his office.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Safia Zaki Elmohandes was born on 12th December, 1922 in Cairo. Her father was a famous linguist. He encouraged Safia to read Arabic books and novels. Safia studied English literature at the university and graduated from the Faculty of Arts in 1945. She joined the Egyptian Radio in 1947, and became one of the first women's voices in the Egyptian radio. She was called "Mother of the Broadcasters," not because of her age, or because she was the first, but because she was the mother of all the broadcasters in her love and help. She refused to appear on television in 1960.

She was famous for saying Hona Al-Qahira (Here is Cairo). Safia presented programmes for women and for children. Her most famous programme was called Rabat el-Boyout (Housewives). Safia left our world on June 13, 2007 at the age of 84.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1. What was Safia's father?
- 2. Mention Safia's most famous programme.

.....

3. Why do you think they called Safia "Mother of the Broadcasters"?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4. Safia was when she joined the Egyptian Radio.
 - a) 23
- b) 24

c) 25

d) 26

- 5. Safia presented programmes for
 - a) women
- b) children
- c) men

d) a & b

Unit 11 Lessons (5 & 6)

owi	ner – witness – clos	ed – centre – mid	dle
Yesterday morni	ng, a house was on a f	fire in the main stree	et in the city (1)
so the road was (2	2)	. A local (3)	said that he
saw smoke comin	g from his neighbo	ur's house. He we	ent out to ask for help
The (4)	of the house was	safe.	
Choose the correct	answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. I always	. interviews with pe	ople in the street.	
a) stay	b) keep	c) spend	d) do
2. My brother is inte	rested in collecting	news. He wants to	be a/an
a) journalist	b) engineer	c) editor	d) designer
3. I told them that I	tired.		
a) had	b) have	c) was	d) am
4. He explained that	t he mean	that.	
a) didn't	b) doesn't	c) hadn't	d) hasn't
Complete the sent	ences with the corr	ect form of the w	ord(s) in brackets:
I. Anas	(told) that he	enjoyed working in	his garden.
2. A new school	(build	near our house la	ast year.
B. He said that he	(can) see me at 2.30.	
Write a paragraph	of about SIX (6) ser	ntences on:	
	"Your favourite		
	Tour ravourne		





-
and the
=
-
-
-
•
- FEE
-
-
-
-
_
_
0
-
-
0
-
-
-
_
-
LUTE .
(5)
0
-
-
_
100
-
VI.
_
_
453
w
_
-
-
0
-
10
01
ALC: UNKNOWN
100

-1-
(T)
ë
ngo.
ogu
-
•
0
_
_
60
-
-
-
0
-
=
0
-
-
-
-
2
-
_
-
•
€
_
_
-
_
_
-
=
· un
- 22
-
eru .
•
_
sing pa
-
- 40
-
WT.
nissi
400
w
_
ly the
-
>
-
-
-
-
=
3
, in
Sup
Sup
Sup
Sup

Mohaned: What job would you like to do in the future? Mohaned: The media! (2) Mazen

''d like to work in the media because I like to be famous. Mohaned: Which job would you like to do in the media? Mazen

Mazen

Read and complete the text with words from the following list: different - governor - meeting - operator - photographer

"I've always liked taking photographs. However, I never wanted ... I have always wanted to be a camera will be working inside. I am filming a meeting with some important It is a great job and it is always different. Tomorrow, I of Cairo before. I am looking forward to (4)...... him". people. I have never met the (3).

Read the following, then answer the questions:

A media job interview is the chance to show your skills and abilities. But it also needs a lot of preparation. These are important tips to look at. Learn about the boss before your media job interview. This gives you a quick way to break the ice and calm your nerves. Use the internet to find out information about him/her. Know the background of the company. By learning the background of the media company, you show that you've done some research and want to know more about the position than just what it pays. Study recent events. If the job is in another city, check out the local news website to get a feel for the problems of the area. Trust yourself. Be prepared to talk about your recent job. There's nothing wrong with saying you want new challenges.

A) Answer the following questions:

Give a suitable title for the passage.

b) Refusing	a) Hating
	the area.
recent events gives you a feel for the problems of	S recent ev
d) Facebook	c) internet
b) radio	a) television
to find information about your boss.	4. You can use the
B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:	B) Choose the correct
3. Which advice do you think is the most important one to follow? Why?	3. Which advice do you think follow? Why?
What does learning the background of the media company	What does learnin

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

d) Studying

c) Neglecting

sht b) buys c) is buying rould you like	. A new dress	for the p	for the party by my sister.	
be c) to being nose and steading from a woman.	a) bought	b) buys	c) is buying	d) was boug
b) to be c) to being saw two men stealing from a woman. less b) thief c) reader an English language news website	. What would y	ou like	when you grow t	¿dr
saw two men stealing from a woman. less b) thief c) reader	a) pe	b) to be	c) to being	d) been
ness b) thief c) reader	. Asaw	v two men steal	ing from a woma	'n.
an English language news websit	a) witness	b) thief	c) reader	d) camerama
	. I work	an English lan	guage news web	site.
b) to c) on	a) into	b) to	c) on	d) for

=

Ħ

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

 She told me that Hala was arriving (today). They told me they (lived) in China for five years. She	today).	or five year	
 She told me that Hala was arriving They told me they(lives 3. She(qo) on a picnic last)	d) in China fo	weekend.
1. She told me that Hala wa: 2. They told me they 3. She (go) on a	s arriving	(live	picnic last
 She told me tha They told me th She 	t Hala wa:	ey	. (go) on a
1. She t 2. They 3. She	old me tha	told me th	
	1. She t	2. They	3. She

Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"Your dream job"

4 30	
	- 1
	- 1
	- 1
	- 1
- 1	- 5
3 (8)	
3 8	- 1
3 1	- 1
	- 1
	- 1
	- 1
	1
	- 1
	- 1
9 4	- 1
	- 1
	- 1
. 1	- 1
	- 1
	- 1
	- 1
	- 1
	- 1
	1
	1
	- 8
	- 1
	- 1
8 8	- 1
	- 1
1	
- 1	- 1
	- 5
	- 1
	- 1
	- 1
- YE	- 1
	- 5
	- 1
O. O.	- 5
	- 1
	- 1
2.8	- 6
S 5 6	- 6
	- 83
	- 1
	- 5
	- 1
	- 9
	- 1
- 1	- 1
	1
1 1 1	-
2 P	- 8
8 8	- 3
2.0	
	- 1

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 12 Lessons



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c Don't throw	nore scientists? s for many process or d: we can recycle c) into problem. c) found c) will meet Hurghada. c) have ect form of the e) 3D models	roblems like climate characters them. d) in d) gave d) met d) will have the word(s) in brackets
Amira: (3)	s for many process for many process for many process for d: we can recycle (c) into problem. (c) found (c) will meet Hurghada. (c) have ect form of the (ope models)	roblems like climate characters them. d) in d) gave d) met d) will have the word(s) in brackets
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c Don't throw	s for many process for d: we can recycle c) into problem. c) found c) will meet Hurghada. c) have ect form of the 3D models.	d) in d) gave d) met d) will have the word(s) in brackets
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c Don't throw plastic bottles, a) to b) away Finally, we a solution to our a) did b) made I hope we him tonight. a) meets b) meeting I'm sure you a good time in a) having b) had Complete the sentences with the corr We'll be able (make) You're carrying too much. I (we work think we (we work think we (we work the correct to outure technology. Your name is Monarch.	we can recycle () into problem. c) found c) will meet Hurghada. c) have ect form of the 3D models.	d) in d) gave d) met d) will have the word(s) in brackets
Don't throw plastic bottles, a) to b) away Finally, we a solution to our a) did b) made I hope we him tonight. a) meets b) meeting I'm sure you a good time in a) having b) had Complete the sentences with the corr We'll be able (make) You're carrying too much. I (we work think we (we work think we (we work the corr I don't thin	we can recycle c) into problem. c) found c) will meet Hurghada. c) have ect form of the e) 3D models. (ope	d) in d) gave d) met d) will have the word(s) in brackets
a) to b) away I. Finally, we	c) into problem. c) found c) will meet Hurghada. c) have ect form of the 3D models.	d) in d) gave d) met d) will have the word(s) in brackets
a solution to our a) did b) made l hope we	c) found c) will meet Hurghada. c) have ect form of the a) 3D models. (ope	d) gave d) met d) will have the word(s) in brackets
a) did b) made l hope we	c) found c) will meet Hurghada. c) have ect form of the) 3D models.	d) met d) will have the word(s) in brackets
a) meets b) meeting I'm sure you	c) will meet Hurghada. c) have ect form of the e) 3D models.	d) met d) will have the word(s) in brackets
a) meets b) meeting I'm sure you	Hurghada. c) have ect form of the 3D models.	d) will have the word(s) in brackets s.
a) having b) had complete the sentences with the correction. We'll be able	Hurghada. c) have ect form of the 3D models.	d) will have the word(s) in brackets s.
a) having b) had complete the sentences with the corr . We'll be able	c) have ect form of the e) 3D models(ope	the word(s) in brackets
omplete the sentences with the correction. We'll be able	ect form of the 3D models.	the word(s) in brackets
. We'll be able	e) 3D models. (ope	S. salan no slove
. We'll be able	e) 3D models. (ope	S. salan no slood
Vrite an email of SIX (6) sentences to uture technology. Your name is Mona	(ope	
Vrite an email of SIX (6) sentences to uture technology. Your name is Mona		
Vrite an email of SIX (6) sentences to uture technology. Your name is Mona	ALL DESCRIPTION D	
uture technology. Your name is Mona		
iona@yanoo.com and your mend's e	man audres:	ss is nana@gman.com.

	***************************************	***************************************

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 12 Lessons

_									
1	Denil	and the latest and th	ah a	tove	seriely.	tremude for	46	fallowing	lict
10.0	Read and	complete	tne	text	WILL	words tro	m tne	TOHOWING	HIST.

roof - renewab	le - solar	- turbines	- rainwater
LOOP - LELIE MADE	ne - soidi	- fai billes	- I CHILLAN OF PART

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Each one of us has a kind of a dream job that we would like to do one day. The idea might have come from either someone in your family, a role model or someone who you really admire, or even for some other situations. No matter what the reason, having a dream job would help you have a goal in life and try to achieve it.

I have a dream job and I would love to become a great website designer when I grow up. The world of internet is an ever changing one and anyone entering it has to be ready for strong competitions and challenges. I have read several books on how great designers found their way to success through their hard times. You need to know the latest technology and how to design a website according to your customer's choice. However, there is so much fun into this. With lots of hard work, we create a design.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1. What should you do to create a design?
- 2. How can having a dream job help us?
- 3. What's your dream job?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4. Your dream job may come from
 - a) a role model b) someone you admire
 - c) family member d) all of these
- 5. In the field of the internet, you will find
 - a) books b) competitions c) challenges d) b & c

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 12 Lessons (5 & 6)

driverless – a	apartments - exp	eriments - definitely	/ – instead
with lots of smart restaurants. Nobod	new (2) y will leave school.	ent. Our cities will have . There will be new so .They will learn differe cars, but there will	hopping centres and ent skills (3)
Choose the correct	answer from a, b	, c or d:	
1. They need a solut	ion their	problem.	
a) in	b) on	c) at	d) to
2. A bike is the best	of transp	oort. It doesn't pollute	the environment.
a) passenger	b) means	c) sign	d) law
3. I think you	like this movie.	10 ES - 17 De-1	
a) are going to	b) will	c) going to	d) are going
4. Baher re	place the window	himself, he is too you	
a) won't be able to)	b) not able to	
c) able to		d) won't able	
Complete the sente	nces with the cor	rect form of the wor	d(s) in brackets:
) a better life in the fu	
		s) when you leave un	
3. We are going	(have) di	nner at a seaside rest	aurant on Sunday.
Write a paragraph o	of about SIX (6) se	entences on:	
	ur dream means		
		or cransport	

Test on Unit Ag



2
_
-
_
-
0
L/N
vs.
S
5
T-s
rts
arts
arts
arts
parts
parts
parts
g parts
g parts
ig parts
ng parts
ng parts
.=
.=
.=
.=
.=
.=
.=
.=
.=
missing parts
.=
.=
.=
.=
ie missir
.=
ie missir

Read and complete the text with words from the following list: do - devices - devises - expert - space

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Welcome to the cities of the futurel imagine a place where everything is better for us and our planet. In these cities, smart architects are working hard to make life awesome for everyone.

Water is essential, so our cities will collect rainwater when it rains. This way, we can use it to water plants and keep things clean. And guess what? There will be huge parks with lots of trees and plants. They'll give us fresh air.

We'll have cool houses for many people, but that's not all. We'll have gardens on rooftops where we can grow our very own food! And guess what powers our cities? Renewable energy! We'll use sunlight from special panels and wind power from tall turbines

on buildings.

Cars will drive themselves in the future. How cool is that? It means more space for us to walk and ride bikes. Everyone will be healthier, and people with disabilities will find life much easier.

So, when you think about the future, imagine clean, green, and happy cities where everyone can live their best lives!

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1. What is the main idea of the text?
- How will water be saved and used in the future cities?
 What will power the cities of the future?
 - B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 4. In the future cities, the rooftops of houses will be used for ________

 a) installing b) storing c) gardening d) sunbathing s. In the future cities, we will use ______ cars.

 a) driverless b) gas c) flying d) electric

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. I think that more peopleride bikes in the future.

 a) going to b) have c) would d) will
 - 2. One solution is to build _______farms on the sea.

 a) drying b) flooding c) sinking d) flo
- 3. The farms will make their own electricity.

 a) going to b) going c) able to d) be able to
 - 4. I want to _____ my skills.
 a) damage b) save c) improve d) protect

S Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- - 3. There (be) trips to the moon in 2050.
- Write an email of SIX (6) sentences to your friend Sally to tell her how life will be in the future. Your name is Mona. Your email address is mona@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is sally@gmail.com.



Final Exams Al-Azhar - Dukahlia Governorate



معدله حسب أحدث	í
المواصفات الامتحانية.	

س ا	معدله حا	
الامت	المواصفات	

-						
ec.	Comments.	and the second second	Contract of the second			dialogue:
	Supply	the miss	ing parts	in the t	Ollowing	dialogue.
	a and b.)		mid benter		CHOWING	ulaloque.

Ola	: Have you ever read about Safia el Mohandes?
	:(1)
Ola	: (2)
Aya	: She was the first female radio presenter.
Ola	: (3)
	· She was called "the mother of all broadcasters"

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

fossil - greenhouse - forms - happened - green glass

Climate change has (1)..... because of us. Human activities are producing huge amounts of (2)...... gases into our air. These are made when we burn (3)...... fuels - such as coal, oil and gas to make electricity, run cars and other (4)..... of transport, and power for industry.

Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Seagrass is found in the sea along the coasts of many countries. It is food for many sea animals, including turtles. Baby fish and sea animals live in seagrass because it is a safe place. Seagrass helps the sea to stay healthy and it can help stop climate change. This is because seagrass absorbs 10% of the ocean's carbon dioxide every year. Seagrass absorbs carbon dioxide 35 times faster than rainforests. That's why seagrass can help stop climate change. About 905 of all seagrass has disappeared from the UK's coast in the last 100 years. However, there is an environmental project in the UK that is growing new seagrass.

A) Answer the following questions:

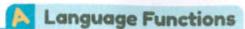
1.	Where is seagrass found?	
2	Why do haby fish live in seagrass?	

3. How much carbon dioxide does seagrass absorb?

B) Choose the corre	ct answer from	a, b, c or d:	
4. Seagrass is	the sea.		
a) dangerous to	b) good for	c) bad for	d) harmful to
5. Rainforests abs	orb carbon dioxi	de seag	rass.
a) faster than	b) as fast as	c) fastest	d) slower than
		Usage	
		osuge	
Choose the correct	answer from a, l	o, c or d:	
1. When I was ill last	week, I	to the hospital.	
a) took	b) taken	c) was taker	d) was taking
2. If I had more time,	! read :	more books.	
a) would	b) will	c) had	d) was
3. I went to the	where the	ere are lots of picto	ures and drawings.
a) exhibition	b) railway	c) journey	d) transport
4. The help	s us to see very	distant objects we	II.
a) thermometer		b) telescop	e
c) mirror		d) microsco	ppe
Complete the sente	ences with the co	orrect form of the	word(s) in brackets:
1. How long have yo			
2. Ali said			
3.1			a child.
	0	Writing	
Write a paragraph	of about SIX (6)	sentences on:	
		oals and ambitio	ens"

***************************************	***************************************		

Al-Azhar - Assiut Governorate



	Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:
	Eyad and Adam are talking about spending their spare time.
	Adam: What do you do in your spare time, Eyad?
	Eyad :(1)
	Adam : Reading stories! That's wonderful. (2)?
١	Eyad : I prefer short stories.
ı	Adam : (3)?
١	Eyad : Sometimes at home and sometimes at school library.
١	Adam: I will bring you some interesting ones.
Ę	Read and complete the text with words from the following list:
١	pollution – governor – are going – population – apartments
١	We have just heard that the government is going to do a lot of projects in the
١	capital! They (1) to build many blocks with many (2)
١	The (3) said that the city needs more houses for its (4)
ı	I think there won't be housing problems in Egypt in the future.
	Reading Comprehension
	Read the following, then answer the questions:
١	
ı	One day, my elder brother Hazem and his friends were very angry. They said that the streets around their school were not clean enough. There was rubbish everywhere, they decided, with the help of the pupils of their school, to clean
ı	these streets and put rubbish baskets everywhere. Most teachers and parents
ı	encouraged them very much. Now, you can see beautiful flowers and trees
ı	on both sides of the streets. Everyone is happy and proud. Visitors said "What
ı	a lovely place! What a lovely school!".
١	A) Answer the following questions:
ı	1. Who cleaned the streets around the school?
ı	2. What did Hazem and his friends do to make the place lovely?
	3. Are the writer's elder brother and his friends helpful?

		THE RESERVE	
B) Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b	, c or d:	
	und the school were	h) along	
a) hot		b) clean	
c) dirty		d) lovely	
	encouraged the pu	b) teachers on	lv
a) parents only	L company	d) parents and	
c) visitors only	U.S. Miller	u) pareries area	The second second
	C	sage	
Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c	or d:	
	nousein ard		
a) build	b) is built	c) was built	d) built
	The state of the s	THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY OF TH	
	ver storms if climate	c) will have	d) would had
a) are having	b) would have		
We decided to sta	rt a recycling project	to plastic	c bottles in our
community.			
a) retry	b) redo	c) reuse	d) rewrite
	erson who rules an ar	ea or a city.	
a) witness	b) worker	c) governor	d) tourist
Complete the sent	ences with the corre	ct form of the wo	rd(s) in brackets:
	(be/ play) by m		
1. Squasn	(eit)	on that wall it's dar	ngerous.
2. You should avoid	(sit)	on triac want it's still so	ining
3. It has	(be/ rain) for thre	e nours: it's still ra	iiiiig.
	Wr Wr	iting	
Write a paragraph	of about SIX (6) sen	tences on:	
Write a paragraps			
	"Recycl	ing	

30

Al-Azhar - Beni Suef Governorate

•	•
	_

Language Functions

attingen.						
100	Carrente	the missing	the second of Taxable			
	Supply	rtne missina	parts in	the toll	OWIDA	dialogue:
ACCUPATION.	- abbit		ber co		Pilling	ulaloque.

Youssef and Ali are talking about reading.

Youssef: Hello, Ali. What are you doing?

: Hello, Youssef. (1)..... Ali

Youssef: I know you enjoy reading English stories. (2).....?

: I bought it yesterday.

: Yes, of course. You can borrow it.

Youssef: Thanks a lot. Ali : You're welcome.

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

cutting - protect - destroyed - produced - planet

We need to (1)..... our rainforests because they are important habitats gas methane is produced by the cows that are brought to the area after the rainforest has been (3)...... So, it is time to stop (4)....... down our forests to create farms.

Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many people are interested in learning English. It is known that it is a very important language as it is spoken all over the world. It isn't difficult to learn English. You will use it even when you join the university, but unless you use English, you will forget it. The English language gives us the chance to read English books and many wonderful stories. Speaking English fluently will help you when you travel to foreign countries to be able to communicate with people there. It is also difficult to use the internet without knowing much about English. It's better for all of us to learn and improve it well.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1. What is the main idea of the passage?
- 2. What will happen if you don't use English?
- 3. Why do we use English when we travel to foreign countries?

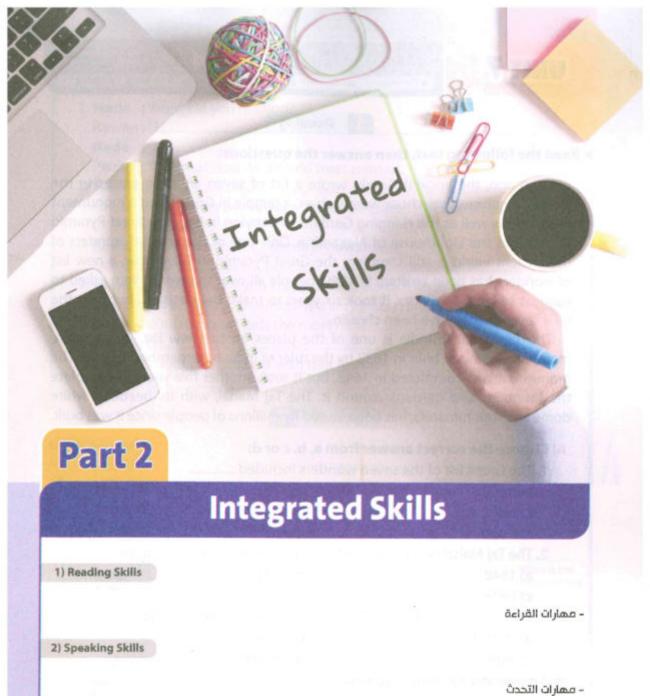
	- et anemar fre	am a la	a au de	
3) Choose the corre	ect answer in	om a, b,	c or a:	
4. It is t		1.	c) useless	d) bad
a) difficult	b) easy	re to		u) buu
5. The underlined		rs to	b) a story	
a) the internet			d) English	
c) the universit	y		u) Eligisii	
	C	Uso	ige	
hoose the correct	answer from	a, b, c o	r d:	
. That road	means turn	right.		
a) transport	b) sign		c) service	d) truck
. Does your brother	r enjoy	the g	juitar?	
a) play	b) plays		c) played	d) playing
Our syst	em includes th	he sun a	ind eight plane	ets.
a) solar	b) rainy		c) cloudy	d) model
. If I had more time	, I m	ore.		
a) read	b) would		c) reading	d) will read
She avoids Who was this boo After I had	k (w	riting) l		
7 11 201 7 11 12 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11	0		ting	
Write an email of S dream job. Your na your friend's email	me is Gamal.	Your em	ail address is	k to tell him about you gamal@yahoo.com ar

Al-Azhar - Alexandria Governorate

	A Language Functions
E	Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:
7	Dalia : Have you got a smart phone?
	Dina : (1)
	Dalia : (2)?
	Dina: I bought it last week.
	Dalia : How much did it cost?
	Dina : (3)
E	Read and complete the text with words from the following list:
	live – renewable – fuels – recycle – cut
	We should do our best to keep the environment clean. We mustn't (1)
١	Reading Comprehension
3	Read the following, then answer the questions:
	Scientists are very important to our future. They can help farmers to produce good quality food for the world's growing population. They can also develop new crops which don't suffer from diseases. Scientists and engineers can work with car companies to produce cars and other vehicles which use fuel more efficiently. At the same time, researchers and scientists are looking for new types of energy to replace oil and petrol. Other scientists are doing research into new treatment for illnesses. Perhaps the most important work scientists are doing is to find ways of reducing global warming.
	Answer the following questions: 1. How can scientists help farmers?
	2. Why do scientists and engineers work with car companies?
	3. Why are scientists important for the field of medicine?

B) Choose the corr	ect answer from a	a, b, c or d:	
4. The underline	d pronoun "they" re	efers to	
a) companies	b) problems	c) scientists	d) farmers
5. Scientists wor	k hard to find ways	of reducing global	
a) problem	b) warming	c) energy	d) power
	C	Jsage	
Choose the correct	t answer from a, b	, c or d:	
1. Siwa is a very fam	nousin Eg	gypt.	
a) country	b) club	c) field	d) oasis
2 you stu	dy English?		
a) Are	b) Do	c) Does	d) Were
3. The sun gives us	energy.		
a) solar	b) lunar	c) wind	d) water
4. Have you	used a telescop	e?	
a) never	b) just	c) ever	d) recently
Complete the sen	tences with the co	rrect form of the w	vord(s) in brackets:
1. As soon as I	(finish)	my homework, I rea	d my favourite book.
2. Ali	(not/able) do his	homework when hi	is desk is in such a mess.
3. Sally is going	(make	a beautiful dinner	tonight.
	D	Writing	
Write a paragraph	n of about SIX (6)	sentences on:	
		lution"	

	•••••		



- عهارات الكتابة

3) Writing Skills



Our world

▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

monument

قرار



Reading

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Long ago, the ancient Greeks wrote a list of seven amazing places in the world. The places they chose were statues, a temple in Greece and a monument in Turkey, as well as the Hanging Gardens of Babylon in Iraq, the Great Pyramid at Giza and the Lighthouse of Alexandria. Only one of the original wonders of the ancient world is still standing: the Great Pyramid at Giza. Now, a new list of wonders has been written. In 1999, people all over the world were asked to suggest seven new places. It took six years to make the decision, but now the final seven places have been chosen.

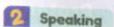
The Taj Mahal in India is one of the places on the new list. It is a white marble monument, built in 1632 by the ruler of India to remember his wife. The monument was completed in 1648, but it took another five years to complete the fountains and gardens around it. The Taj Mahal, with its beautiful white dome and four minarets, has been visited by millions of people since it was built.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: decision 1. The Greek list of the seven wonders included marble رخام place(s) in Egypt. minaret ملذنة fountain نافورة b) two a) one dome d) four c) three b) 1632 a) 1648 d) 1653 c) 1999 3. Theruler built the Taj Mahal to remember his wife. b) Greek a) English d) Egyptian c) Indian B) Answer the following questions:

6. Which place do you think should be added to the list of wonders?

5. In which year did they declare the list of the seven new wonders?

4. What's the main idea of the passage?



		u reading?			
Rawan	(1)				
Nada	(2)				?
Rawan	It's about ho	w we should	treat animals.		
2. Rasha	(1)				?
Fawzi :	Yes, I know i Babbage.	who invented	the computer.	He was called	Charles
Rasha:	How useful	is his inventio	n nowadays?		
3. Nabil	Hi, Maher. D	id you study	the last science	lesson?	
			a very interesti		
		at gets the m			
Nabil :	Could you h	elp me with t	hat lesson?		
	Control of the second section of the section of the second section of the section of the second section of the section of	CHISCOST CONTRACTOR CONTRACTOR CONTRACTOR			
		_			
rite about:	T .	,			
rite about:		A deser	t animal		
rite about:		A deser	t animal		A) Chaese A) Chaese A) Mare (e) Envi
What does it look like?	How can it live in the desert?	A deser	t animal Which food does it feed on?	What are the features of its habitat?	What is the lifestyle of this animal?
What does	How can it live in the	What are its skills?	Which food does	What are the features of its	What is the lifestyle of this
What does	How can it live in the	What are its skills?	Which food does it feed on?	What are the features of its	What is the lifestyle of this
What does it look like?	How can it live in the desert?	What are its skills?	Which food does it feed on?	What are the features of its habitat?	What is the lifestyle of this animal?
What does it look like?	How can it live in the desert?	What are its skills?	Which food does it feed on?	What are the features of its habitat?	What is the lifestyle of this animal?
What does it look like?	How can it live in the desert?	What are its skills?	Which food does it feed on?	What are the features of its habitat?	What is the lifestyle of this animal?
What does it look like?	How can it live in the desert?	What are its skills?	Which food does it feed on?	What are the features of its habitat?	What is the lifestyle of this animal?
What does it look like?	How can it live in the desert?	What are its skills?	Which food does it feed on?	What are the features of its habitat?	What is the lifestyle of this animal?

Protecting our planet ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



Reading

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Have you ever gone outside on a beautiful spring day, breathed deeply in the fresh sweet air and felt all your problems go away? Or, after a spring shower, have you ever experienced your mind clearing in the fresh air, and observed the raindrops on green leaves? It's a wonderful feeling.

Earlier, the air we breathe used to be pure and fresh. The air we breathe now is getting more and more polluted day by day. The increasing human activities like the burning of fossil fuels and deforestation are the major causes of air pollution. Although the level of air pollution has reached a serious point, there are still ways by which we can reduce air pollution. The quality of air can be improved by planting more and more trees as they clean the air. We also should reduce the smoke coming from factories. We have to use cleaner energy that is renewable and doesn't pollute the environment, such as solar energy and wind energy. Above all, many initiatives like planting trees and using eco-friendly fuel are promoted worldwide.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1.activities are the main reason for air pollution.
 - a) Man's

- b) Nature
- c) Environment
- d) Fuel
- 2. Do we have hope to reduce air pollution?
 - a) Yes.
- b) No.
- c) Impossible.
- d) Never.
- Planting trees can improve the quality of air as they breathe in
 - a) oxygen

b) carbon dioxide

c) water

d) nitrogen

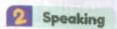
B) Answer the following questions:

- 4. What is the main idea of the text?
- 5. How can people help decrease air pollution?
- 6. Why do you think that the level of air pollution has increased?

	صديق للبيئة
observe	يلاحظ
reduce	يقلل
major	رئيسى
promote	يعزز د

worldwide المالد

eco-friendly



1. Bebo	following d	lialogues:		7	
Zakari Bebo	ia: In the nex : What will	xt part of my spe you say at the er	ech, I'd like t	o talk about p ech?	lants.
2. Samir	a : How doe:	s deforestation c	reate greenh	ouse gases?	
Samira	a: I'm sorry,	I don't understar athe in carbon di	nd. (2)		vaen.
3. Nehad	:You look	worried. (1) peech tomorrow			, , ,
Ramy					
Nehad		reat topic. Don't use gases such as			s caused by
		3	Writing		
rite abou	t:	·		``	
		A recyclin	g project	ļ	
		A recyclin	g project) 	c) halso c) reque
a time at the last care	What are you going to do?	Do you need to ask your teachers for help?	Do you need some volunteers?	What do you want them to do?	How does this
a time at the last care	you going to	Do you need to ask your teachers	Do you need some volunteers?	want them to	How does this project help the
a tracker that the contract	you going to	Do you need to ask your teachers for help?	Do you need some volunteers?	want them to	How does this project help the
problem?	you going to	Do you need to ask your teachers for help?	Do you need some volunteers?	want them to	How does this project help the
problem?	you going to do?	Do you need to ask your teachers for help?	Do you need some volunteers?	want them to do?	How does this project help the environment?
	you going to do?	Do you need to ask your teachers for help?	Do you need some volunteers?	want them to do?	How does this project help the environment?



Build a greener world

Remembering A Understan

Applying

▲ Analysing

A Evaluating

▲ Creating

طريقة

زبون

شبكة كهربائية ضوء الشمس sunlight

method electricity grid

customer



Reading

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The most popular method of creating energy from sunlight is solar farming, and it is quickly becoming one of the most preferred new projects for companies and people. Solar farms provide a source of safe, locally produced renewable energy.

The land used for a solar farm creates a safe place where nature and wildlife can live. The ground beneath the solar panels can also be used for farming. Because of their large area, solar farms are usually developed in the countryside.

Solar farms create electricity locally and feed it into the local electricity grid using energy from the sun. They have lower environmental effects than other forms of power. Renewables give the customer the choice of buying green electricity and reduce using fossil fuels.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Solar energy is a/an source of energy.
 - a) harmful

b) unsafe

c) renewable

- d) dangerous
- 2. People can the land used for solar panels.
 - a) use

b) sell

c) damage

- d) destroy
- 3. Solar farms are to the environment.
 - a) damaged

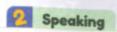
b) harmful

c) enemy

d) friendly

B) Answer the following questions:

- 4. What's the main idea of the passage?
- 5. "Solar farms are preferred by companies and people." Explain.
- 6. Do you want to have a solar farm? Why/Why not?



1. Marwan: What's your opinion about building solar farms in the countrysid Yehia: (1)	1. Marwan: What's your opinion about building solar farms in the countryside Yehia: (1)	Finish the	tollov	rillig alulogu				
Yehia : (1)	Marwan: How could they help keep the environment clean? Yehia: (2)	1. Marwa	n:W	hat's your op	inion about	building s	olar farms in	the countrysic
2. Asmaa : (2)	2. Asmaa : (2)	Yehia	: (1))				
2. Asmaa : What do you mean by sustainable life? Aziza : (1)	2. Asmaa : What do you mean by sustainable life? Aziza : (1)	Marwa	in : Ho	ow could the	y help keep	the enviro	nment clean	?
Aziza :(1)	Aziza : (1)	A STATE OF THE STA	: (2)) 				
Asmaa : (2)	Asmaa : (2)							
Aziza: We could use less water, bamboo brushes, reuse water bottles an have energy-saving light bulbs. 3. Laila: What are mangrove trees? Yasmine: They are the only species of trees in the world that (1)	Aziza : We could use less water, bamboo brushes, reuse water bottles and have energy-saving light bulbs. 3. Laila : What are mangrove trees? Yasmine: They are the only species of trees in the world that (1)		(1))				
have energy-saving light bulbs. 3. Laila: What are mangrove trees? Yasmine: They are the only species of trees in the world that (1)	have energy-saving light bulbs. 3. Laila: What are mangrove trees? Yasmine: They are the only species of trees in the world that (1)		//)				
3. Laila : What are mangrove trees? Yasmine: They are the only species of trees in the world that (1)	3. Laila : What are mangrove trees? Yasmine: They are the only species of trees in the world that (1)	ALIZA	ha.	e could use le	ess water, pa	mboo bru	isnes, reuse v	vater bottles ar
Yasmine: They are the only species of trees in the world that (1)	Yasmine: They are the only species of trees in the world that (1)	3. Laila				uibs.		
Yasmine: They protect farms and communities from strong winds and storms. Laila: What do you think of them? Yasmine: (3)	Yasmine: They protect farms and communities from strong winds and storms. Laila: What do you think of them? Yasmine: (3)					f trees in t	he world tha	+ (1)
Yasmine: They protect farms and communities from strong winds and storms. Laila: What do you think of them? Yasmine: (3)	Yasmine: They protect farms and communities from strong winds and storms. Laila: What do you think of them? Yasmine: (3)	Laila	: (2)	i are the on	ny species o	i trees in t	ne wond tha	t (1)
Storms. Laila: What do you think of them? Yasmine: (3) Write about: Green initiatives What are green green goals? What are their goals? What are yould you like to join? What are it it set up? "Green initiatives" What does this initiative would you like to give to people?	storms. Laila: What do you think of them? Yasmine: (3)		1e : Th	ev protect fa	rms and con	nmunities	from strong	winds and
Vite about: Green initiatives What are green itatives? What advice would you like to join? What at a provide? What advice would you like to give to people?	Laila : What do you think of them? Yasmine: (3) Writing What about: Green initiatives What are green green goals? What oos this initiative would you like to join? What advice would you like to give to people? "Green initiatives" "Green initiatives"				s dila con	uillics	om strong	willus allu
Vhat are green initiative? What are green initiative? What are goals? What does would you like to join? What does this initiative provide? What does would you like to join? What does this initiative provide? What does would you like to give to people?	Prite about: Green initiatives What are their goals? Which initiative would you like to join? "Green initiatives" What advice would you like to join? "Green initiatives" What does this initiative would you like to give to people? "Green initiatives"	Laila			ink of thom	2		
What are green initiatives? What are green initiative? What are green initiative? What are would you like to join? "Green initiative?" "Green initiatives" What does this initiative provide? What advice would you like to give to people?	That are green richard are their tiatives? What does this initiative would you like to join? What advice would you like to join? Where is it set up? would you like to give to people? "Green initiatives" "Green initiatives"		. (2)	iat do you tri	ink of them			
What are green green goals? What are green initiative would you like to join? What advice would you like to join? Why do you choose this it set up? would you like to give to people? "Green initiatives" What does this initiative would you like to give to people?	that are green triatives? What are their goals? Who would you like to join? Why do you choose this initiative provide? What advice would you like to give to people? "Green initiatives"		(5)			•		
green initiatives? are their goals? would you like to join? choose this initiative? would you like to give to people?	green tiatives? are their goals? would you like to join? would you like to join? Where is it set up? this initiative provide? would you like to give to people?	/rite about	:	·			1792 - 178	
green initiatives? are their goals? would you like to join? choose this initiative? would you like to give to people?	green tiatives? are their goals? would you like to join? Choose this initiative? Where is it set up? This initiative provide? Would you like to give to people? "Green initiatives"	Vrite about	:	G				Al Choose at T. Cars I'm
"Green initiatives"	"Green initiatives"	/rite about	:	G				Al Choose the Care Page Al Care
		What are green are	What e their	Which initiative would you like	Why do you choose this	where is	this initiative	would you like to
		What are green are	What e their	Which initiative would you like to join?	Why do you choose this initiative?	Where is it set up?	this initiative	would you like to
		What are green are	What e their	Which initiative would you like to join?	Why do you choose this initiative?	Where is it set up?	this initiative	would you like to
		What are green are	What e their	Which initiative would you like to join?	Why do you choose this initiative?	Where is it set up?	this initiative	would you like to
		What are green are	What e their	Which initiative would you like to join?	Why do you choose this initiative?	Where is it set up?	this initiative	would you like to
		Vhat are green itiatives?	What e their joals?	Which initiative would you like to join?	Why do you choose this initiative?	Where is it set up?	this initiative provide?	would you like to give to people?
		Vhat are green itiatives?	What e their loals?	Which initiative would you like to join?	Why do you choose this initiative?	Where is it set up?	this initiative provide?	would you like to give to people?
		Vhat are green itiatives?	What e their joals?	Which initiative would you like to join?	Why do you choose this initiative?	Where is it set up?	this initiative provide?	would you like to give to people?
		Vhat are green itiatives?	What e their joals?	Which initiative would you like to join?	Why do you choose this initiative?	Where is it set up?	this initiative provide?	would you like to give to people?
	The state of the s	Vhat are green itiatives?	What e their joals?	Which initiative would you like to join?	Why do you choose this initiative?	Where is it set up?	this initiative provide?	would you like to give to people?

To space and back

▲ Understanding

▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



Reading

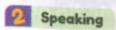
Read the following text, then answer the questions:

A car (or automobile) is a wheeled motor vehicle used for transportation. Most definitions of cars say that they run primarily on roads, seat one to eight people, have four wheels, and mainly transport people rather than goods.

Cars came into global use during the 20th century. The year 1886 is believed to be the birth year of the car when a German inventor Karl Benz introduced his Benz Patent. Cars were rapidly adopted in the US, where they replaced animaldrawn carriages and carts. In Europe and other parts of the world, demand for automobiles did not increase until after World War II.

Electric cars, which were invented early in the history of the car, became commercially available in the 2000s and are predicted to cost less to buy than gasoline cars before 2025. Electric cars, in most cases, are the solution for climate change. 2020 is the projected release date of Google's driverless car, the Waymo. It completed its first driverless ride on public roads in 2015 in Austin, Texas with a blind man behind the wheel.

A) Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or d:	adopted adopted
1. Cars first appeared	l in	demand
a) 1990	b) 2015	rapidly کل سریع
c) 1886	d) 2025	commercially 🖳
2. Cars increased		goods pi projected release
a) after	b) before	ار متوقع
c) during	d) in	
3 are cons	idered the solution for climate o	hange.
a) Trains	b) Planes	
c) Old cars	d) Electric cars	
B) Answer the followi		
4. Put a suitable title	to this text.	
5. What is the nation	nality of the inventor of the car?	
6. What kinds of end	ergy do you think cars will use in	future?
000000000000000000000000000000000000000		



. aman me	following o	ulalogues:			
1. Nancy	: Did you n	neet your frie	nds last Friday	/?	
Meral	:(1)				
Nancy	:(2)			?	
		Lily arrived be			
2. Sandy	:(1)			?	
Mayar	:Yes, I have	e helped to or	ganise a tenn	is competition.	
Sandy	: How was	your feeling?	d zeitimurio	•	
					ou like to join i
		g a competition		500 - 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10	
Sandy	: (3)				
3. Naglaa	:What hav	e you been dr	reaming of sin	ice you were yo	una?
		d like to know			
		ever used a te		-passe	
/rite about	:	ß	Writing	<u> </u>	
rite about	/	imous pers		proud of	
/rite about	/	imous pers		proud of	
Vhere/When	/	Why are you proud of him/her?		what did he/she do to achieve his/her goals?	Would you like to be like him/her? Why?
Where/When was he/she	What's his/ her job?	Why are you proud of him/	What are his/her achievements?	What did he/she do to achieve his/ her goals?	be like him/her?
Where/When was he/she	What's his/ her job?	Why are you proud of him/ her?	What are his/her achievements?	What did he/she do to achieve his/ her goals?	be like him/her?
Where/When was he/she	What's his/ her job?	Why are you proud of him/ her?	What are his/her achievements?	What did he/she do to achieve his/ her goals?	
	What's his/ her job?	Why are you proud of him/ her?	What are his/her achievements?	What did he/she do to achieve his/ her goals?	be like him/her? Why?
Where/When was he/she born?	What's his/ her job?	Why are you proud of him/ her?	What are his/her achievements?	What did he/she do to achieve his/ her goals?	be like him/her? Why?
Where/When was he/she born?	What's his/ her job?	Why are you proud of him/ her?	What are his/her achievements?	What did he/she do to achieve his/ her goals?	be like him/her? Why?
Vhere/When was he/she born?	What's his/ her job?	Why are you proud of him/ her?	What are his/her achievements?	What did he/she do to achieve his/ her goals?	be like him/her? Why?
Vhere/When was he/she born?	What's his/ her job?	Why are you proud of him/ her?	What are his/her achievements?	What did he/she do to achieve his/ her goals?	be like him/her? Why?
Where/When was he/she born?	What's his/ her job?	Why are you proud of him/ her?	What are his/her achievements?	What did he/she do to achieve his/ her goals?	be like him/her? Why?

Media now and in the past

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



Reading

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Media is a highly popular field, so experience is necessary. You'll need to be interested in your applications.

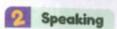
To gain work experience, contact radio, television, newspaper, or advertising agencies and ask about opportunities. Look out for summer posts, part-time and voluntary opportunities while on your course during the summer holidays or evenings and weekends. It may also be useful to take part in your university radio station, paper or publications office. Some courses offer the opportunity to start work with a media or related company. This provides an excellent opportunity to develop practical and professional skills and to make industry contacts.

You should aim to build a file of your work to show your skills and experience in whichever area you're interested in. This can be shown when applying for further work experience or future jobs. See the skills you have to market yourself. Search for jobs and find out more about work experience and internships.

To get a good job in media, you should have good publication application طلب عمل b) opportunities agency a) publications Mine practical d) applications c) experience posts petitos 2. Building a file of your work helps to your skills opportunities فرص عمل and experience in a certain area. take part in يشارك قت b) decrease a) show يربح/يكنسب gain d) dislike c) destroy 3. The passage is about

c) summer holidays	d) advertising agencies
B) Answer the following questions:	
4. What should you do to gain work ex	perience?
Summarise the passage in two lines	·
6. From your point of view, what's the	best way to gain work experience?

a) improving your professional skills b) publications office



1 . (V) 20 (20)	· I think TV prog	rammer are the	nost interesting so	urca far nau-
1. Malak Sally		rannies are the n	nost interesting so	urce for news.
Malak				
Sally	: I think social m	edia is the most i	nteresting because	e it has too man
	: I heard that the	ere would be a lot		
Rasha				
Rasha 3. Samer		ay home and wate		
		to work in the me		
Nour Samer				
Nour		ld you like to do i		
Samer				
Nour	: Because I'd like	40 ho TV	f	
Noui	, because in like	to be on iv.		
rite about		Writing	lead	
rite about		Story you had	read	to springer 2 or togg = 10 or togg = 10 or support 2

Into the future

A Remembering

▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



Reading

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

In the next twenty years, the world will solve the main problems of transport that we face nowadays. Global warming news will be over. Traffic jams will be a thing of the past. The next twenty years will see huge development in the area of transport making. Electric vehicles are actually present in the world today. Unfortunately, their prices are very high. In twenty years, however, the price of these vehicles will decrease with the new invention of the flying car. Any normal middle-class family would be able to buy at least two of these electrically powered vehicles. While the families will be benefiting from not having to buy gas every week, the environment will benefit from not taking in as much emissions as in the past. Electric vehicles or EVs, are vehicles that are powered by an electric motor. EVs use electricity as the "fuel". The power for the vehicle is stored in many large batteries in the bottom of the car.

 A) Choose the correct answer from 	m a, b, c or d:		
1. The passage is about		traffic jams 1991	دحام الم
a) new inventions	b) global warming	invention	تتراع
c) development of transport	d) the flying car	electric vehicle هربائية	ہ رکیات ک
2. The disadvantage of electric car	s is that they arenow.	development	191
a) weak	b) cheap	emission	čia,
c) inexpensive	d) expensive	benefit	ستفيد
3cars will cause the p	rice of EVs to decrease.		
a) Flying	b) Electric		
c) Petrol	d) Fuel		
B) Answer the following question	ns:		
4. In your opinion, what kinds of	transport will we have in th	e future?	
5. What does the abbreviation "E	EVs" stand for?		
6. Do you prefer electric cars or	ordinary ones? Why?		



Finish the				
1. Nasser	Everyone will ha	ive a driverless ca	r in the future.	
Adel	(1)			
Nasser	: (2)		?	
Adel	Because I think thave flying cars.	that we won't nee	ed driverless cars in	the future. We'
2. Nelly	: What's your drea			
	(1)			
	(2)			
	I'm good at scier Engineering.	nce and maths. I	can join the Univer	sity of
3. Waleed	Do you think we	will have trips to	the moon?	
Reda	(1)		are moon.	
Waleed:	I don't think so. I	How could we ac	7	
	(2)			
	(3)			
Dade .	I think valuets	Il do most of the	things we do now	dave
		3 Writ		
rite about		_	ing	
		[3] Writ	ing	
		[3] Writ	ing	Who encourages you to achieve thi job?
rite about	What skills does	Dream job Why do you	What can you do to get your dream job?	Who encourages you to achieve thi
rite about	What skills does	Dream job Why do you choose this job?	What can you do to get your dream job?	Who encourages you to achieve thi
rite about	What skills does	Dream job Why do you choose this job?	What can you do to get your dream job?	Who encourages you to achieve thi
What's your dream job?	What skills does	Dream job Why do you choose this job? My dream jo	What can you do to get your dream job?	Who encourages you to achieve thi job?
What's your dream job?	What skills does this job need?	Dream job Why do you choose this job? My dream jo	What can you do to get your dream job?	Who encourages you to achieve thi job?
What's your dream job?	What skills does this job need?	Dream job Why do you choose this job? My dream jo	What can you do to get your dream job?	Who encourages you to achieve thi job?
What's your dream job?	What skills does this job need?	Dream job Why do you choose this job? My dream jo	What can you do to get your dream job?	Who encourages you to achieve thi job?